BYZANTINE GREEK SERIES · VOLUME 48

The History of George Akropolites

George Akropolites

ΓΕΩΡΓΙΟΥ ΤΟΥ ΑΚΡΟΠΟΛΙΤΟΥ ΧΡΟΝΙΚΗ ΣΥΓΓΡΑΦΗ

The History of George Akropolites

---

with a word-for-word interlinear English translation

preserving the original word order

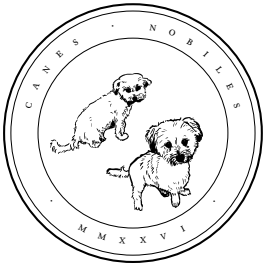


CANES NOBILES · MMXXVI

Copyright © 2026 Christopher Hench
All rights reserved

Published by Canes Nobiles
canesnobiles.com

The source text is in the public domain



Volume 48 of the Canes Nobiles Byzantine Greek interlinear texts

The Byzantine Greek text follows August Heisenberg,
Georgii Acropolitae Opera I (Leipzig, 1903)

Translated and composed with AI, edited by Christopher Hench
Artwork by Esther Steves

The text is Heisenberg's, with his capitals and punctuation; his supplements print without their brackets, words he deletes are not printed, and three asterisks mark a lacuna. A few plain misprints are corrected. The margins give his chapter numbers.

CONTENTS

I · The Fall of the City 7
II · Theodore Laskaris 20
III · John of Bulgaria, Henry, and Robert 37
IV · John Vatatzes 56
V · Klokotnitsa and the Young Akropolites 70
VI · The Alliance with Asan 83
VII · Losses and Gains 98
VIII · Thessalonica Taken 123
IX · Michael of Epirus and the Trial 152
X · Theodore II's First Campaigns 184
XI · Akropolites Beaten 211
XII · Prilapos 240
XIII · The Death of Theodore II 260
XIV · Pelagonia 279
XV · Constantinople Recovered 304

I · THE FALL OF THE CITY

Akropolites states the use of history and why he writes. Alexios III blinds his brother Isaac and takes the throne; Isaac's son Alexios brings the Latins against Constantinople, and the city falls on 12 April 1204 and is sacked. Alexios III wanders to Mosynopolis and blinds the fugitive Alexios Doukas. The Latins let the citizens go, and Theodore Laskaris crosses to the east.

Τὸ τῆς ἱστορίας χρήσιμον καὶ πρὸ ἡμῶν οἱ 1
the of-the history usefulness also before us the(-ones)
συγγραψάμενοι διωρίσαντο, καὶ ἅπερ ἂν ἐκείνοις
having-written defined and which-things — to-those
ἐπῆλθεν εἰπεῖν, ταῦτ' ἂν καὶ ἡμεῖς ἐρεῖν ἔχωμεν· τί γὰρ
occurred to-say these-things — also we to-say may-be-able what for
ἂν καὶ εὕροιμεν καινότερον νόημα τοσούτων ἱστορησάντων
— also could-we-find newer thought so-many having-written-history
καὶ σύμπαν καλὸν τῆς ἱστορίας ἀποφηναμένων ἐν τοῖς
and whole fair of-the history having-declared in the
σφετέροις συγγράμμασι; τάχα δέ, ὃ πλέον ἐκείνων ἐν
their-own writings perhaps but what more than-those in
τοῖς νῦν προκειμένοις ἡμῖν λέξειν ἄξιον, τοῦτό γε ἂν
the now set-before for-us to-say worthy this at-least —
τῆς ἡμετέρας συγγραφῆς προβαλούμεθα· τὸ δέ ἐστιν ὅτι,
of-the our composition we-will-put-forward it and is that
καινοτέρων ἡμῖν προκειμένων πραγμάτων, ἃ μήπω τις
newer to-us lying-before affairs which not-yet anyone
γραφῇ παραδέδωκε, καινότερον συμβαίνει εἶναι καὶ τὸ
to-writing has-handed-down newer happens to-be also the
ὠφέλιμον, ἐκείνων ἐν γνώσει τῶν ἀνθρώπων γεγενημένων,
usefulness of-those in knowledge of-the men having-become
ἅπερ ὁ χύδην ῥέων λόγος οὐκ ἀληθῶς ἀποφαίνεται. οἱ
which the in-a-flood flowing account not truly declares the(-ones)

μὲν οὖν τὰ καθ᾽ ἡμᾶς ἱστορικῶς συγγραψάμενοι
indeed then the(-things) concerning us historically having-written
ἄλλην ἄλλος πεποίηνται τὴν ἀρχήν· οἱ μὲν γὰρ
other other have-made the beginning the(-ones) indeed for
αὐτῶν ἀπὸ τῆς τοῦ κόσμου γενέσεως ἤρξαντο, οἱ δὲ
of-them from the of-the world creation began the(-ones) and
ἐξ ἀξιολόγου τινὸς ἀρχῆς, ἢ Περσῶν ἢ Ἑλλήνων ἢ
from notable some beginning either of-Persians or of-Hellenes or
Ῥωμαίων ἢ ἄλλου οὑτινοσοῦν τῶν ἐθνῶν, ἕκαστος πρὸς τὸν
of-Romans or other whatever of-the nations each toward the
ἑαυτοῦ σκοπὸν τὸ οἰκεῖον καταρτιζόμενος σύγγραμμα. καὶ
his-own aim the own composing composition and
ἡμῖν οὐχ ἥκιστα οὕτω τὰ τῆς συγγραφῆς τελεσθήσεται.
for-us not least so the(-things) of-the composition will-be-completed
τὰ μὲν γὰρ ἀπ᾽ ἀρχῆς γεγενημένα τῆς τοῦ κόσμου
the(-things) indeed for from beginning having-happened of-the of-the world
γενέσεως πολλοῖς τε καὶ πολλάκις ἐξιστορήθη, οὐ χρὴ
creation by-many both and often were-narrated not it-is-needful
δὲ λέγειν καὶ εἰ πρὸς ἀλλήλους οἱ πλείους ἠναντιοφώνησαν
and to-say also if against each-other the most spoke-in-contradiction
τὰ τῶν βασιλέων συγγράφοντες, ἀλλοιώσεις τε
the(-things) of-the emperors writing changes both
χωρῶν καὶ πόλεων στάσεις καὶ πολέμων συρρήξεις καὶ
of-lands and of-cities factions and of-wars clashes and
ἀνδραποδισμοὺς καὶ νίκας καὶ ἥττας καὶ ὅσα τοιαῦτα
enslavements and victories and defeats and as-many-as such
συμβαίνει τοῖς καθ᾽ ἡμᾶς. πολυσχιδῶν γὰρ τουτωνὶ
happen to-the(-things) concerning us many-branched for these
τελούντων καὶ μηδὲ παρ᾽ αὐτῶν ἴσως τῶν ἐνεργούντων
being and not-even by themselves perhaps the(-ones) acting
γινωσκομένων, σχολῇ γε ἂν τοῖς ἐξιστοροῦσι τοῦ
being-known hardly at-least — to-the(-ones) narrating of-the

ἀληθοῦς παντάπασι γενήσεται ἡ ἐπίτευξις· ἐκ τοῦ
true at-all will-be the attainment from the(-thing)
μᾶλλον δὲ καὶ ὅσα τῇ κοινῇ φήμῃ γνωρίζεται, ταῦτα
rather and also as-many-as by-the common report are-known these-things
τὸν ἐξιστοροῦντα παραλήψασθαι δέον, εἰ μὴ ἀδικεῖν οὗτος
the(-one) narrating to-take-up needful if not to-wrong he
ἐθελήσειε τὴν ἀλήθειαν ὡς οἱ τοὺς ὀβολοὺς κερματίοις
should-wish the truth as the(-ones) the obols with-small-coins
ἐλλυμαινόμενοι ἢ καὶ παραχαράττειν βουλόμενοι. οὔτε γοῦν
maltreating or also to-falsify wishing neither then
πρὸς χάριν οὔτε πρὸς φθόνον, ἀλλ᾽ οὐδὲ πρὸς μῖσος ἢ καὶ
for favor nor for envy but nor for hatred or also
πρὸς εὔνοιαν συγγράφειν χρεών ἐστι τὸν συγγράφοντα,
for goodwill to-write needful it-is the(-one) writing
ἀλλ᾽ ἱστορίας μόνον χάριν καὶ τοῦ μὴ λήθης βυθῷ,
but of-history only for-the-sake and of-the not of-oblivion in-the-depth
ἣν ὁ χρόνος οἶδε γεννᾶν, παραδοθῆναι τὰ ὑπό τινων
which the time knows to-beget to-be-handed-over the(-things) by some
γεγενημένα, εἴτ᾽ ἀγαθὰ εἴτε φαῦλα τυγχάνοιεν. ἀρχὴ
having-happened whether good or bad they-may-be beginning
δὲ ἡμῖν γενέσθω ἡ τῆς Κωνσταντίνου πόλεως ἅλωσις,
and for-us let-be the of-the of-Constantine city capture
οὕτω τοι περιφανὴς καὶ γνώριμος οὖσα σύμπασιν ὡς
so indeed famous and known being to-all that
μηδὲ ἓν εἶναι τῶν ἐθνῶν, ὃ μὴ ταύτην ἐγνώρισεν.
not-even one to-be of-the nations which not her knew
Ἀλεξίου τοῦ Κομνηνοῦ, ἀδελφοῦ τελοῦντος τοῦ 2
of-Alexios the Komnenos brother being of-the
προβεβασιλευκότος Ἰσαακίου, Ἀγγέλων καὶ ἀμφοῖν
having-reigned-before of-Isaac Angeloi and both
ὀνομαζομένων, τὰ τῶν Ῥωμαίων τότε διιθύνοντος
being-named the(-things) of-the Romans then directing

σκῆπτρα, οἱ ἐξ Ἰταλίας κατὰ τῆς Κωνσταντινουπόλεως
scepters the(-ones) from Italy against — Constantinople
ἐξεστράτευσαν. ἡ δὲ αἰτία τοιάδε. κατέβαλε μὲν τῆς
marched-out the and cause such(-was) cast-down indeed from-the
ἀρχῆς τὸν ἀδελφὸν Ἰσαάκιον ὁ προειρημένος Ἀλέξιος καί
rule the brother Isaac the aforesaid Alexios and
οἱ τὰς ὄψεις ἐπήρωσε, καὶ ἦν τὸ ἀπὸ τοῦδε τῆς τῶν
him in-the eyes blinded and was the from this-time of-the of-the
Ῥωμαίων κρατήσας ἀρχῆς. ὑπῆρχε δὲ τῷ Ἰσαακίῳ υἱὸς ἐκ
Romans having-mastered rule there-was and — to-Isaac son from
τῆς προτέρας αὐτοῦ γυναικὸς γεννηθείς, τὸν μείρακα ἤδη
the former his wife born the boy already
ἀμείβων. ὃς δυσανασχετήσας τῇ τοῦ πατρὸς παροινίᾳ
passing who having-been-vexed at-the of-the father drunken-outrage
τὴν φυγήν τε μηχανησάμενος περὶ τὴν Ῥώμην χωρεῖ καὶ
the flight and having-contrived to — Rome goes and
τῷ ταύτης ἀρχιερεῖ ἑαυτὸν προσρίπτει, λιπαρῶς τε τούτῳ
to-the of-it high-priest himself throws-down earnestly and to-him
προσκείμενος τὴν πατρικὴν ἐκδίκησιν ἐπεζήτει. ἐπεὶ δὲ
pressing the paternal vengeance sought since and
τῷ τότε τύχοι πλήθη πολλὰ εἰς ἓν συναχθῆναι τῶν
at-the then(-time) it-happened multitudes many into one to-be-gathered of-the
Ἰταλῶν, οἱ μὲν ἐξ αὐτῆς Ἰταλίας, οἱ δὲ ἐκ τῆς
Italians the(-ones) indeed from itself Italy the(-ones) and from the
τῶν Φράγγων ἀρχῆς, ἐκ δὲ Ἐνετῶν ἕτεροι καὶ ἐξ ἄλλων
of-the Franks rule from and Venetians others and from others
ἄλλοι καὶ ἡ πρόφασις εἰς ἐλευθερίαν τῆς Ἱερουσαλὴμ
others and the pretext to liberation — of-Jerusalem
ἀπελθεῖν, ὅπου ὁ κυριακὸς τυγχάνει τάφος — ἦν δὲ ὁ
to-go-off where the Lord's happens tomb was and the(-one)
τούτους συναθροίσας ὁ ἀρχιερατικῶς τῆς πρεσβυτέρας
them having-gathered the(-one) high-priestly of-the elder

προϊστάμενος Ῥώμης, ὅν, ὡς προειρήκειν, ὑπὲρ τῆς
presiding Rome whom as I-had-said-before on-behalf-of the
πατρικῆς ἀρχῆς ὁ τοῦ Ἰσαακίου ἐξελιπάρει υἱός —
paternal rule the — of-Isaac besought son
ταῖς παρακλήσεσι τοῦ παιδὸς δυσωπηθεὶς ὁ πάπας,
by-the entreaties of-the boy put-to-shame the pope
μάλιστα δὲ ταῖς ὑποσχέσεσιν — ἐτύγχανον γὰρ ἁδραί —
most-of-all and by-the promises they-were for large
παραδίδωσι τὸν παῖδα τοῖς ἡγεμόσι τῶν στρατευμάτων,
hands-over the boy to-the leaders of-the armies
ὡς ἂν αὐτὸν τῆς προκειμένης ἐκνεύσαντες τῷ
so-that — him from-the planned(-course) having-turned-aside on-the
πατρικῷ ἐγκαταστήσαιεν θρόνῳ ἀναλώματά τε παρ'
paternal might-install throne expenses and from
αὐτοῦ λάβοιεν, ὁπόσα ἂν καθ' ὁδὸν ἀναλώσαιεν καὶ
him might-take as-many-as — on road they-might-spend and
ὁπόσα περὶ τὴν Κωνσταντίνου βραδύναντες. ἀνήχθησαν
as-many-as around the of-Constantine having-delayed set-sail
οὖν οὗτοι τριήρεσί τε καὶ ναυσὶ κοίλαις, εὐτυχῶς ἐν
then these with-triremes both and with-ships hollow fortunately in
πνεύμασι φοροῖς πεποιημένοι τὴν ἄνοδον. ἐπεὶ δὲ τῇ
winds favorable having-made the voyage-up when and to-the
Κωνσταντίνου προσώκειλαν, γνωρίζουσι τοῖς ἐκεῖ τὸν
of-Constantine they-put-in they-make-known to-the(-ones) there the
παῖδα, τὴν ἀδικίαν, τὰ διὰ ταῦτα τοῦ Ῥώμης
boy the injustice the because-of these-things of-the(-one) of-Rome
ἐντάλματα. μέχρι μὲν οὖν τινὸς λόγοι τε ἐξ ἀμφοτέρων
commands until indeed then some(-time) words both from both
ἐγεγόνεισαν τῶν μερῶν καὶ μάχαι κατὰ χέρσον ἰσχυραί,
had-taken-place the parts and battles on land strong
συμβάσεις τε ἐκ πρεσβειῶν οὐδ' ὅλως συνέβαινον. ἐπεὶ
agreements and from embassies not-even at-all came-about when

δὲ ὁ βασιλεὺς Ἀλέξιος τοῖς τοιούτοις ἀπώκνησε πράγμασι,
and the emperor Alexios at-the such shrank-from affairs
μάλιστα δέ γε ἀπείρηκε τοῖς ἐντὸς εἰς σύγχυσιν
most-of-all and at-least gave-up on-the(-ones) within to confusion
ἀποβλέπουσι καὶ νοσοῦσι τὸ ἄστατον, τὰ πάντα χαίρειν
looking and being-sick-with the instability the all-things to-farewell
ἐάσας φυγῇ ἐχρήσατο ἑκὼν ἀέκοντί γε θυμῷ, τοῦτο
having-let flight used willing with-unwilling at-least spirit this
δὴ προσειπών, ὡς οἱ ἀκηκοότες ἔφασκον, τὸ
indeed having-said as the(-ones) having-heard said the(-saying)
‘Δαυὶδ φυγὼν ἐσώθη’, προσεπαγόμενός τε καὶ τὴν γυναῖκα
David having-fled was-saved bringing-along both also the wife
καὶ χρήματα τοῦ βασιλικοῦ ταμιείου ἱκανά.
and moneys of-the imperial treasury sufficient

3 Ἐπεὶ γοῦν οὗτος ἐξῆει τῆς Κωνσταντίνου, πρεσβεύουσι
when then this(-man) went-out from-the of-Constantine send-envoys
πρὸς τοὺς Ἰταλοὺς οἱ οἰκήτορες, ὡς ἂν ὁ τοῦ Ἰσαακίου
to the Italians the inhabitants that — the — of-Isaac
Ἀλέξιος, δι’ ὃν ὡς ἐδόκει τὸ μάχιμον ἦν, ἐντὸς
Alexios because-of whom as it-seemed the fighting was within
εἰσαχθείη καὶ βασιλεὺς ἀναγορευθείη. εἰσάγεται γοῦν
might-be-brought-in and emperor be-proclaimed is-brought-in then
εἰς τὴν πόλιν ὁ παῖς ἐπὶ ταῖς προτέραις συνθήκαις, αἷς
into the city the boy on the former agreements which
ὑπέσχετο τοῖς ἀναβιβάσασιν αὐτὸν Ἰταλοῖς, καὶ βασιλεὺς
he-promised to-the having-brought-up him Italians and emperor
παρὰ παντὸς ἀναγορεύεται τοῦ λαοῦ. ἦσαν οὖν τὸ ἀπὸ
by all is-proclaimed of-the people were then the from
τοῦδε οἵ τε πολῖται οἵ τε Ἰταλοὶ τῷ δοκεῖν εἰρηνεύοντες,
this-time the both citizens the and Italians in-the seeming being-at-peace
τῶν μὲν Ἰταλῶν ἀπαιτούντων τὰς ὑποσχέσεις καὶ τὰ
the indeed Italians demanding the promises and the

ἀναλώματα, τῶν δ᾽ οἰκητόρων τῆς πόλεως ὑπὲρ ἀριθμὸν
expenses the and inhabitants of-the city beyond number
ἡγουμένων τὸ χρῆμα καὶ διισχυριζομένων, ὡς οὐκ ἂν
considering the money and insisting that not —
ἔχοιεν τοσαῦτα τοῖς Ἰταλοῖς ἐπιδοῦναι. συνέβη δὲ τῷ
they-could-have so-much to-the Italians to-give it-happened and at-the
τότε καὶ γογγυσμὸν ἐν τῇ πόλει τούτου χάριν γενέσθαι.
then(-time) also grumbling in the city of-this for-the-sake to-occur
ὁ γὰρ πατὴρ Ἀλεξίου ὁ Ἄγγελος Ἰσαάκιος — ἔτι γὰρ
the for father of-Alexios the Angelos Isaac yet for
περιῆν τῷ βίῳ, κἂν ἀπῆρε μετὰ μικρὸν μήπω ἁλούσης
survived in-the life even-if he-departed after a-little not-yet captured
τῆς Κωνσταντίνου — γνώμην δέδωκεν, ὡς τῶν ἱερῶν
the of-Constantine opinion gave that of-the sacred
κειμηλίων συνάθροισιν γεγονέναι τὰ πρῶτα ἐκεῖθέν τε
treasures gathering to-have-taken-place the first thence and
ἄρξασθαι τοῦ πρὸς τοὺς Ἰταλοὺς χρέους, τὸ δ᾽ ἐλλεῖπον
to-begin the toward the Italians debt the and lacking
ἐκ τῶν βασιλικῶν ταμείων δοθῆναι καὶ τῶν οἰκητόρων
from the imperial treasuries to-be-given and of-the inhabitants
τῆς πόλεως. ἐν τῷ μεταξὺ δὲ τῆς ἀμφισβητήσεως οὔσης
of-the city in the meanwhile and the dispute being
καὶ ἐξ ἑκατέρων τῶν μερῶν ἀφικνουμένων τῶν πρέσβεων,
and from both the sides arriving the envoys
φονεύεται ὁ παῖς τοῦ Ἰσαακίου Ἀλέξιος παρ᾽ Ἀλεξίου τοῦ
is-murdered the boy — of-Isaac Alexios by Alexios the
Δούκα, ὃν πρωτοβεστιάριον οὗτος τετίμηκεν, οἱ δὲ
Doukas whom protovestiarios he had-honored the(-ones) and
τῆς πόλεως εἴς τι τῶν αὐτοῦ ἐπιμεμφόμενοι Μούρτζουφλον
of-the city for some of-the his blaming Mourtzouphlos
ἐκάλουν. ἀνηγορεύθη γοῦν παρὰ τῶν πολιτῶν ὁ ῥηθεὶς
called was-proclaimed then by the citizens the said

Ἀλέξιος Μούρτζουφλος βασιλεύς. τοῦ τοιούτου γοῦν χάριν
Alexios Mourtzouphlos emperor of-the such then for-the-sake
ἐπὶ πλέον μανέντες οἱ Ἰταλοὶ ἄσπονδον τὴν ἔχθραν κατὰ
for more having-raged the Italians truceless the enmity against
τῶν Κωνσταντινουπολιτῶν ἐποίησαν. συνέβη δὲ καὶ ἕτερόν
the Constantinopolitans made it-happened and also other
τι γενέσθαι τοῖς πολίταις βούλευμα οὐκ ἐπαίνου ἄξιον.
some to-take-place to-the citizens plan not of-praise worthy
τοὺς γὰρ Λατίνους, οὓς οἰκήτορας εἶχεν ἡ Κωνσταντίνου,
the for Latins whom as-inhabitants had the of-Constantine
οἱ προύχοντες καὶ τῶν ἐν τέλει συνεβουλεύσαντο
the(-ones) prominent and of-the(-ones) in office resolved
ἀποπέμψαι τῆς πόλεως, ὡς μὴ ἐπιβούλους αὐτοὺς
to-send-away from-the city so-that not plotters them
ἐντὸς ἔχοιεν. οἱ δὲ αὐτόμολοι πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους
within they-might-have they and deserters to the enemies
χωροῦσι χιλιοστύες πολλαί, ὅρκοις ἀρρήκτοις τὸ πρῶτον
go thousands many with-oaths unbreakable the first
τοὺς πολίτας πληροφοροῦντες μὴ ἄν ποτε μελετῆσαι κατ᾽
the citizens assuring not — ever to-plan against
αὐτῶν προδοσίαν, συναποθανεῖν δὲ εἰ συμβαίη αὐτοῖς ὡς
them betrayal to-die-with and if it-should-befall them as
ἰθαγενεῖς καὶ αὐτόχθονας· καίτοι καὶ γυναῖκας καὶ παιδία
natives and sprung-from-the-soil although also wives and children
διδόντες ἐν ἀσφαλεστέροις ταῦτα τόποις ἀπαγαγεῖν, οὐκ
giving in safer these places to-remove not
ἔπεισαν. ἐξελθόντες δὲ πολλὰ τοῖς ἐναντίοις συνήραντο
they-persuaded having-gone-out and much to-the opponents assisted
ἅτε πλῆθος πολὺ ὄντες καὶ εἰδήμονες τῶν πραγμάτων.
inasmuch-as multitude great being and knowing of-the affairs

Τεσσαράκοντα γοῦν παρῆλθον ἡμέραι καὶ ἑάλω παρὰ 4
forty then passed days and was-captured by
τούτων ἡ Κωνσταντίνου, ἔτους μὲν ὄντος ἀπὸ γενέσεως
these the of-Constantine year indeed being from creation
κόσμου ἑξακισχιλιοστοῦ ἑπτακοσιοστοῦ ἑνδεκάτου, δωδεκάτην
of-world six-thousandth seven-hundredth eleventh twelfth
τοῦ Ἀπριλλίου ἄγοντος. τῷ γὰρ δεκάτῳ ἔτει Μαΐου ὄντος
— of-April leading in-the for tenth year May being
τῇ πόλει προσώρμισαν, ἐν ἕνδεκα δὲ μησὶ συνέβη γενέσθαι
to-the city they-anchored in eleven and months it-happened to-take-place
τὴν πόρθησιν. καὶ ἡ μεγίστη καὶ περιφανεστάτη πόλις
the sack and the greatest and most-famous city
ἑάλω, ἑνὸς ὥς φασιν ἢ καὶ δύο ἐπιπηδησάντων τῷ τείχει
was-captured one as they-say or even two having-leapt-upon the wall
ἀπὸ κλίμακος εἰς ἱστὸν κειμένης μεγίστης κοίλης νηός.
from ladder on mast lying greatest hollow of-ship
ὅσα μὲν οὖν συνέβη τῇ πόλει, μακροτέρων ἂν εἴη
as-many-as indeed then happened to-the city longer — would-be
ταῦτα λόγων καὶ οὐ πρὸς τὴν παροῦσαν ὑπόθεσιν· πάντως
these-things of-words and not for the present subject by-all-means
δὲ νοεῖν ἔξεστι πᾶσιν ὁπόσα ταῖς αἰχμαλωτιζομέναις
and to-conceive it-is-possible for-all as-many-as to-the being-taken-captive
πόλεσιν ἐπιπέπτωκε πάθη, φόνοι τε ἀνδρῶν γυναικῶν
cities have-befallen sufferings murders both of-men of-women
τε ἀνδραποδισμοί, σκυλεύσεις, οἰκιῶν κατασκάψεις, τἆλλά
and enslavements despoilings of-houses razings the-other
τε πάντα ὁπόσα μαχαίρας ἔργον καθέστηκεν. ἐπεὶ
and all-things as-many-as of-sword work has-become when
γοῦν ἐγκρατεῖς γεγόνασι τῆς πόλεως οἱ Ἰταλοί, ὡς ἐξ
then masters became of-the city the Italians as from
ὑπερδεξίων ὁρμώμενοι τήν τε δυσμὴν πᾶσαν κατέδραμον,
higher-ground setting-out the both west all overran

ἀλλὰ δὴ καὶ τῆς ἑῴας μέρος οὐκ ἔλαττον. πρῶτον μὲν
but indeed also of-the east part not less first indeed
οὖν χειροῦνται τὰ τῆς δυσμῆς, πάντων ὑποφευγόντων
then they-subdue the(-things) of-the west all fleeing-from
αὐτοὺς ὡς ὑπό τινος θεηλάτου ἐλαυνομένων πληγῆς.
them as by some god-driven being-driven blow
Ὁ μὲν οὖν βασιλεὺς Ἀλέξιος ὁ Ἄγγελος, ὃν ἀποδρᾶσαι ὁ
the indeed then emperor Alexios the Angelos whom to-have-run-away the
λόγος εἰρήκει τῆς Κωνσταντίνου, περὶ τὴν Φιλιππούπολιν
account had-said from-the of-Constantine to — Philippopolis
ἀφικόμενος καὶ μὴ πρὸς τῶν οἰκητόρων δεχθεὶς περὶ τὴν
having-arrived and not by the inhabitants received to —
Μοσυνούπολιν ἀφικνεῖται κἀκεῖσε τὰς διατριβὰς ἐποιεῖτο.
Mosynopolis arrives and-there the stays made
Ἀλέξιος δὲ ὁ Δούκας, ὃς τὸν υἱὸν Ἰσαακίου ἀπέκτεινε,
Alexios and the Doukas who the son of-Isaac killed
βουλόμενος ἐκ κήδους αὐτῷ προσαρμόσασθαι ἅμα
wishing by marriage-alliance to-him to-join-himself at-once
τε τὸν τοῦ Ἰσαακίου υἱὸν πεφόνευκε καὶ ἅμα τὴν τοῦ
and the — of-Isaac son has-murdered and at-once the of-the
βασιλέως Ἀλεξίου θυγατέρα Εὐδοκίαν προσηγάγετο εἰς
emperor Alexios daughter Eudokia took as
γυναῖκα, ὑστάτην οὖσαν τῶν θυγατέρων ἐκείνου. τρεῖς γὰρ
wife last being of-the daughters his three for
ὑπῆρχον αὐτῷ, καὶ ἡ μὲν πρώτη Εἰρήνη κατωνομάζετο,
there-were to-him and the indeed first Irene was-named
ἣν καὶ ἀνδρὶ συνέζευξεν Ἀλεξίῳ τῷ Παλαιολόγῳ, ὃν
whom also to-husband he-joined to-Alexios the Palaiologos whom
καὶ δεσπότην τετίμηκεν· ἀλλὰ προῴχετο οὗτος τῆς
also despot he-had-honored but had-died-before this(-man) of-the
Κωνσταντίνου ἁλώσεως. ἡ δὲ δευτέρα ἐκαλεῖτο Ἄννα, εἰς
of-Constantine capture the and second was-called Anna to

ἣν Θεόδωρον τὸν Λάσκαριν ἐπεγάμβρευσεν. ἡ δὲ τρίτη
whom Theodore the Laskaris he-took-as-son-in-law the and third
Εὐδοκία κατωνομάζετο, ἣν πρὸ καιροῦ ὁ πατὴρ αὐτῆς τῷ
Eudokia was-named whom before time the father her to-the
κράλῃ Σερβίας συνέζευξεν· ἐπί τινι δὲ πάθει, ὡς ἔφασκον,
kral of-Serbia joined on some but passion as they-said
ταύτην οὗτος φωράσας ἐπὶ τὸν πατέρα πάλιν ἐκπέμπει,
her this(-man) having-caught to the father again sends-back
καὶ ἔμενεν οὕτως. ταύτην εἰλήφει ὁ εἰρημένος Δούκας
and she-remained so her had-taken the aforesaid Doukas
Ἀλέξιος, τὴν οἰκείαν καταλιπὼν γαμετήν. ὡς γοῦν παρὰ
Alexios the own having-left wife when then by
τῶν Ἰταλῶν ἑάλω ἡ Κωνσταντίνου, ἀπέδρα καὶ οὗτος
the Italians was-captured the of-Constantine ran-away also this(-man)
ἐκεῖθεν, ἐπιφερόμενος καὶ τὴν σύζυγον Εὐδοκίαν. μαθὼν
from-there bringing-along also the wife Eudokia having-learned
δὲ ὡς ἐν Μοσυνουπόλει τὰς διατριβὰς ποιεῖται ὁ πενθερὸς
and that in Mosynopolis the stays makes the father-in-law
αὐτοῦ βασιλεὺς Ἀλέξιος, θαρρούντως πρὸς αὐτὸν ἀπῄει. ὁ
his emperor Alexios confidently to him went-off he
δὲ τοῦτον πολλῶν τε ἄλλων χάριν καὶ οὐδὲν ἧττον τῆς
but him of-many both other(-things) for-the-sake and nothing less of-the
θυγατρὸς ἐμυσάττετο. κηδεστίας οὖν ὑπενδὺς προσωπεῖον
daughter loathed of-kinship then having-put-on mask
ὑποδέχεται τὸν Ἀλέξιον, λουτρόν τε εὐτρεπίσας ἅμα
receives — Alexios bath and having-prepared together-with
τῇ θυγατρὶ λουθῆναι τοῦτον προστέταχεν. ἐντὸς οὖν τοῦ
the daughter to-be-bathed him he-ordered within then the
λουτῆρος γενομένου τοῦ Ἀλεξίου ἐπεισπίπτουσιν ἀθρόον αὐτῷ
bath having-come — of-Alexios fall-upon all-at-once him
οἱ τοῦ βασιλέως Ἀλεξίου ὑπηρέται κἀκεῖσε τοὺς ὀφθαλμοὺς
the of-the emperor Alexios servants and-there the eyes

ἐξορύττουσιν. ἔφασκον δὲ οἱ ξυντυχόντες, ὡς ἡ θυγάτηρ
gouge-out said and the(-ones) present that the daughter
ἑστῶσα παρὰ τὴν θύραν τοῦ λουτροῦ τὸν πατέρα ὕβρεσιν
standing by the door of-the bath the father with-insults
ἔπλυνε κἀκεῖνος ταύτην τῆς ἀναιδείας καὶ τῆς ἀσελγοῦς
washed and-he her of-the shamelessness and of-the licentious
ἀγαπήσεως ἐλοιδόρει. τυφλὸς οὖν γεγονὼς ὁ δηλωθεὶς
love reviled blind then having-become the aforesaid
Δούκας Ἀλέξιος περὶ τὰ τῆς Μοσυνουπόλεως ἐπλανᾶτο
Doukas Alexios about the — of-Mosynopolis wandered
μέρη, ἀλήτης διερχόμενος τὰ ἐκεῖσε. ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς
parts vagrant going-through the(-places) there the and emperor
Ἀλέξιος ἀπάρας ἐκεῖθεν περὶ τὰ μέρη τῆς Θεσσαλονίκης
Alexios having-set-out from-there to the parts — of-Thessalonica
ἐχώρει. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐξώρμησαν τῆς Κωνσταντίνου οἱ Ἰταλοὶ
went when and set-out from-the of-Constantine the Italians
καὶ ἀπῆλθον περὶ τὴν Μοσυνούπολιν, εὑρόντες ἐκεῖσε τὸν
and went-off to — Mosynopolis having-found there —
Μούρτζουφλον Ἀλέξιον εἰς τὴν Κωνσταντίνου ἀπήγαγον·
Mourtzouphlos Alexios to the of-Constantine they-led-off
τοῦ δὲ δηλωθέντος αὐτοῦ μιάσματος ἀμυνόμενοι, ὅπερ εἰς
of-the and aforesaid his pollution avenging which against
τὸν υἱὸν Ἰσαακίου τοῦ βασιλέως εἰργάσατο, κρημνώδει
the son of-Isaac the emperor he-wrought by-precipitous
θανάτῳ τοῦτον καταδικάζουσιν· εἰς γὰρ τὸν μέγιστον
death him they-condemn to for the greatest
ἀνάξαντες κίονα, οὗ Ταῦρος ἡ κλῆσις, κάτω βάλλουσι.
having-led-up column whose Tauros the name down they-throw
καὶ τοιοῦτον μὲν τὸ τέλος αὐτοῦ, ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς Ἀλέξιος
and such indeed the end his the and emperor Alexios
εἰς τὴν Θεσσαλονίκην ἀφίκετο.
to — Thessalonica arrived

Τῆς οὖν πόλεως κυριεύσαντες οἱ Ἰταλοὶ ἄδειαν δεδώκασι 6
of-the then city having-mastered the Italians leave gave
τοῖς ταύτης οἰκήτορσι τοὺς θέλοντας μένειν τε καὶ ὑπὸ
to-the of-it inhabitants the(-ones) wishing to-stay both and under
χεῖρα εἶναι αὐτῶν, τοὺς δὲ ἀκωλύτως ἀπέρχεσθαι ὅπῃ
hand to-be their the(-ones) and unhindered to-go-away wherever
ἂν βούλοιντο. ἐξήρχοντο τοίνυν οἱ μὲν φανερῶς οἱ
— *they-might-wish went-out therefore the(-ones) indeed openly the(-ones)*
δὲ καὶ κρύφα, ὅσοι τῶν περιφανεστέρων ἐτύγχανον.
and also secretly as-many-as of-the more-notable happened(-to-be)
ὁ μὲν οὖν Λάσκαρις Θεόδωρος προεξελθεῖν πέφθακεν
— *indeed then Laskaris Theodore to-go-out-first was-quick*
ἅμα τῇ γαμετῇ Ἄννῃ, ὃν γαμβρὸν ὁ λόγος φθάσας
together-with the wife Anna whom son-in-law the account anticipating
ἐδήλωσε τοῦ βασιλέως Ἀλεξίου τελεῖν, καὶ δεσπότην ὑπ᾽
showed of-the emperor Alexios to-be and despot by
ἐκείνου τετιμημένον. ἀπελθὼν οὖν οὗτος μετὰ τῆς
him honored having-gone-away then this(-man) with the
σφετέρας γυναικὸς καὶ τῶν τέκνων — ὑπῆρχον γὰρ
his wife and the children there-were for
αὐτῷ θυγάτρια τρία, ὧν ἡ μὲν πρώτη Εἰρήνη, ἡ δὲ
to-him daughters three of-whom the indeed first Irene the and
δευτέρα Μαρία, ἡ δὲ τρίτη Εὐδοκία κατωνομάζοντο —
second Maria the and third Eudokia were-named
καὶ περὶ τὴν Νίκαιαν πόλιν γενόμενος παρεκάλει τοὺς
and around — Nicaea city having-come begged the
Νικαεῖς ἔσω τοῦτον τῆς πόλεως δέξασθαι καὶ ὡς κυρίῳ
Nicaeans within him of-the city to-receive and as to-lord
προσανέχειν αὐτῷ. οἱ δὲ οὐκ ἐδέχοντο. λιπαρῶς γοῦν
to-attend to-him they but not received persistently then
ὁ Λάσκαρις τούτοις προσκείμενος καὶ κἂν τὴν γυναῖκα
— *Laskaris to-them pressing and at-least the wife*

μόνην δέξασθαι ἐκδυσωπῶν, μόλις εἰς τοῦτο πειθηνίους
alone to-receive entreating barely to this obedient
ἐγνώρισεν. ἀφεὶς οὖν τὴν γυναῖκα οὑτοσὶ κατὰ Νίκαιαν
he-found(-them) having-left then the wife this(-man) about Nicaea
διήρχετο τὰ πέριξ, Προῦσάν τε καὶ τὰ περὶ
went-through the(-places) around Prousa both and the(-places) around
αὐτήν, ὅπως τε ὑπὸ χεῖρα ταῦτα ποιήσαιτο καὶ ὡς
it how both under hand these-things he-might-make and how
βασιλεὺς ἀντὶ τοῦ πενθεροῦ Ἀλεξίου τούτων κατάρξειεν·
emperor instead-of the father-in-law Alexios of-these he-might-rule
οὗ δὴ καὶ τετύχηκε. καὶ γὰρ ἐν τῷ μεταξὺ καὶ περὶ τὸν
which indeed also he-attained and for in the meantime also to the
περσάρχην ἀφίκετο συνήθη τούτῳ τελοῦντα, καὶ συμμαχίαν
Persian-ruler arrived intimate to-him being and alliance
προσείληφε καὶ τὰ πρὸς σκοπὸν διεπράξατο.
took-to(-himself) and the(-things) toward aim accomplished

II · THEODORE LASKARIS

Theodore Laskaris is acclaimed despot and then crowned emperor at Nicaea. The deposed Alexios III goes to the sultan, who marches with him against Theodore; at Antioch on the Maeander Theodore unhorses the sultan, who is beheaded, and takes Alexios captive. Theodore subdues David Komnenos' Paphlagonia. In the west, Asan's Bulgarians revolt and rout Isaac II, and Asan's brother John succeeds him.

7 Δύο γοῦν παραδραμόντων ἐνιαυτῶν καὶ ὡς δεσπότου παρὰ
two then having-run-by years and as despot by
πάντων φημιζομένου τοῦ Λασκάριος, ἐπεὶ συνδρομὴ γέγονε
all being-acclaimed — of-Laskaris when concourse took-place
κατὰ Νίκαιαν ἀπὸ περιφανῶν ἀνδρῶν καὶ τῶν λογάδων
at Nicaea of famous men and of-the select

τῆς ἐκκλησίας, σκέψις τούτοις ἐγένετο ὅπως βασιλεὺς
of-the church deliberation to-these took-place how emperor
φημισθείη ὁ δεσπότης Θεόδωρος. πατριάρχου δὲ μὴ
might-be-acclaimed the despot Theodore patriarch and not
παρόντος ἐκεῖσε — ὁ γὰρ Καματηρὸς Ἰωάννης, ὃς τὸν
being-present there — for Kamateros John who the
πατριαρχικὸν ἐκόσμει θρόνον ἡνίκα τῆς Κωνσταντίνου
patriarchal adorned throne when the of-Constantine
ἐκράτησαν Ἰταλοί, περὶ τὸ Διδυμότειχον ἀπῆρε κἀκεῖσε
mastered Italians to — Didymoteichon departed and-there
τὰς διατριβὰς ἐπεποίητο, καὶ διαμηνυθεὶς παρά τε τοῦ
the stays had-made and summoned by both —
Λασκάριος καὶ τῶν λοιπῶν ἀπηνήνατο τὴν πρὸς αὐτοὺς
Laskaris and the rest refused the to them
ἄφιξιν, ἔγγραφον τὴν παραίτησιν ποιησάμενος. ψηφίζεται
arrival written the resignation having-made is-elected
γοῦν πατριάρχης Μιχαὴλ ὁ Αὐτωρειανός, λόγιος τυγχάνων
then patriarch Michael the Autoreianos learned being
καὶ πάσης γραφῆς ἔμπειρος τῆς τε ἡμετέρας καὶ θύραθεν·
and of-all writing experienced the both our and outside
ὃς καὶ τὸν δεσπότην Θεόδωρον τῷ βασιλείας διαδήματι
who also the despot Theodore with-the of-empire diadem
ταινιοῖ. ἐντεῦθεν βασιλεὺς ὁ Λάσκαρις ἀναγορευθεὶς
binds thence emperor — Laskaris proclaimed
συντονώτερον ἐφήψατο τῶν πραγμάτων, μάχαις δὲ
more-vigorously took-hold of-the affairs with-battles and
προσέκυρσεν οὐκ ὀλίγαις καὶ χαλεπαῖς. οἵ τε γὰρ Ἰταλοὶ
met not few and grievous the both for Italians
κατὰ τὴν ἑῴαν τὸν πόρον πεποιηκότες τὰ πλείω ταύτης
in the east the crossing having-made the more of-it
ὑφ' ἑαυτοὺς ἐποιήσαντο· τό τε γὰρ ἅπαν θέμα Ὀψικίου
under themselves made the both for whole theme of-Opsikion

καὶ Αἰγαίου καὶ αὐτὸ δὴ τὸ Ἀτραμύτιον τῶν Ἰταλῶν
and of-Aegean and itself indeed — Atramytion of-the Italians
ἐγεγόνει, Βάρις τε καὶ Αὐλωνία Ποιμανηνόν τε καὶ
had-become Baris both and Aulonia Poimanenon both and
Λεντιανὰ μέχρι τοῦ Λοπαδίου αὐτοῦ δεσπότας ἐγίνωσκον
Lentiana as-far-as — Lopadion itself as-masters knew
Ἰταλούς, ἀλλά γε δὴ καὶ τὰ τῆς Θυνίας πάντα
Italians but at-least indeed also the(-places) — of-Thynia all
μέχρι καὶ Νικομηδείας αὐτῆς. ἐντεῦθεν ἐστενοῦτο πολὺ ὁ
as-far-as even Nicomedia itself thence was-straitened much the
βασιλεὺς Θεόδωρος. οὐδὲν δὲ ἧττον καὶ πρὸς τῶν Ῥωμαίων
emperor Theodore nothing and less also by the Romans
κατεβιάζετο. ἐν γὰρ τῇ συγχύσει τῆς Κωνσταντίνου ἁλώσεως
was-hard-pressed in for the confusion of-the of-Constantine capture
ἄλλοθεν ἄλλος ἡγεμόνες εἶναι τυχόντες ἢ καὶ οἱ τῶν
from-elsewhere other leaders to-be happening or also the(-ones) of-the
ἄλλων προύχοντες ὡς οἰκείαν ἀρχὴν τὴν ὑφ᾽ ἑαυτοὺς
others prominent as own rule the under themselves
ἐποιοῦντο χώραν, ἢ ἐξ αὐτῶν εἰς τοῦτο ὁρμήσαντες ἢ καὶ
made country or from themselves to this having-rushed or also
παρὰ τῶν οἰκητόρων μετακληθέντες εἰς τὴν τῆς χώρας
by the inhabitants summoned to the of-the country
δεφένδευσιν. αὐτίκα Θεόδωρός τε, ὃν Μωροθεόδωρον
defense for-instance Theodore both whom Morotheodoros
ἀπεκάλουν, ἄρχων ἦν τῆς Φιλαδέλφου πόλεως· ἕτερος δὲ
they-called ruler was of-the of-Philadelphia city another and
Σάββας τοὐπίκλην τοῦ ἄστεος ἐδέσποζε τοῦ Σαμψὼν μετὰ
Sabbas by-surname of-the town was-master — of-Sampson with
καὶ τῶν πλησίον τυγχανόντων αὐτῷ· Παφλαγονίας δὲ
also the(-places) near happening to-him of-Paphlagonia and
πάσης ἐγκρατὴς ἦν Δαυίδ, ἀδελφὸς ὢν Ἀλεξίου τοῦ
of-all master was David brother being of-Alexios the(-one)

τῆς Τραπεζοῦντος κρατήσαντος, ὃς καὶ Μέγας ὠνομάζετο
— of-Trebizond having-ruled who also Grand was-named
Κομνηνός· οἳ τοῦ βασιλέως Ἀνδρονίκου ὑπῆρχον ἔγγονοι,
Komnenos who of-the emperor Andronikos were grandsons
Μανουὴλ τῷ τούτου τεχθέντες υἱῷ. διὰ ταῦτα ἐν
to-Manuel to-the of-him born son because-of these-things in
πολλῇ στενοχωρίᾳ τὰ πράγματα ὑπῆρξε τῷ βασιλεῖ
much straits the affairs were for-the emperor
Θεοδώρῳ. ἀλλὰ τὸν μὲν Μωροθεόδωρον καὶ τὸν Σάββαν
Theodore but — indeed Morotheodoros and — Sabbas
εὐχερῶς μετῆλθε κἀντεῦθεν ἐδέσποζεν ἀδεῶς Κελβιανοῦ
easily he-dealt-with and-thence was-master fearlessly of-Kelbianon
τε παντός, Μαιάνδρου Φιλαδελφείας καὶ Νεοκάστρων.
both all of-Maeander of-Philadelphia and of-Neokastra
Ἀλλ' ἐνταῦθά μοι ὁ λόγος ἀναμεινάτω· ἱστορῆσαι γὰρ 8
but here for-me the account let-it-wait to-narrate for
βούλεται τὰ τῷ βασιλεῖ Ἀλεξίῳ συμβάντα, ἤδη δὲ
it-wishes the(-things) to-the emperor Alexios having-happened already and
καὶ τἆλλα τὰ ἐπὶ τῇ ἑσπέρᾳ γενέσθαι φθάσαντα.
also the-rest the(-things) in the west to-happen having-come-first
ἀφίκετο μέν, ὡς εἰρήκειν, εἰς Θεσσαλονίκην ὁ εἰρημένος
arrived indeed as I-had-said to Thessalonica the aforesaid
βασιλεὺς Ἀλέξιος καὶ ὑπεδέχθη παρὰ τῆς αὐτοῦ νύμφης,
emperor Alexios and was-received by the his sister-in-law
ἣ ἐξ Οὔγγρων μὲν ὥρμητο, ἐπεγαμβρεύθη δὲ τῷ
who from Hungarians indeed came was-married and to-the
βασιλεῖ Ἰσαακίῳ μετὰ τὴν τῆς γυναικὸς αὐτοῦ τελευτήν·
emperor Isaac after the of-the wife his death
ἣν καὶ ὡραίαν πάνυ τῷ εἴδει οἱ κατιδόντες ἔφασκον
whom also comely very in-the form the(-ones) having-seen said
εἶναι. τῶν γοῦν Ἰταλῶν εἰς πολυμέρειαν τὰ τῆς
to-be of-the then Italians into many-parts the(-things) —

Ῥωμαΐδος κληρωσαμένων καὶ τοῦ μὲν ἐκ Φλάντρας
of-Romania having-divided-by-lot and — indeed from Flanders
ὡρμημένου Βαλδουΐνου βασιλέως ἀναγορευθέντος, τοῦ δὲ
having-come Baldwin emperor proclaimed the and
δουκὸς Βενετίας, ὃς καὶ αὐτοπροσώπως συνῆν, μερίδα
duke of-Venice who also in-person was-present share
οὐ σμικρὰν ἐσχηκότος καὶ δεσποτικῷ ἀξιώματι τιμηθέντος
not small having-had and with-despotic dignity honored
ἔχειν τε ἐξ ὅλου — πρὸς τὸ ὅλον, ὃ τὸ τῶν Φράγγων
to-have and from whole toward the whole which the of-the Franks
ἐκτήσατο γένος — τὸ τέταρτον καὶ τοῦ τετάρτου τὸ ἥμισυ,
acquired race the fourth and of-the fourth the half
ἐπειδὴ καὶ ὁ μαρκέσιος ἀξιόλογον μοῖραν τῇ συμμαχίᾳ
since also the marquis considerable portion to-the alliance
ἦν ἐνεγκάμενος, ῥὴξ Θεσσαλονίκης παρὰ τοῦ Φλάντρα
had having-brought king of-Thessalonica by the(-one) of-Flanders
τετίμητο, προσλαβόμενος καὶ γυναῖκα τὴν δηλωθεῖσαν
had-been-honored having-taken also wife the aforesaid
Μαρίαν τὴν ἐξ Οὐγγρίας, πρότερον προσηρμοσμένην
Maria the from Hungary formerly joined
Ἰσαακίῳ τῷ βασιλεῖ. ὑπὸ ταύτης, ὡς ἔφην, ὁ βασιλεὺς
to-Isaac the emperor by her as I-said the emperor
ὑπεδέχθη Ἀλέξιος. μετὰ μικρὸν δὲ φωραθεὶς τοῖς
was-received Alexios after a-little and caught by-the(-ones)
ἐκεῖσε νεωτερίζεσθαι ἀπεδιώχθη συνάμα τῇ γυναικὶ καὶ
there to-be-plotting-revolt was-driven-away together-with the wife and
τῇ θυγατρὶ Εὐδοκίᾳ, ἣν καὶ ἐς Κόρινθον ἀφικόμενος τῷ
the daughter Eudokia whom also to Corinth having-come to-the
ἐκεῖσε τῆς χώρας κατάρχοντι συνεζεύξατο Σγουρῷ· ἦν
there of-the country ruling joined to-Sgouros was
γὰρ καὶ ὁ Σγουρὸς οὗτος μετὰ τὴν τῆς Κωνσταντίνου
for also — Sgouros this(-man) after the of-the of-Constantine

ἅλωσιν νεωτερίσας καθ' ἑαυτὸν καὶ Κορίνθου ἄρχων καὶ
capture having-revolted by himself and of-Corinth ruler and
τῶν περὶ ταύτην χωρῶν, ὡς καὶ ἑτέρων ἕτεροι. μικρὸν δὲ
of-the around it countries as also of-others others a-little and
καὶ τοῖς ἐκεῖσε προσδιατρίψας, γνοὺς παρά τινων
also with-the(-ones) there having-stayed having-learned from some
ὡς ἁλίσκεσθαι μέλλει, ἀπέδρα. ἐκ Λογγιβαρδίας δέ τισι
that to-be-captured he-was-about he-ran-away from Longobardy and some
ξυντυχὼν ἁλίσκεται, πρὸς τὸν πρωτεξάδελφον αὐτοῦ Μιχαὴλ
having-met is-captured toward the first-cousin his Michael
τὰς κινήσεις ποιούμενος· ἦν γὰρ οὗτος τῷ τότε μέρους
the movements making was for this(-man) at-the then(-time) of-part
τινὸς τῆς παλαιᾶς Ἠπείρου κρατήσας καὶ πολλὰ τοῖς πρὸς
some of-the old Epirus having-mastered and many to-the to
τὰ ἐκεῖσε μέρη ἀφιγμένοις Ἰταλοῖς παρέχων πράγματα. καὶ
the there parts having-come Italians giving troubles and
ἦν οὗτος δυναστεύων τῆς τοιαύτης χώρας· Ἰωαννίνων γὰρ
was this(-man) holding-power of-the such country of-Ioannina for
ἦρχε καὶ Ἄρτης καὶ μέχρι Ναυπάκτου. ὡς γοῦν ἑάλω
he-ruled and of-Arta and as-far-as Naupaktos when then was-captured
παρὰ τῶν Λογγιβάρδων ὁ βασιλεὺς Ἀλέξιος, ἀπεμπολεῖτο
by the Longobards the emperor Alexios was-sold
παρ' αὐτῶν συνάμα τῇ γυναικὶ εἰς τὸν δηλωθέντα Μιχαὴλ
by them together-with the wife to the aforesaid Michael
χρυσίον συχνὸν τοῖς κατέχουσι διδόντα. μικρὸν δὲ μετὰ
gold much to-the(-ones) holding giving a-little and with
τοῦ Μιχαὴλ προσκαρτερήσας ὁ βασιλεὺς Ἀλέξιος βούλεται
— Michael having-stayed the emperor Alexios wishes
πρὸς τὸν τοῦ Ἰκονίου σουλτὰν ἀπελθεῖν, ὃν Ἰαθατίνην
to the — of-Iconium sultan to-go-off whom Iathatines
ὠνόμαζον· ἦν γὰρ τούτῳ συνήθης. ὁ γὰρ εἰρημένος
they-named was for to-him intimate the for aforesaid

Ἰαθατίνης τὰς τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ αὐτοῦ χεῖρας ἀποδρὰς Ἀζατίνη
Iathatines the of-the brother his hands having-escaped Azatines
κατάρχοντος τῷ τότε τῶν Μουσουλμάνων, φυγὰς παρὰ
ruling at-the then(-time) of-the Muslims fugitive to
τὴν Κωνσταντίνου ᾤχετο καὶ τῷ βασιλεῖ ὑποδέδεκται
the of-Constantine went and by-the emperor was-received
Ἀλεξίῳ, βαπτίζεταί τε παρ᾽ αὐτοῦ καὶ υἱοθετεῖται· ὃς
Alexios is-baptized both by him and is-adopted who
καὶ τῷ βασιλεῖ Ἀλεξίῳ συναπέδρα ἀποδράντι τῆς
also with-the emperor Alexios ran-away-with(-him) having-run-away from-the
Κωνσταντίνου. ἀλλ᾽ οὔπω συχναὶ παρῆλθον ἡμέραι, καὶ
of-Constantine but not-yet many passed days and
ἀφικνεῖται πρὸς αὐτὸν ἀνὴρ κρύφα μηνύων αὐτῷ τὸν τοῦ
arrives to him man secretly revealing to-him the of-the
ἀδελφοῦ αὐτοῦ μόρον· ὃς καὶ ῥάκεσι πενιχροῖς ἐσταλμένος
brother his fate who also in-rags poor clad
μετ᾽ αὐτοῦ ἀφικνεῖται, καὶ τοῖς αὐτοῦ καταστὰς γνώριμος
with him arrives and to-the his(-people) having-become known
περσάρχης ἐπιφημίζεται. ὃς καὶ τῷ βασιλεῖ Θεοδώρῳ ἔν
Persian-ruler is-proclaimed who also to-the emperor Theodore at
τισι καιροῖς στενοχωρηθέντι χρήσιμος ἀνεφάνη, συμμαχίαν
some times hard-pressed useful appeared alliance
δοὺς καὶ τὰ εἰς εἰρήνην σπεισάμενος· ὡς ἀδελφὴν
having-given and the(-things) for peace having-concluded as sister
γὰρ τὴν βασιλίδα Ἄνναν ὠνόμαζε.
for the empress Anna he-named

9 Πρὸς τοῦτον ἡ πᾶσα σπουδὴ τοῦ βασιλέως Ἀλεξίου
to this(-man) the whole zeal of-the emperor Alexios
ἀφικέσθαι προσῆν· ἐδυσανασχέτει γὰρ ἐλθεῖν περὶ τὸν
to-arrive was-present he-was-vexed for to-come to the
βασιλέα καὶ γαμβρὸν Θεόδωρον. ἐφοδίοις γοῦν ἀπάρας
emperor and son-in-law Theodore with-provisions then having-set-out

τῆς τοῦ Μιχαὴλ γῆς καὶ φορῷ χρησάμενος πνεύματι τῇ
from-the — of-Michael land and favorable having-used wind to-the
τῆς Ἀττάλου προσώρμισεν. ἀσμενέστατα γοῦν παρὰ τοῦ
— of-Attalos he-put-in most-gladly then by the
σουλτὰν προσδέδεκται. ὁ βασιλεὺς δὲ Θεόδωρος διῆγεν
sultan was-received the emperor and Theodore was-staying
ἐν τῇ Νικαίᾳ, καὶ πρεσβεία πρὸς τοῦ σουλτὰν παρ᾽ αὐτὸν
in — Nicaea and embassy from the sultan to him
ἀφικνεῖται τὴν τοῦ βασιλέως καὶ πενθεροῦ γνωρίζουσα
arrives the of-the emperor and father-in-law making-known
ἄφιξιν, καὶ ὡς ἄδικος εἴη ξένης ἐπειλημμένος ἀρχῆς.
arrival and that unjust he-was foreign having-seized rule
ἐταράχθη γοῦν ἐπὶ τοῖς λόγοις ὁ βασιλεύς, καὶ δέος αὐτῷ
was-troubled then at the words the emperor and fear to-him
ἐπεισῄει οὐχὶ σμικρόν. ὁ μὲν γὰρ σουλτὰν πρόφασιν εἶχε
came-upon not small the indeed for sultan as-pretext had
τὸν βασιλέα Ἀλέξιον, τῇ δ᾽ ἀληθείᾳ σκοπὸς ἦν αὐτῷ
the emperor Alexios in-the but truth aim was to-him
πᾶσαν τὴν Ῥωμαίων καταδραμεῖν καὶ καταληΐσασθαι ἢ καὶ
all the of-Romans to-overrun and to-plunder or also
ὑπὸ χεῖρα ποιήσασθαι· καὶ ἦν ἐπὶ ξυροῦ, ὅ φασι, τῷ
under hand to-make and it-was on razor's(-edge) as they-say for-the
βασιλεῖ Θεοδώρῳ τὰ πράγματα. συναγαγὼν οὖν τοὺς αὐτοῦ
emperor Theodore the affairs having-gathered then the his(-men)
ἐπειρᾶτο τούτων, εἴτε αὐτῷ προσανέχοντες ἂν εἶεν εἴτε
he-tested them whether to-him attached — would-be or
τῷ πενθερῷ αὐτοῦ τῷ βασιλεῖ Ἀλεξίῳ. οἱ δὲ πανσυδὶ
to-the father-in-law his the emperor Alexios the(-ones) and all-together
μιᾷ φωνῇ, ὡς ἐκ γνώμης μιᾶς, ἢ συζῆν αὐτῷ ἢ
with-one voice as from mind one either to-live-with him or
συναπολέσθαι εἰρήκεισαν. θαρσαλέος γοῦν ὁ βασιλεὺς τοῖς
to-perish-with(-him) had-said bold then the emperor at-the

τῶν ὑπὸ χεῖρα λόγοις γενόμενος τῆς Νικαίας ἐξῄει,
of-the(-men) under hand words having-become — from-Nicaea went-out
ἔχων καὶ τὸν τοῦ σουλτὰν πρέσβιν μεθ' ἑαυτοῦ. ταχύτερον
having also the of-the sultan envoy with himself more-quickly
δὲ τῷ δρόμῳ χρησάμενος ἀφικνεῖται τῇ Φιλαδέλφου. ὁ δὲ
and the march having-used arrives at-the of-Philadelphia the and
σουλτὰν ἐπάρας μεθ' ἑαυτοῦ καὶ ὃν ὡς δέλεαρ ἐπεφέρετο
sultan having-taken-up with himself also whom as bait he-was-carrying
βασιλέα Ἀλέξιον, τὴν ἔφοδον ἐν Ἀντιοχείᾳ πεποίηται· πόλις
emperor Alexios the attack at Antioch made city
δὲ αὕτη χώρας προκαθημένη Μαιάνδρου. κρατεῖν δέ οἱ
and this of-country lying-before of-Maeander to-master and to-him
ταύτης ἦν ὁ σκοπός· διὰ ταῦτα καὶ ἑλεπόλεις ἐστήσατο
of-it was the aim because-of these-things also siege-engines he-set-up
καὶ ἐπόρθει τὴν πόλιν, καὶ ἦν γε αὕτη ἐν χρῷ τοῦ
and he-was-sacking the city and it-was at-least this(-city) in skin of-the
ἁλῶναι. ὃ δὴ καὶ δεδιὼς ὁ βασιλεὺς Θεόδωρος — ἦν
to-be-captured which indeed also fearing the emperor Theodore it-was
γὰρ καὶ ἀληθὲς ὡς εἰ ταύτης ἐκράτησεν ὁ σουλτάν, οὐδὲν
for also true that if it he-mastered the sultan nothing
ἂν ἦν αὐτῷ ἐμποδὼν τοῦ μὴ πᾶσαν τὴν τῶν Ῥωμαίων
— would-be to-him hindrance of-the not all the of-the Romans
χειρώσασθαι — καὶ οἷον ἐπὶ κύβου τὸν πόλεμον θεὶς ἢ
to-subdue and as-if on die the war having-set or
μᾶλλον ἀληθῶς εἰπεῖν ἐπὶ τῷ δεσπότῃ θαρρήσας Χριστῷ,
rather truly to-say on the master having-trusted Christ
οὗ τὴν κλῆσιν ὡς σύσσημόν τι ἢ σφραγῖδα οἱ εὐσεβεῖς
whose the name as token some or seal the pious(-ones)
περιφέρομεν, ἐπισπεύδει τὸν δρόμον, παραγγείλας μηδένα
carry-about hastens the march having-ordered no-one
ἢ σκηνὴν φέρειν ἢ ἄχθος ἢ ἕτερόν τι τῶν μὴ
either tent to-carry or burden or other anything of-the(-things) not

λυσιτελούντων ἐν τῷ πολέμῳ ἄνευ μέντοι τῶν ἀναγκαίων,
profitable in the war without however the necessities
τροφῆς μικρᾶς καὶ ἐνδύματος. ἦν δὲ ἅπαν αὐτῷ τὸ
of-food small and of-clothing was and whole his the
στράτευμα εἰς δισχιλίους ἠριθμημένον, ὧν ὀκτακόσιοι
army to two-thousand numbered of-whom eight-hundred
μὲν Ἰταλοί, ἄνδρες γενναῖοι καὶ τὴν χεῖρα σθεναροί, ὡς
indeed Italians men noble and in-the hand strong as
ὁ καιρὸς ἔδειξε, Ῥωμαῖοι δὲ οἱ λοιποὶ ἐτύγχανον.
the occasion showed Romans and the rest were
Ἐγγύς που γοῦν γενόμενος τῆς Ἀντιοχείας ὁ βασιλεὺς 10
near somewhere then having-come — of-Antioch the emperor
ἀφίησι τὸν πρέσβιν Πέρσην παρὰ τὸν σφέτερον ἀφικέσθαι
lets-go the envoy Persian to the his-own to-arrive
δεσπότην· καὶ ὃς ἀπῆλθε καὶ μηνύει τῷ σουλτὰν τὴν τοῦ
master and he went-off and reveals to-the sultan the of-the
βασιλέως ἔφοδον, δύσπιστον ἐκείνῳ πάνυ τυγχάνουσαν.
emperor approach hard-to-believe to-that(-man) very being
ὅρκοις γοῦν ἐβεβαίου ὁ πρέσβις, ὡς ἐγγὺς ὁ βασιλεὺς
with-oaths then confirmed the envoy that near the emperor
πάρεστι. ταῦτ᾽ οὖν ἀκηκοὼς ὁ σουλτὰν ὡς εἶχε τάχους
is-present these-things then having-heard the sultan as he-had of-speed
τὰς δυνάμεις συνάγει καὶ παρατάττει πρὸς τὸν πόλεμον.
the forces gathers and draws-up for the war
ἐμπίπτουσι γοῦν ταῖς τοῦ σουλτὰν πρῶτον δυνάμεσιν Ἰταλοί,
fall-upon then the of-the sultan first forces Italians
ἀλλ᾽ ἦν τὸ τῶν Μουσουλμάνων πλῆθος πολύ. ἔργα δὲ
but was the of-the Muslims multitude great deeds and
κρατερᾶς χειρὸς ἐνδειξάμενοι καὶ γενναιοτέρας ψυχῆς σχεδὸν
of-strong hand having-displayed and of-nobler soul almost
πίπτουσι πάντες, ἀπειροπλασίους ξίφους ἔργον ποιήσαντες.
fall all countless of-sword work having-made

τῶν γοῦν Ἰταλῶν οἱ Μουσουλμάνοι περιγενόμενοι ῥᾷον
of-the then Italians the Muslims having-prevailed more-easily
καὶ τῶν Ῥωμαϊκῶν ἐκράτουν δυνάμεων· καὶ οἱ μὲν
also of-the Roman mastered forces and the(-ones) indeed
προτροπάδην ἔφευγον, ὀλίγοι δὲ ἐκαρτέρουν τὸ τέλος τῆς
headlong fled few and endured the end of-the
μάχης ἀποσκοπούμενοι. τῆς μάχης οὖν ἐγκρατὴς γενόμενος
battle watching-for of-the battle then master having-become
ὁ σουλτὰν ἐζήτει τὸν βασιλέα, καὶ δείκνυσί τις τοῦτον
the sultan sought the emperor and shows someone him
αὐτῷ ἐν ἀμηχανίᾳ γενόμενον. ὡς εἶχε γοῦν τάχους πρὸς
to-him in helplessness being as he-had then of-speed toward
τὸν βασιλέα ὁρμᾷ, τῇ τοῦ σώματος ἰσχύι θαρρῶν
the emperor rushes in-the of-the body strength trusting
ἐπ᾽ αὐτῷ. ἔγνωσαν οὖν ἑκατέρους ἑκάτεροι. καὶ ὁ μὲν
on him recognized then each-other each and the indeed
σουλτὰν κορύνῃ κατὰ κεφαλῆς πλήττει τὸν βασιλέα, καὶ
sultan with-mace on head strikes the emperor and
πίπτει τοῦ ἵππου· ἦν γὰρ τῇ βολῇ σκοτοδινιάσας.
he-falls from-the horse he-was for by-the blow dizzied
συνεποδίσθη γάρ, ὥς φασι, τῇ βολῇ καὶ ὁ ἵππος, οὐκ
was-entangled for as they-say by-the blow also the horse not
οἶδ᾽ εἰ καὶ τούτου δευτέραν παρὰ τοῦ σουλτὰν λαβόντος
I-know if also of-this(-one) second from the sultan having-received
πληγήν. ἔξω γοῦν τοῦ ἵππου ὁ βασιλεὺς γενόμενος καὶ
blow out then of-the horse the emperor having-come and
οἷον ῥωσθεὶς ὑπὸ θειοτέρας δυνάμεως, ἐπὶ πόδας σταθεὶς
as-if strengthened by diviner power on feet having-stood
τὴν σπάθην ἐξάγει τοῦ κουλεοῦ, καὶ τοῦ σουλτὰν ἐνθένδε
the sword draws from-the scabbard and the sultan thence
στραφέντος καὶ ὑβριστικῶς ἐπειπόντος ‘λάβετε τουτονί’
having-turned and insolently having-said take this(-man)

πλήττει τοὺς ὀπισθίους πόδας τῆς τοῦ σουλτὰν ἵππου ὁ
strikes the hind feet of-the of-the sultan horse the
βασιλεύς· θηλείας γὰρ ἐπωχεῖτο καὶ ὑπερμεγέθους. ὡς ἐκ
emperor a-mare for he-was-riding and very-great as from
πύργου γοῦν ὁ σουλτὰν καταβάλλεται, καί οἱ αἰφνηδὸν
tower then the sultan is-thrown-down and his suddenly
ἡ κεφαλὴ ἀποτέμνεται, μήτε τοῦ βασιλέως γνόντος
the head is-cut-off neither the emperor knowing
μήθ' ἑτέρου τῶν συμπαρεστώτων τῷ βασιλεῖ παρὰ
nor other of-the(-ones) standing-by the emperor by
τοῦ κεκαρατόμητο. νικᾷ γοῦν ἐντεῦθεν ὁ βασιλεὺς τὸ
whom he-had-been-beheaded wins then thence the emperor the
πλεῖστον ἐξηττημένος· οὐδὲ γὰρ εἶχεν ἐπὶ τοῖς πρόσω
most having-been-defeated nor for he-had toward the(-things) forward
χωρεῖν, μετὰ μετρίων ἐλλελειμμένος. τοῦτο τοῖς Ῥωμαίοις
to-go with few left this for-the Romans
ἀναψυχῆς ἐγένετο πρόφασις· σπονδὰς γὰρ ἐντεῦθεν
of-relief became (the)-occasion treaties for thence
ἀρρήκτους οἱ Μουσουλμάνοι μετὰ Ῥωμαίων ἐποίησαν.
unbreakable the Muslims with Romans made
ἐντεῦθεν τῆς ἐκεῖθεν μάχης ἐκεχειρίαν ἔσχεν ὁ βασιλεύς,
thence from-the there battle truce had the emperor
τοῖς δ' Ἰταλῶν πολέμοις ἐσχόλαζε. προσελάβετο δὲ
to-the and of-Italians wars he-devoted-himself took and
καὶ τὸν πενθερὸν αὐτοῦ τὸν βασιλέα Ἀλέξιον ἐν τῇ μάχῃ
also the father-in-law his the emperor Alexios in the battle
εὑρών, καὶ τὰ εἰκότα τιμήσας ἀπήγαγέ τε εἰς
having-found and the(-things) fitting having-honored led-off both to
Νίκαιαν καὶ τῶν βασιλικῶν παρασήμων ἐκδύσας ἐν τῇ
Nicaea and of-the imperial insignia having-stripped in the
τοῦ Ὑακίνθου μονῇ διάγειν ἐκέλευσεν. ἔνθα καὶ θνήσκει·
— of-Hyakinthos monastery to-live ordered where also he-dies

ἡ γὰρ σύζυγος αὐτοῦ Εὐφροσύνη ἐν τῇ τῆς Ἄρτης
the for wife his Euphrosyne in the — of-Arta
ἐτελεύτησε χώρᾳ, ἔνθα καὶ ὁ νεκρὸς αὐτῆς κατετέθη.
died country where also the corpse her was-laid
11 Περιεγένετο δὲ καὶ ὁ βασιλεὺς Θεόδωρος καὶ τοῦ
prevailed and also the emperor Theodore also over-the
τῆς Παφλαγονίας κρατοῦντος Δαυίδ, καὶ Ἡράκλειαν
— of-Paphlagonia ruling David and Herakleia
παρεστήσατο καὶ Ἄμαστριν καὶ τὴν πᾶσαν πέριξ χώραν
subdued and Amastris and the whole around country
καὶ τὰ πολίχνια. πάλιν δέ μοι τὰ τῆς ἱστορίας
and the little-towns again and for-me the(-things) of-the history
βούλεται τὰ ἐν τῇ ἑσπέρᾳ ξυμβάντα συγγράψασθαι.
wishes the(-things) in the west having-happened to-write
ἵνα δέ μοι ἡ ἱστορία τοῖς πᾶσιν εὔγνωστος εἴη, δέον
so-that and for-me the history to-the all well-known may-be needful
ὀλίγ᾽ ἄττα προεξειπεῖν. τοῦ βασιλέως Ἰσαακίου τῆς
little some(-things) to-say-first of-the emperor Isaac of-the
Κωνσταντίνου κατάρχοντος, καὶ τῆς γαμετῆς θανούσης
of-Constantine ruling and the wife having-died
αὐτοῦ, ἠγάγετο εἰς γυναῖκα τὴν ἣν προειρήκειν ἐξ
his he-took as wife the(-one) whom I-had-said-before from
Οὐγγρίας ὡρμημένην, θυγατέραν οὖσαν τοῦ τῶν Οὔγγρων
Hungary having-come daughter being of-the of-the Hungarians
ἄρχοντος. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἔμελλε τὸν γάμον ποιεῖν καὶ ὑπῆρχεν
ruler when and he-was-about the marriage to-make and was
οὗτος βασιλικός, ἀξιόλογα ἔδει γενέσθαι τούτου
this(-marriage) imperial notable it-was-needful to-be of-this
καὶ τὰ ἀναλώματα. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξ ἁπάσης τῆς Ῥωμαίων
also the expenses thence from all the of-Romans
ἐπαρχίας πρόβατά τε καὶ χοῖροι καὶ βόες συνήγοντο.
province sheep both and pigs and oxen were-gathered

ἐπεὶ δὲ πλείω τῶν ἄλλων ἡ Βουλγάρων τρέφει ταῦτα,
since and more than-the others the of-Bulgarians nourishes these-things
καὶ πλείω παρὰ ταύτης ἀπῃτοῦντο. τὸ δὲ Βουλγάρων
and more from it were-demanded the and of-Bulgarians
φῦλον ἔκσπονδον μὲν τὰ πρῶτα Ῥωμαίοις τελοῦν καὶ
tribe truce-breaking indeed the first-times to-Romans being and
πολλῶν πολέμων πρόξενον γεγονὸς αὐτοῖς ἀνδραποδισμῶν
of-many wars cause having-been to-them of-enslavements
τε καὶ ἁλώσεων πόλεων καὶ μυρίων ἄλλων δεινῶν, καὶ
both and of-captures of-cities and countless other dread(-things) and
ταῦτα ἐν πολλοῖς τοῖς ἔτεσιν, ὕστατα παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως
these-things in many the years lastly by the emperor
Βασιλείου χειροῦνται, ὃν διὰ ταῦτα Βουλγαροκτόνον
Basil are-subdued whom because-of these-things Bulgar-slayer
ἡ φήμη ἐκάλεσε. μέχρι γοῦν τοῦ βασιλέως Ἰσαακίου
the report called until then the emperor Isaac
ὑπόφορον τὸ γένος ἐτέλει Ῥωμαίοις, διὰ δὲ τὴν
tributary the race was to-Romans because-of and the
τοιαύτην πρόφασιν μεμελέτηκεν ἀνταρσίαν. καὶ ἀνίσταταί
such pretext plotted revolt and rises
τις Ἀσὰν τοὔνομα καὶ βασιλεύει τῆς χώρας, ἅπαντα
someone Asan by-name and reigns-over the country all
τὰ ἐντὸς τοῦ Αἵμου μέχρι καὶ τοῦ Ἴστρου ὑφ' ἑαυτὸν
the(-things) within — Haimos as-far-as also — Istros under himself
ποιησάμενος. ἐκ τούτου οὐκ ὀλίγα πράγματα Ῥωμαίοις
having-made from this not few troubles to-Romans
ξυνέβη. ἔχοντες γὰρ οἱ Βούλγαροι τὸ Σκυθικὸν ξύμμαχον
happened having for the Bulgarians the Scythian ally
πολλὰ ἐποίουν τῇ Ῥωμαίων δεινά. τῷ τοι καὶ ὁ
much did to-the of-Romans dread(-things) therefore indeed also the
βασιλεὺς ἀγανακτήσας Ἰσαάκιος, τὸ τῶν Ῥωμαίων ἅπαν
emperor having-been-vexed Isaac the of-the Romans whole

συναγαγὼν στράτευμα, κατ᾽ αὐτῶν ἐχώρει. τὴν γοῦν
having-gathered army against them went the then
παράλιον παριὼν καὶ διὰ τῆς Μεσημβρίας πόλεως τὴν
coast passing and through — Mesembria city the
δίοδον ποιησάμενος ἔσω τοῦ Αἵμου γίνεται. ὁ δὲ Ἀσὰν
passage having-made within — Haimos comes — and Asan
μετὰ τοῦ ὑπ᾽ αὐτὸν στρατεύματος ἐντὸς τοῦ πολιχνίου
with the under him army within the little-town
οὗ δὴ τοὔνομα Στρίναβος εἰσέρχεται. ἔνθα καὶ τὰς
whose indeed the-name Strinabos enters where also the
σκηνὰς ποιησάμενος ὁ βασιλεὺς Ἰσαάκιος τοὺς Βουλγάρους
tents having-made the emperor Isaac the Bulgarians
ἐπολιόρκει, καταστρατηγεῖται δὲ παρ᾽ αὐτῶν. τῶν τις
besieged is-outgeneraled but by them of-the one
γὰρ Βουλγάρων προσωπεῖον ὑπενδὺς φυγάδος ἀφικνεῖται
for Bulgarians mask having-put-on of-fugitive arrives
πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα καὶ μηνύει αὐτῷ Σκυθῶν ἔφοδον, ὁ δὲ
to the emperor and reveals to-him of-Scythians approach the and
βασιλεὺς τῷ λόγῳ θροηθεὶς καὶ ταῦτα τὴν ἐπιοῦσαν τὸ
emperor by-the word alarmed and these-things the following(-day) the
πολίχνιον χειρώσασθαι μέλλων, ἀπανίσταται τοῦ τόπου.
little-town to-subdue being-about departs-from the place
οὐκ ἐξῆλθεν οὖν τὴν ἣν ἐπῆλθεν ὁδόν, ἀλλ᾽ ἐξαπατηθεὶς ὑπὸ
not went-out then the which he-came-by road but deceived by
τοῦ Βουλγάρου τὴν ταχυτέραν τάχα διεξιέναι βεβούλευται.
the Bulgarian the quicker perhaps to-go-through decided
ἐπεισπίπτουσιν οὖν αὐτῷ διερχομένῳ οἱ Βούλγαροι ἐπί
fall-upon then him passing-through the Bulgarians at
τινι στενωπῷ γενομένῳ, καὶ καταλύουσι τὸ ὑπ᾽ αὐτὸν
some narrow-pass being and destroy the under him
ἅπαν στράτευμα καὶ σκυλεύουσι πᾶσαν τὴν τῆς στρατιᾶς
whole army and despoil all the of-the army

ἀποσκευήν, ἀλλὰ δὴ καὶ τὴν τοῦ βασιλέως αὐτοῦ. πίπτουσι
baggage but indeed also the of-the emperor himself fall
δὲ πολλοὶ τῶν Ῥωμαίων, οἱ δὲ διασωθέντες μετὰ
and many of-the Romans the(-ones) and having-escaped with
τοῦ βασιλέως γυμνοί τε ἦσαν καὶ ὀλίγοι πάνυ. ἐντεῦθεν
the emperor naked both were and few very thence
ἐφυσιώθη τὸ τῶν Βουλγάρων γένος, λείαν πολλὴν ἐκ τῶν
was-puffed-up the of-the Bulgarians race booty much from the
Ῥωμαίων κερδῆσαν, ἀλλὰ δὴ καὶ ἐκ τῶν βασιλικῶν
Romans having-gained but indeed also from the imperial
παρασήμων τὰ τιμιώτερα. τάς τε γὰρ τοῦ βασιλέως
insignia the more-precious(-things) the both for of-the emperor
πυραμίδας ἀνελάβοντο καὶ φιάλας τῶν ἐπισήμων καὶ χρῆμα
pyramids they-took-up and bowls of-the notable(-ones) and money
εἰς πλῆθος καὶ αὐτὸν δὴ τὸν βασιλικὸν σταυρόν· τῶν
in quantity and itself indeed the imperial cross of-the
τινος γὰρ αὐτὸν ἱερέων ῥίψαντος μετὰ μικρὸν ἐφεῦρον
some(-one) for it of-priests having-thrown after a-little they-found
ἐν τῷ ποταμῷ, ἐκ χρυσοῦ μὲν κατεσκευασμένον, φέροντα
in the river from gold indeed made bearing
δὲ μέσον ἐκ τοῦ ἁγίου ξύλου, ἐν ᾧπερ ὁ δεσπότης
and in-the-middle from the holy wood on which the master
προσηλώθη Χριστός, εἰς σταυροῦ σχῆμα τετυπωμένον,
was-nailed Christ into of-cross shape formed
θήκας δὲ σμικρὰς παμπόλλας ἔχοντα, ἐν οἷς λείψανα
cases and small very-many having in which relics
πρόσεστι τῶν περιφανεστέρων μαρτύρων τῆς θεομήτορός
are-present of-the more-famous martyrs of-the mother-of-God
τε τὸ γάλα καὶ μέρος τι τῆς ζώνης αὐτῆς καὶ ἄλλα
both the milk and part some of-the girdle her and other

πλεῖστα, ὁπόσα τῶν εὐαγῶν καθειστήκει. ὁ μὲν οὖν
very-many as-many-as of-the holy(-things) were-placed the indeed then
βασιλεὺς Ἰσαάκιος εἰς τὴν Κωνσταντίνου οἷον φυγὰς ᾤχετο.
emperor Isaac to the of-Constantine as fugitive went
12 Ἐντεῦθεν οὐκ ὀλίγα πράγματα τοῖς Ῥωμαίοις ἐκ
thence not few troubles to-the Romans from
Βουλγάρων ὑπῆρχεν. ἀλλὰ καὶ τοῦ βασιλέως Ἰσαακίου ὑπὸ
Bulgarians arose but also of-the emperor Isaac by
τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ αὐτοῦ Ἀλεξίου τυφλωθέντος καὶ αὐτοῦ δὲ τῶν
the brother his Alexios blinded and him too of-the
Ῥωμαϊκῶν σκήπτρων ἐπειλημμένου, πόλεμοι πάμπολλοι τοῖς
Roman scepters having-seized wars very-many to-the
Ῥωμαίοις παρὰ τῶν Βουλγάρων ἐγένοντο περὶ τὰ μέρη τῆς
Romans from the Bulgarians took-place about the parts —
Φιλιππουπόλεως καὶ Βερόης, ἔνθα καὶ ὁ πρωτοστράτωρ
of-Philippopolis and of-Beroe where also the protostrator
Καμμύτζης ὑπὸ Βουλγάρων ἑάλω μαχόμενος, τοῦ
Kamytzes by Bulgarians was-captured fighting of-the
ἀδελφοῦ τοῦ Ἀσὰν Ἰωάννου τότε κατάρχοντος. ὁ γὰρ
brother — of-Asan John then ruling the for
δηλωθεὶς Ἀσὰν δύο ἔσχεν ἀδελφούς, ὧν ὁ μὲν
aforesaid Asan two had brothers of-whom the(-one) indeed
Πέτρος ἐκαλεῖτο, ὁ δὲ Ἰωάννης. καὶ τὸν μὲν
Peter was-called the(-other) and John and — indeed
Ἰωάννην εἶχε μεθ' ἑαυτοῦ, τὸν δὲ Πέτρον τμῆμά τι
John he-had with himself — and Peter section some
κόψας τῆς ἑαυτοῦ ἐπαρχίας ἄρχειν ἐκείνου διεκελεύσατο·
having-cut of-the his-own province to-rule of-it ordered
ἥ τε γὰρ μεγάλη Περσθλάβα καὶ ἡ Προβάτους καὶ
the both for great Perstblaba and — Probatos and
τὰ περὶ αὐτὰ τῷ Πέτρῳ παρὰ τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ αὐτοῦ
the(-places) around them — to-Peter by the brother his

Ἀσὰν ὡς οἰκεῖος κλῆρος δεδώρηται, ὅθεν καὶ μέχρι τοῦ
Asan as own lot was-given whence also until the
νῦν τὰ τοιαῦτα τοῦ Πέτρου ὀνομάζεται Χώρα. ἐννέα γοῦν
now the such(-places) — of-Peter is-named Land nine then
ἐνιαυτοὺς διανύσας ὁ Ἀσὰν βασιλικῶς κατάρχων τοῦ
years having-completed — Asan imperially ruling of-the
Βουλγαρικοῦ γένους φονεύεται παρὰ τοῦ πρωτεξαδέλφου
Bulgarian race is-murdered by the first-cousin
αὐτοῦ Ἰβαγγοῦ, ὃς καὶ παραυτίκα ἀπέδρα· βασιλεύει δὲ
his Ivanko who also at-once ran-away reigns and
τοῦ γένους ὁ ἀδελφὸς αὐτοῦ Ἰωάννης, μὴ θελησάντων
over-the race the brother his John not having-wished
τῶν Βουλγάρων τὸν Πέτρον εἰς βασιλείαν ἀναγαγεῖν. καὶ
the Bulgarians — Peter to kingship to-lead-up and
ὁ τοῦ Ἀσὰν δὲ υἱὸς Ἰωάννης ἔτι ἀφῆλιξ ὑπῆρχεν.
the — of-Asan and son John still under-age was

III · JOHN OF BULGARIA, HENRY, AND ROBERT

John of Bulgaria's Scythians capture the emperor Baldwin; John ravages Macedonia and dies at Thessalonica. Theodore of Epirus routs Peter. Theodore Laskaris marries his daughters to the king of Hungary's house and to John Doukas. The Latin emperor Henry treats the Romans kindly; the papal legate Pelagius persecutes the Orthodox; Henry's nephew Robert succeeds and governs more weakly.

Οὗτος οὖν ὁ Ἰωάννης βασιλεὺς Βουλγάρων ὀνομασθεὶς 13
this(-man) then — John king of-Bulgarians named
πολλῶν τε τοῖς Ῥωμαίοις αἴτιος ἐγεγόνει κακῶν,
of-many both to-the Romans cause had-become of-evils
εὐτυχῶς δὲ καὶ τοῖς Ἰταλοῖς αὐτοῖς. ἦν γὰρ οὗτος
fortunately and also to-the Italians themselves was for this(-man)

βασιλεὺς Βουλγάρων, ὁπότε ἡ Κωνσταντίνου ἑάλω.
king of-Bulgarians when the of-Constantine was-captured
ὡς γοῦν οἱ Ἰταλοὶ πᾶσαν τὴν τῆς Μακεδονίας χώραν
when then the Italians all the — of-Macedonia country
ὑφ' ἑαυτοὺς ἐποιήσαντο, βασιλικῶς τοῦ πρώτως ἐν
under themselves made imperially the first in
τῇ Κωνσταντινουπόλει κατάρξαντος Βαλδουΐνου τὰ
— Constantinople having-ruled Baldwin the(-things)
κατ' αὐτοὺς διευθύνοντος, καὶ πρὸς τὴν πόλιν
concerning them directing also to the city
Ἀδριανοῦ διεμηνύσαντο ὅπως ὑπ' αὐτοὺς γένηται· ὁ
of-Hadrian sent-word that under them it-might-be the
γὰρ βασιλεὺς Βουλγάρων Ἰωάννης προύλαβε χειρώσασθαι
for king of-Bulgarians John had-been-first to-subdue
τὴν Φιλιππούπολιν καὶ ἀνδραποδισμὸν μέγαν τῶν
— Philippopolis and enslavement great of-the
Ῥωμαίων ἐκεῖθεν ποιήσασθαι. μὴ βουληθέντων δὲ τῶν
Romans thence to-make not having-wished and the
Ἀδριανουπολιτῶν ὑπὸ χεῖρας γενέσθαι τῶν Ἰταλῶν,
Adrianopolitans under hands to-come of-the Italians
ἐκστρατεύουσιν οἱ Ἰταλοὶ κατ' αὐτῶν, αὐτοῦ τε τοῦ
march-out the Italians against them himself both the
βασιλέως Βαλδουΐνου συνόντος αὐτοῖς καὶ τοῦ τὸν τόπον
emperor Baldwin being-with them and the(-one) the place
τοῦ δουκὸς ὑπέχοντος Βενετίας ἐν τῇ Κωνσταντινουπόλει.
of-the duke holding of-Venice in — Constantinople
εἰς στενοχωρίαν γοῦν οὐ μικρὰν ἐλθόντες οἱ τῆς
into straits then not small having-come the of-the
Ἀδριανοῦ οἰκήτορες ἀποστέλλουσι πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα τῶν
of-Hadrian inhabitants send to the king of-the
Βουλγάρων Ἰωάννην, ἵνα συναίρηται τούτοις καὶ τοῦ
Bulgarians John that he-may-take-part-with them and from-the

ἐπηρτημένου κινδύνου ῥύσηται. ὁ δὲ ἀσμένως δέχεται
impending danger may-rescue(-them) he and gladly accepts
τοῦτο, καὶ Σκύθας μεθ' ἑαυτοῦ προσλαβόμενος, ἐπεὶ
this and Scythians with himself having-taken-along since
φανερῶς οὐκ εἶχε τοῖς Λατίνοις μαχέσασθαι, περιγενέσθαι
openly not he-could the Latins to-fight to-prevail
βεβούληται μηχαναῖς. καὶ ὁ μὲν ἔκειτο μακράν που
decided by-devices and he indeed lay far somewhere
τῆς Ἀδριανουπόλεως, ἐκπέμπει δὲ κατὰ τῶν Ἰταλῶν τοὺς
— from-Adrianople sends-out and against the Italians the
Σκύθας τῇ Σκυθικῇ στρατείᾳ κατ' αὐτῶν χρήσασθαι.
Scythians the Scythian warfare against them to-use
Ἰταλοῖς μὲν οὖν ἔθος ἐφ' ἵπποις ὑψαύχεσιν ἐποχεῖσθαι
for-Italians indeed then custom on horses high-necked to-ride
καταφράκτοις τε δι' ὅλου εἶναι τοῖς ὅπλοις τοῦ
armored both through whole to-be with-the arms of-the
σώματος, κἀντεῦθεν δυσκινήτως κατὰ τῶν ἐναντίων
body and-thence sluggishly against the opponents
ὁρμῶσι· Σκύθαι δὲ κουφότερον ὡπλισμένοι ἐλευθερώτερον
they-charge Scythians and more-lightly armed more-freely
ἐπιπηδῶσι τοῖς ἐναντίοις. οὗ μὴ ξυνιέντες οἱ Ἰταλοὶ παρὰ
leap-upon the opponents which not understanding the Italians by
τῶν Σκυθῶν καταστρατηγοῦνται καὶ νικῶνται, ὥστε καὶ
the Scythians are-outgeneraled and are-defeated so-that even
αὐτὸν τὸν βασιλέα Βαλδουῖνον ὑπ' αὐτῶν ἁλῶναι καὶ
himself the emperor Baldwin by them to-be-captured and
δέσμιον ἀπαχθῆναι πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα Βουλγάρων Ἰωάννην·
bound to-be-led-off to the king of-Bulgarians John
οὗπερ, ὥς φασι, καὶ τὴν κεφαλὴν μετὰ τὴν σφαγὴν εἰς
whose as they-say also the head after the slaughter to
κύπελλον χρηματίσαι τῷ βαρβάρῳ, τῶν ἐντὸς ταύτης
cup to-have-served to-the barbarian of-the(-things) within it

πάντων κεκαθαρμένην καὶ κόσμῳ περιπυκασθεῖσαν
all cleaned and with-ornament covered
κύκλωθεν. οἱ μὲν οὖν Ἀδριανουπολῖται ἐκ τοῦ παραυτίκα
round-about the indeed then Adrianopolitans from the instant
τὸ γεγονὸς οὐκ ἐγνώρισαν· εἰ γὰρ ᾔδεισαν,
the(-thing) having-happened not knew if for they-had-known
ἐξῄεσαν ἂν τῆς πόλεως καὶ λείαν αὐτῶν
they-would-have-gone-out — from-the city and booty of-them
ἐπεποιήκεισαν τὰς Ἰταλικὰς σκηνάς. οἱ γοῦν ἀπολειφθέντες
would-have-made the Italian tents the then left
Ἰταλοὶ φῶτα λαμπρὰ ἐν ταῖς σφετέραις ἀνάψαντες
Italians lights bright in the their-own having-kindled
σκηναῖς καὶ ὑποψίαν δόντες τοῖς πολίταις ὡς πάρεισι,
tents and suspicion having-given to-the citizens that they-are-present
μέσων νυκτῶν φυγάδες περὶ τὴν Κωνσταντίνου χωροῦσι.
of-mid nights fugitives to the of-Constantine go
πρωΐας γοῦν γνόντες τοῦτο οἱ τῆς Ἀδριανοῦ οἰκήτορες
in-the-morning then having-learned this the of-the of-Hadrian inhabitants
τὰ ἐλλελειμμένα ταῖς σκηναῖς ἐληΐσαντο. ὁ μὲν οὖν
the(-things) left in-the tents plundered the indeed then
βασιλεὺς Βουλγάρων κατὰ τὰ ὑπεσχημένα τοῖς
king of-Bulgarians according-to the(-things) promised to-the
Ἀδριανουπολίταις ἐγκρατὴς γενέσθαι τῆς σφῶν πόλεως
Adrianopolitans master to-become of-the their city
ὥρμησεν, οἱ δὲ ἀπηνήναντο τοῦτο. δυσανασχετήσας οὖν ἐπὶ
set-out they but refused this having-been-vexed then at
τῇ ἀπάτῃ ὁ τῶν Βουλγάρων βασιλεὺς πολιορκῆσαι τούτους
the deceit the of-the Bulgarians king to-besiege them
ἠθέλησεν. ἀλλ᾽ ἀφυεῖς παντελῶς εἰς πολιορκίαν οἱ Βούλγαροι·
wished but unfit entirely for siege the Bulgarians
οὔτε γὰρ ἑλεπόλεις οἴδασι στῆσαι οὔτε τι ἄλλο τῶν
neither for siege-engines they-know to-set-up nor anything other of-the(-things)

δυναμένων πορθῆσαι διανοήσασθαι. ἀπάρας γοῦν ἐκεῖθεν
able to-sack to-devise having-set-out then from-there
ὁ τῶν Βουλγάρων βασιλεύς, μὴ ἔχων τὸ ἐμποδὼν ὡς τῶν
the of-the Bulgarians king not having the hindrance as the
Ἰταλῶν αὐτοῦ καταπορθηθέντων τὸ ἔσχατον, ἑτέρου δὲ μὴ
Italians by-him having-been-sacked to-the uttermost other and not
ὄντος τοῦ ἀνθισταμένου, πᾶσαν κατατρέχει Μακεδονίαν.
being of-the(-one) opposing all overruns Macedonia
λείαν οὖν παμπόλλην ἐποιήσατο, αὐτάνδρους τὰς πόλεις
booty then very-great made with-their-men the cities
ἀνδραποδισάμενος καὶ τέλεον κατασκάψας αὐτάς. τὸ δέ
having-enslaved and utterly having-razed them the and
οἱ διανόημα ἦν, ὡς μήποτε Ῥωμαίους ἀνάκλησιν σχεῖν
his thought was that never Romans recall to-have
τῶν σφετέρων ἐπιδράξεσθαι πόλεων. κατέσκαψε γοῦν ἐκ
of-the their-own to-take-bold-of-again cities he-razed then from
βάθρων αὐτῶν τὴν Φιλιππούπολιν, θαυμαστὴν ἄγαν οὖσαν,
foundations their — Philippopolis wonderful very being
ἥτις παρὰ τῷ Ἔβρῳ κεῖται, εἶτα τὰς ἄλλας πάσας πόλεις,
which by — Hebros lies then the other all cities
τὴν Ἡράκλειαν, τὸ Πάνιον, τὴν Ῥαιδεστόν, Χαριούπολιν,
— Herakleia — Panion — Raidestos Charioupolis
Τραϊανούπολιν, Μάκρην, Κλαυδιούπολιν, Μοσυνούπολιν,
Traianoupolis Makre Klaudioupolis Mosynopolis
Περιθεώριον καὶ ἄλλας πολλάς, ἃς ἀριθμεῖν οὐ χρεών. τὸν
Peritheorion and others many which to-count not needful the
δὲ λαὸν ἀπάρας ἐκεῖθεν περὶ τὰς παραρροίας καθίζει
and people having-taken-up from-there about the river-banks settles
τοῦ Ἴστρου, ἐκ τῶν ἰδίων τῶν ἠνδραποδισμένων κωμῶν
— of-Istros from the own the enslaved villages
καὶ πόλεων τὰς κλήσεις ἐπιθεὶς ταῖς οἰκήσεσιν. ἀντάμυναν
and cities the names having-put on-the dwellings retaliation

οὖν, ὡς ἔφασκεν, ἐποιεῖτο τῶν ὧν εἰργάσατο πρὸς
then as he-said he-was-making for-the which he-wrought against
Βουλγάρους κακῶν ὁ βασιλεὺς Βασίλειος, καὶ καλεῖσθαι
Bulgarians evils the emperor Basil and to-be-called
μὲν ἔλεγεν ἐκεῖνον Βουλγαροκτόνον, Ῥωμαιοκτόνον δὲ
indeed he-said that(-man) Bulgar-slayer Roman-slayer and
ὠνόμαζεν ἑαυτόν. μέχρι γοῦν καὶ αὐτῆς καταντήσας
named himself until then even itself having-arrived
Θεσσαλονίκης ἐκεῖσε θνήσκει πλευρίτιδι νόσῳ κατασχεθείς,
Thessalonica there dies by-pleuritic sickness seized
ὡς δέ τινες ἔλεγον ὅτι ἐκ θεομηνίας αὐτῷ ὁ θάνατος
as and some said that from divine-wrath to-him the death
γέγονεν· ἔδοξε γὰρ αὐτῷ καθ᾽ ὕπνους ἔνοπλον ἄνδρα
came it-seemed for to-him in sleeps armed man
ἐπιστῆναι αὐτῷ καὶ δόρατι πλῆξαί οἱ τὴν πλευράν. ἦν
to-stand-over him and with-spear to-strike his the side it-was
γὰρ καὶ ἀληθῶς ὡς οὐδέποτε τῇ Ῥωμαίων τοσαῦτα
for also truly that never to-the of-Romans so-many
παρά του συνέβη κακά, ὡς καὶ ὄνομα τεθῆναι τούτῳ
from anyone happened evils so-that also name to-be-given to-him
ἐκ κυνὸς τὴν ἐπίκλησιν ἔχον· Σκυλοϊωάννης γὰρ ἐπεκλήθη
from dog the surname having Dog-John for he-was-called
τοῖς πᾶσι. τὸ γὰρ Σκυθῶν γένος ἰδιοποιησάμενος καὶ
by-the all the for of-Scythians race having-made-his-own and
κοινωνήσας αὐτοῖς συγγενείας καὶ τρόπου μετασχὼν
having-shared with-them kinship and of-manner having-partaken
ἐκ φύσεως θηριωδεστέρου, φόνοις ἐνετρύφα Ῥωμαίων.
from nature more-beastlike in-murders reveled of-Romans
ὡς γοῦν οὑτοσὶ ἐτεθνήκει, ὁ τῆς ἀδελφῆς αὐτοῦ παῖς
when then this(-man) had-died the of-the sister his son
Βορίλλας τοὔνομα, τὴν Σκυθίδα θείαν γαμετὴν εἰληφώς,
Borilas by-name the Scythian aunt as-wife having-taken

τῆς ἀρχῆς τῶν Βουλγάρων γέγονεν ἐγκρατής. τὸν δὲ
of-the rule of-the Bulgarians became master the and
τοῦ Ἀσὰν παῖδα Ἰωάννην ἀφήλικα ἔτι ὄντα κρύφα τις
— of-Asan son John under-age still being secretly someone
λαβὼν ἐπειρήκει, ὡς περὶ τοὺς Σκύθας κεχώρηκε. καὶ
having-taken had-gone-off as to the Scythians he-had-gone and
ταῦτα μὲν τὰ περὶ Βουλγάρων· ὁ λόγος δὲ τὰ
these-things indeed the(-things) about Bulgarians the account and the(-things)
μετὰ ταῦτα τοῖς οἰκείοις ἐξιστορήσει καιροῖς.
after these-things at-the proper will-narrate times
Ὁ δὲ Μιχαήλ, ὃν ἱστορήσας ὁ λόγος πέφθακε τῆς 14
— and Michael whom having-narrated the account was-first —
Ἠπείρου κατάρξαι καί τινος μέρους τῆς χώρας Ῥωμαίων,
of-Epirus to-have-ruled and of-some part of-the country of-Romans
τρεῖς κασιγνήτους ἐκέκτητο, τὸν Κωνσταντῖνον, τὸν
three brothers had — Constantine —
Θεόδωρον καὶ τὸν Μανουήλ. ὧν ὁ μὲν Θεόδωρος
Theodore and — Manuel of-whom the(-one) indeed Theodore
τῷ βασιλεῖ Ῥωμαίων συνῆν Θεοδώρῳ τῷ Λάσκαρι,
with-the emperor of-Romans was-with Theodore the Laskaris
ὑπηρετῶν αὐτῷ ὡς καὶ οἱ λοιποὶ τῶν Ῥωμαίων. διὰ
serving him as also the rest of-the Romans because-of
τοῦτο παρακαλεῖ τὸν βασιλέα Θεόδωρον ὁ Μιχαήλ, ἵνα
this beseeches the emperor Theodore — Michael that
τοῦτον πρὸς αὐτὸν ἐκπέμψῃ διὰ τὸ μὴ ἔχειν ἔτι παῖδα
him to him he-send because-of the not to-have yet son
εἰς ἥβην ἐλθόντα, ἀλλ᾽ οὐδὲ γνήσιον — ὁ γὰρ αὐτῷ
to manhood having-come but nor legitimate the for to-him
γεννηθεὶς Μιχαὴλ ἐκ παλλακῆς ἐκείνῳ γεγένηται, περὶ
born Michael from concubine to-him was-born about
οὗ ἐροῦμεν ἐν τοῖς μετέπειτα — καὶ τοῦ θανάτου
whom we-will-speak in the(-things) afterward and of-the death

δὲ δεδιέναι τὸ ἄωρον· τοὺς γὰρ λοιποὺς τῶν ἀδελφῶν
and to-fear the untimeliness the for rest of-the brothers
ἀφυεῖς ἐγίνωσκεν εἰς ἀρχήν. τοῦτον δὲ τὸν Θεόδωρον ὁ
unfit he-knew for rule this(-man) and — Theodore the
βασιλεὺς ἐκπέμπει τῷ ἀδελφῷ Μιχαήλ, ὅρκοις πρῶτον
emperor sends-out to-the brother Michael with-oaths first
ἐμπεδωσάμενος πίστιν δουλείας εἰς τοῦτον φυλάττειν καὶ
having-confirmed faith of-servitude to him to-keep and
εἰς τοὺς μετ᾽ αὐτὸν τῶν Ῥωμαίων κατάρξοντας. ὃς καὶ
to the(-ones) after him of-the Romans going-to-rule who also
ἀφικόμενος συνῆν τῷ ἀδελφῷ Μιχαήλ. μετ᾽ οὐ πολὺ δὲ
having-arrived was-with the brother Michael after not much and
φονεύεται παρά του τῶν ὑπηρετῶν ὁ Μιχαὴλ νύκτωρ
is-murdered by one of-the servants — Michael by-night
ἐπὶ τῆς κλίνης συγκαθεύδων τῇ γυναικί· Ῥωμαῖος δὲ ἦν
on the bed sleeping-with the wife Romaios and was
τῷ φονευτῇ τοὔνομα. ἐπιλαμβάνεται γοῦν τῆς ἐξουσίας
to-the murderer the-name takes-hold then of-the authority
ἐκείνου ὁ ἀδελφὸς Θεόδωρος, ἔχων καὶ τοὺς ἀδελφοὺς
his the brother Theodore having also the brothers
Κωνσταντῖνον καὶ Μανουήλ. ἄρξαι δὲ βουληθεὶς πάνυ γε
Constantine and Manuel to-rule and having-wished very at-least
ἐπηύξησε τὴν αὐτοῦ ἀρχήν· ἔκ τε γὰρ τῶν Ἰταλῶν οὐκ
increased the his rule from both for the Italians not
ὀλίγην χώραν ἐκτήσατο κἀκ τῶν Βουλγάρων πολλήν·
little country he-acquired and-from the Bulgarians much
τήν τε γὰρ Θεσσαλίαν ὑφ᾽ ἑαυτὸν ἐποιήσατο, Ἀχρίδα τε
— both for Thessaly under himself he-made Ochrid both
καὶ Πρίλαπον, Ἄλβανόν τε καὶ αὐτὸ τὸ Δυρράχιον· ἔνθα
and Prilapos Albanon both and itself — Dyrrachion where
καὶ Πέτρον μετὰ μεγίστης στρατιᾶς ἐξ Ἰταλίας ὁρμώμενον
also Peter with greatest army from Italy setting-out

καὶ ὡς πρὸς τὴν Κωνσταντίνου πεποιημένον τὴν δίοδον,
and as to the of-Constantine having-made the passage
ἀνηγορευμένον πρὸς τοῦ πάπα καὶ βασιλέα, αὐτοῦ που
proclaimed by the pope also emperor there somewhere
γεγενημένον προχειρωσάμενόν τε καὶ αὐτὸ τὸ Δυρράχιον
having-been having-taken and also itself — Dyrrachion
γενναίως κατετροπώσατο. ὁ μὲν οὖν ῥηθεὶς Πέτρος
nobly routed the indeed then aforesaid Peter
γαμβρὸς ὑπῆρχεν ἐπ᾽ ἀδελφῇ τοῦ πρώτως βασιλεύσαντος
son-in-law was on sister of-the first having-reigned
ἐκ τοῦ Λατίνων μέρους Βαλδουΐνου καὶ τοῦ μετ᾽ αὐτὸν
from the of-Latins side Baldwin and of-the after him
Ἑρῆ, ἐκαλεῖτο δὲ ἡ αὐτῶν ἀδελφὴ Ἰολεντία, ἐξ ἧς
Henry was-called and the their sister Yolanda from whom
παῖδες τῷ Πέτρῳ γεγένηνται τρεῖς, ὅ τε Φίλιππος, ὁ
children — to-Peter were-born three — both Philip —
Ῥομπέρτος καὶ ὁ Βαλδουῖνος, ὧν ὁ μὲν Ῥομπέρτος
Robert and — Baldwin of-whom the(-one) indeed Robert
καὶ ὁ Βαλδουῖνος τῆς Κωνσταντίνου βεβασιλεύκασι,
and the(-other) Baldwin over-the of-Constantine have-reigned
τοῦ πρώτου αὐτῶν ἀδελφοῦ τοῦ Φιλίππου τῷ ἀδελφῷ
the first their brother — Philip to-the brother
Ῥομπέρτῳ τῆς βασιλείας παραχωρήσαντος. ὑπῆρχον δέ
Robert the kingship having-yielded there-were and
σφισι καὶ ἀδελφαί, ὧν μία Μαρία ἦν, ᾗ συνεζύγη ὁ
to-them also sisters of-whom one Maria was to-whom was-married the
βασιλεὺς Θεόδωρος. ὁ μὲν οὖν δηλωθεὶς Θεόδωρος, καθὼς
emperor Theodore the indeed then aforesaid Theodore as
εἰρήκειν, τὸ οἰκεῖον παραλαβὼν στράτευμα ἀντιτάττεται τῷ
I-had-said the own having-taken army is-drawn-up-against —
Πέτρῳ, μικρὸν ὑπερπηδήσαντι τὸ Δυρράχιον καὶ ἐν ταῖς
Peter a-little having-passed-beyond — Dyrrachion and in the

τοῦ Ἀλβάνου δυσχωρίαις γεγενημένῳ. νικῶσι γοῦν κατὰ
— of-Albanon rough-places being conquer then by
κράτος οἱ τοῦ Κομνηνοῦ Θεοδώρου τὸ τῶν Λατίνων
force the(-men) — of-Komnenos Theodore the of-the Latins
στράτευμα, ὡς πάντας ἄρδην δεσμώτας ποιῆσαι σὺν πᾶσι
army so-that all utterly prisoners to-make with all
σκεύεσι, καὶ αὐτὸν δὲ τὸν βασιλέα Πέτρον ἔργον μαχαίρας
baggage and himself too the emperor Peter work of-sword
γενέσθαι. τοῦτο δὴ τότε μέγα Ῥωμαίοις ἐγεγόνει βοήθημα.
to-become this indeed then great for-Romans had-become help
15 Ἀλλ᾽ ὁ λόγος μοι καὶ πάλιν ἐπὶ τὸν βασιλέα Θεόδωρον
but the account for-me also again to the emperor Theodore
τὸν Λάσκαριν ἐφορμᾷ. οὗτος γὰρ ἐκ τῆς αὐτοῦ γαμετῆς
the Laskaris turns this(-man) for from the his wife
Ἄννης, ὡς ἔφην, τρεῖς ἐποιήσατο θυγατέρας, Εἰρήνην,
Anna as I-said three made daughters Irene
Μαρίαν καὶ Εὐδοκίαν. τὴν γοῦν Μαρίαν τὴν δευτέραν
Maria and Eudokia — then Maria the second
τῶν αὐτοῦ θυγατέρων τῷ ῥηγὶ Οὐγγρίας διερχομένῳ τὴν
of-the his daughters to-the king of-Hungary passing-through the
αὐτοῦ χώραν ἐκ τῶν Ἱεροσολύμων εἰς κῆδος ἐπὶ
his country from — Jerusalem in marriage-alliance for
υἱῷ παραδίδωσι, τὴν δὲ πρώτην αὐτοῦ θυγατέρα τὴν
son hands-over the and first his daughter —
Εἰρήνην ἀνδρὶ συζεύγνυσι τῷ Παλαιολόγῳ Ἀνδρονίκῳ,
Irene to-husband joins — to-Palaiologos Andronikos
ὃν καὶ δεσπότην τετίμηκε. μετ᾽ οὐ πολὺ δὲ ὁ δεσπότης
whom also despot be-honored after not much and the despot
Παλαιολόγος θνήσκει, ὡς μέν τινες ἔφασκον, ἐξ ἐρωτικῶν
Palaiologos dies as indeed some said from amorous
διαθέσεων, καὶ προσλαμβάνεται ὁ βασιλεὺς εἰς γαμβρὸν
dispositions and takes the emperor as son-in-law

Ἰωάννην τὸν Δούκαν, οὗ Βατάτζης τοὐπίκλην· καὶ ἐκ
John the Doukas whose Vatatzes the-surname and from
Διδυμοτείχου ἦν ὡρμημένος, τὸ τοῦ πρωτοβεστιαρίτου
Didymoteichon was coming the of-the protovestiarites
διενεργῶν ὀφφίκιον. ἡ μὲν οὖν βασιλὶς Ἄννα ἔφθη
performing office the indeed then empress Anna came-first
πρὸ καιροῦ τελευτῆσαι, ἠγάγετο δὲ ἐξ Ἀρμενίων γυναῖκα
before time to-die took and from Armenians wife
ὁ βασιλεύς. δυσαρεστήσας δὲ πρὸς αὐτὴν πρὸς τὴν
the emperor displeased and with her to the
ἰδίαν πατρίδα τὴν Κιλικίαν ἐκπέμπει, ἐπιφέρει δὲ αὐτῷ
own fatherland — Cilicia sends-away brings and for-himself
γαμετὴν τὴν τοῦ βασιλεύοντος τῶν Ἰταλῶν ἀδελφήν,
wife the of-the reigning of-the Italians sister
ὃς Ῥομπέρτος, ὡς ἔφην, ἐκέκλητο καὶ τὸν θεῖον Ἐρῆν
who Robert as I-said was-called and the uncle Henry
διεδέξατο. ὅστις Ἐρῆς πολλῶν πολέμων αἴτιος ἐγένετο
succeeded who Henry of-many wars cause became
τῷ βασιλεῖ Θεοδώρῳ καὶ πολλὰς πόλεις καὶ χώρας τῶν
to-the emperor Theodore and many cities and countries of-the
Ῥωμαίων ὑφ' ἑαυτὸν ἐποιήσατο. ἀνδρεῖος γὰρ ὢν καὶ περὶ
Romans under himself made brave for being and in
μάχας ὀξύρροπος, καὶ τεταπεινωμένα τὰ τῶν Ῥωμαίων
battles quick-turning and humbled the(-things) of-the Romans
ὁρῶν καὶ μάλιστα ἐξ ὅτου τὸν σουλτὰν πεφόνευκεν
seeing and especially from when the sultan had-killed
ὁ βασιλεὺς Θεόδωρος — τότε γὰρ τὸ ἐκ Φράγγων
the emperor Theodore then for the from Franks
προσὸν αὐτῷ ἀπολώλεκε στράτευμα, ἐν ᾧ καὶ τὰς πρὸς
belonging to-him lost army in which also the toward
τοὺς ὁμογενεῖς τεθαρρηκὼς ἦν μάχας καὶ οὓς καὶ ὁ
the kinsmen confident he-was battles and whom also the

βασιλεὺς Ἑρῆς ἐδεδίει· πολλοὶ γὰρ ἦσαν ὀνομαστοὶ ἀπό
emperor Henry feared many for were famous from
τε γένους ἀπό τε μὴν τῆς προσούσης ἐκείνοις ἀνδρείας.
both lineage from both indeed the belonging to-those courage
διὰ ταῦτα, ὥς φασί τινες, καὶ τὴν τοῦ βασιλέως
because-of these-things as say some also the of-the emperor
νίκην ἀκηκοὼς ὁ Ἑρῆς ‘νενίκηται’ ἔφη ‘ὁ Λάσκαρις,
victory having-heard — Henry has-been-conquered said — Laskaris
οὐ νενίκηκεν’. ἵνα γοῦν μὴ πολὺν κατατείνω λόγον τῆς
not has-conquered so-that then not long I-stretch-out account of-the
ἱστορίας, τοῦτ’ ἂν μόνον εἰπὼν τὸ πᾶν παραστήσαιμι.
history this — only having-said the all I-would-present
μέχρι καὶ αὐτοῦ τοῦ Νυμφαίου τὰς σκηνὰς ὁ Ἑρῆς
as-far-as also itself — Nymphaion the tents — Henry
ἐπήξατο, κατ’ ἐρημίαν πολλὴν τοῦ κωλύοντος, ἐκεῖθέν
pitched in desolation much of-the(-one) hindering from-there
τε ὑποστρέψας τὸ μὲν τοῖς κρατηθεῖσι κορεσθείς,
and having-returned the indeed with-the(-things) mastered sated
τὸ δὲ καὶ ἐκεχειρίαν ἐθελήσας λαβεῖν, — οὐ γὰρ ἄγαν
the and also truce wishing to-take not for very
καρτερικὸν τὸ Λατινικὸν φῦλον ἐν ταῖς μάχαις καθέστηκεν
enduring the Latin tribe in the battles has-become
— εἰς ξυμβάσεις ἦλθε μετὰ τοῦ βασιλέως Θεοδώρου. καὶ
into agreements came with the emperor Theodore and
συνεφωνήθη τὰ μὲν τοῦ Κιμινᾶ πάντα — οὕτω γὰρ
it-was-agreed the(-things) indeed — of-Kiminas all so for
τὸ ὄρος καλεῖται τὸ ἐγγὺς τῆς Ἀχυράους τυγχάνον
the mountain is-called the(-one) near — Achyraous being
— μετὰ καὶ αὐτῆς τῆς Ἀχυράους παρὰ τοῦ τῶν Φράγγων
with also itself — Achyraous by the of-the Franks
μέρους δεσπόζεσθαι, τὸν δὲ Κάλαμον — κώμη δέ ἐστιν
side to-be-held — and Kalamos village and is

ὁ Κάλαμος, ἐξ οὗ τὸ τῶν Νεοκάστρων ἄρχεται θέμα
— Kalamos from which the — of-Neokastra begins theme
— μένειν ἄοικον, τὰ δ' ἐντεῦθεν παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως
to-remain uninhabited the(-things) and thence by the emperor
Θεοδώρου δεσπόζεσθαι· Νεόκαστρα δὲ ταῦτα ἦν καὶ
Theodore to-be-held Neokastra and these were and
Κελβιανόν, Χλιαρά τε καὶ Πέργαμος καὶ τὰ πλαγίως
Kelbianon Chliara both and Pergamos and the(-places) obliquely
ἐγκείμενα Μαγιδία τε καὶ Ὀψίκια. ὑπῆρχε δὲ καὶ ἄλλη
lying Magidia both and Opsikia was and also other
χώρα τῷ βασιλεῖ Θεοδώρῳ, ἡ ἀπὸ τοῦ Λοπαδίου
country to-the emperor Theodore the(-one) from — Lopadion
ἀρχομένη καὶ Προῦσαν περιλαμβάνουσα καὶ Νίκαιαν. καὶ
beginning and Prousa embracing and Nicaea and
οὕτω μὲν συνέβη τῷ βασιλεῖ Θεοδώρῳ τὰ πράγματα.
so indeed happened to-the emperor Theodore the affairs
Ὁ δ' εἰρημένος Ἑρῆς, εἰ καὶ Φράγγος τὸ γένος ἐτύγχανεν, 16
the and aforesaid Henry if even Frank in-the race he-was
ἀλλ' οὖν τοῖς Ῥωμαίοις καὶ ἰθαγενέσι τῆς Κωνσταντίνου
but nevertheless to-the Romans and natives of-the of-Constantine
ἱλαρώτερον προσεφέρετο, καὶ πολλοὺς εἶχε τοὺς μὲν
more-cheerfully behaved and many had the(-ones) indeed
τοῖς μεγάλοις τούτου συντεταγμένους, τοὺς δὲ τοῖς
with-the great(-ones) of-him ranked the(-ones) and with-the
στρατιώταις, τὸ δὲ κοινὸν πλῆθος ὡς οἰκεῖον περιεῖπε λαόν.
soldiers the and common multitude as own treated people
καὶ γὰρ περιγενόμενος τῶν Ῥωμαϊκῶν ἄστεων Λεντιανῶν
and for having-prevailed over-the Roman towns Lentiana
τε καὶ Ποιμανηνοῦ καὶ ἄνδρας τὸν Ἄρην πνέοντας
both and Poimanenon and men — Ares breathing
καὶ ἔργα ψυχῆς γενναίας ἐνδειξαμένους ὡς ἔρμαιόν τι
and deeds of-soul noble having-displayed as windfall a

ἐδέξατο ἐφευρών. ἐν γὰρ τῷ τῶν Λεντιανῶν ἄστει οὐ
received having-found in for the — of-Lentiana town not
μόνον σπάνις ὕδατος τοὺς φυλάττοντας ἐξέκαυσεν, οὐδ᾽
only scarcity of-water the(-ones) guarding burned nor
ὅτι καὶ ὁ λιμὸς καὶ σκύτη φαγεῖν αὐτοὺς κατηνάγκασε
that also the famine even leather to-eat them compelled
τὰ ἀπὸ τῶν ἀσπίδων καὶ ἐφεστρίδων αὐτῶν, ἀλλὰ
the(-things) from the shields and cloaks their but
καὶ τεῖχος οὐ μικροδιάστατόν ταῖς ἑλεπόλεσι καταπεσὸν
also wall not small-gapped by-the siege-engines fallen
μετὰ μεγίστης πυρκαϊᾶς τεσσαράκοντα ἡμέρας ἐφύλασσον
with greatest blaze forty days they-guarded
τοῦτο, ἀμοιβαδὸν τῇ πυρκαϊᾷ προσεπισωρεύοντες ξύλα.
this in-turns to-the blaze heaping-on wood
κρατηθέντος γοῦν τοῦ ἄστεος οὐδεὶς ἐξ αὐτῶν ἀπολέλυται
mastered then the town no-one of them was-released
εἰ μὴ μόνος ὁ τοῦ βασιλέως αὐτάδελφος καὶ ὁ εἷς
if not only the of-the emperor own-brother and the as
ἡγεμόνα τοῦ στρατεύματος τεταγμένος Δερμοκαΐτης καὶ
leader of-the army appointed Dermokaïtes and
ὁ Παλαιολόγος Ἀνδρόνικος, ὅν, ὡς ὁ λόγος δηλῶσαι
— Palaiologos Andronikos whom as the account to-show
πέφθακε, καὶ εἰς τὴν θυγατέρα αὐτοῦ Εἰρήνην γαμβρὸν
was-first also for the daughter his Irene son-in-law
ὁ βασιλεὺς προσελάβετο. πάντας δὲ τοὺς ἄλλους ὁ
the emperor took all and the others —
Ἐρῆς συλλεξάμενος καὶ κατὰ ἴλας συντάξας καὶ
Henry having-gathered and in squadrons having-arranged and
ὁμογενεῖς αὐτοῖς παραδοὺς ἡγεμόνας, ὑπερέχειν δὲ πάντων
kinsmen to-them having-given leaders to-be-over and all

τὸν Θεοφιλόπουλον Γεώργιον παρακελεύσας, τὴν τῶν
— *Theophilopoulos George having-ordered the of-the*
ἀνατολικῶν μερῶν αὐτοῖς φυλακὴν ἐνεπίστευσε.
eastern parts to-them guard entrusted
Τουτουῒ δὲ τοῦ Ἐρῆ τῆς Κωνσταντίνου κατάρχοντος, 17
this and — of-Henry over-the of-Constantine ruling
ἀπεστάλη παρὰ τοῦ πάπα πρὸς τὴν βασιλίδα τῶν
was-sent by the pope to the queen of-the
πόλεων ἀρχιερεύς, ὃν καὶ λεγάτον αὐτοί φασι, τοὔνομα
cities high-priest whom also legate they say by-name
Πελάγιος, ἅπαντα τὰ προνόμια τοῦ πάπα φέρων·
Pelagius all the privileges of-the pope bearing
ἐρυθροβαφῆ καὶ γὰρ ὑπεδέδετο πέδιλα, ἐκ τῆς αὐτῆς δὲ
red-dyed also for he-wore sandals of the same and
χροιᾶς καὶ τὰ ἐνδύματα εἶχε, καὶ ἡ ἐφεστρὶς δὲ τοῦ
color also the garments he-had and the saddle-cloth and of-the
ἵππου καὶ τὰ χαλινὰ τῷ τοιούτῳ ἐβάπτοντο χρώματι.
horse and the bridles with-the such were-dyed color
ἤθους δὲ τυχὼν ἀγριωτέρου καὶ ἀλαζονείᾳ χρώμενος
of-character and having-got more-savage and with-boastfulness using
πολλὰ δεινὰ ἐνεδείξατο ἐν τοῖς τῆς Κωνσταντίνου
many dread(-things) he-displayed among the of-the of-Constantine
οἰκήτορσι. καὶ ἡ σκῆψις ὡς εὔλογος· ἠνάγκαζε γὰρ τοὺς
inhabitants and the pretext as reasonable he-compelled for the
πάντας τῇ τῆς πρεσβυτέρας Ῥώμης ὑποκύψαι ὑποταγῇ.
all to-the of-the elder Rome to-bow-under subjection
ἐντεῦθεν καθείργνυντο μοναχοί, ἱερεῖς ἐδεσμοῦντο καὶ ναὸς
thence were-shut-up monks priests were-bound and church
ἅπας ἐκέκλειστο. καὶ ἦν ἐν αὐτῷ δυοῖν θάτερον, ἢ
every was-closed and it-was in it of-two the-one either
ὁμολογῆσαι τὸν πάπαν πρῶτον ἀρχιερέα καὶ τούτου
to-confess the pope first high-priest and his

τὴν μνήμην ἐν ἱεροτελεστίαις ποιεῖν, ἢ θάνατον εἶναι
the commemoration in sacred-rites to-make or death to-be
τῷ μὴ διαπραξαμένῳ τοῦτο τὸ ἐπιτίμιον. τοῦτο
for-the(-one) not having-done this the penalty this
εἰς βαρυθυμίαν ἦγε τοὺς οἰκήτορας τῆς Κωνσταντίνου
to heaviness-of-heart led the inhabitants of-the of-Constantine
καὶ μάλιστα τῶν ἄλλων τοὺς προύχοντας. οἳ καὶ πρὸς
and most of-the others the prominent(-ones) who also to
τὸν βασιλέα Ἑρῆν ἀφιγμένοι ‘ἡμεῖς μὲν’ ἔφασαν ‘ἄλλου
the emperor Henry having-come we indeed said of-other
γεγονότες γένους καὶ ἄλλον ἀρχιερέα ἔχοντες, ἑαυτοὺς
having-been race and other high-priest having ourselves
τῷ κράτει σου ὑπετάξαμεν ὥστε σωματικῶς κατάρχειν
to-the might your subjected so-that bodily to-rule
ἡμῶν, οὐ μήν γε πνευματικῶς καὶ ψυχικῶς. σοῦ μὲν
us not indeed at-least spiritually and in-soul by-you indeed
γὰρ ἐν πολέμῳ ὑπερμαχεῖσθαι τῶν ἀναγκαίων, τῶν δ’
for in war to-be-defended of-the necessary(-things) from-the and
ἡμετέρων ἐκστῆναι σεβασμάτων καὶ θρησκευμάτων τῶν
our to-depart objects-of-reverence and rites of-the
ἀδυνάτων πάντῃ καθέστηκεν. ἢ γοῦν λῦσον ἡμῖν τὰ
impossible(-things) altogether it-has-become either then loose for-us the
ἐπελθόντα δεινὰ ἢ ἄφες ὡς ἐλευθέρους ἐν τοῖς
having-come-upon dread(-things) or let-go as free among the
ἰθαγενέσιν ἀφῖχθαι’. ταῦτ’ εἶπον, κἀκεῖνος μὴ βουλόμενος
natives to-have-come these-things they-said and-he not wishing
ἐν στερήσει γενέσθαι τοσούτων καλῶν κἀγαθῶν ἀνθρώπων,
in deprivation to-be of-so-many fair and-good men
καὶ ἄκοντος τοῦ εἰρημένου λεγάτου τούς τε ναοὺς ἀνέῳξε
and unwilling the aforesaid legate the both churches opened
καὶ τοὺς ὅσοι ταῖς εἱρκταῖς ἦσαν κατισχημένοι
and the(-ones) as-many-as in-the prisons were held

μοναχούς τε καὶ ἱερεῖς ἀπολέλυκε, καὶ τὸν κατασχόντα
monks both and priests released and the having-held
τότε τὴν Κωνσταντίνου κλύδωνα κατεστόρησε. πολλοὶ δὲ
then the of-Constantine surge calmed many and
τῶν μοναχῶν προεξιόντες τῆς Κωνσταντίνου τῷ βασιλεῖ
of-the monks going-out-first from-the of-Constantine to-the emperor
Θεοδώρῳ προσῆλθον, καὶ αὐτοῖς προστάξει τούτου μοναὶ
Theodore came and to-them by-order his monasteries
πρὸς καταμονὴν ἐπιδέδοντο. καὶ πρεσβύτεροι δὲ πρὸς τὴν
for dwelling were-given and elders too to —
Νίκαιαν ἀπιόντες οἱ μὲν τῷ πατριαρχικῷ κλήρῳ
Nicaea going-off the(-ones) indeed with-the patriarchal clergy
συγκατηλέγησαν, οἱ δὲ θείοις ἐνασμενίσαντες τοῖς
were-enrolled the(-ones) and in-divine having-delighted the
σηκοῖς ἐλευθέρως ἐβίωσαν. καὶ οὕτω μὲν ἐγεγόνει ταῦτα
precincts freely lived and so indeed had-happened these-things
παρὰ τοῦ τότε βασιλεύοντος τῆς Κωνσταντίνου Ἑρῆ.
by the then reigning of-the of-Constantine Henry
Τούτου δὲ τελευτήσαντος ὁ ἀδελφιδοῦς αὐτοῦ Ῥομπέρτος 18
this(-man) and having-died the nephew his Robert
μαλακώτερον ἐχρῆτο τοῖς πράγμασι. τούτου τὴν ἀδελφὴν
more-softly handled the affairs his the sister
εἰς γαμετὴν εἰλήφει ὁ βασιλεύς. οὐ πολλοὶ παρῆλθον
as wife had-taken the emperor not many passed
ἐνιαυτοί, καὶ ἐπεὶ ὁ τῆς Κωνσταντινουπόλεως βασιλεὺς
years and since the — of-Constantinople emperor
Ῥομπέρτος οὐκ ἔφθασε συζυγῆναι γυναικί, παράνομόν
Robert not had-come-first to-be-married to-woman unlawful
τι πρᾶγμα βεβούληται ὁ βασιλεὺς διαπράξασθαι· ἐπὶ
a thing decided the emperor to-accomplish on
γὰρ τῇ θυγατρὶ αὐτοῦ Εὐδοκίᾳ προσλαβέσθαι τουτονὶ
for the daughter his Eudokia to-take this(-man)

γαμβρὸν ἡρετίσατο. ἔνθεν τοι καὶ ἔρις ἐκ τοῦ τότε
son-in-law he-chose thence therefore also strife from the then
πατριαρχοῦντος Μανουὴλ τῷ βασιλεῖ ξυμβεβήκει, μηδ᾽
being-patriarch Manuel with-the emperor happened not
ὅλως τῇ τοιαύτῃ ἀθεσμογαμίᾳ συγκατανεύοντος. ἀλλ᾽ οὐκ
at-all to-the such unlawful-marriage consenting but not
ἔφθασεν ὁ βασιλεὺς τέρματι δοῦναι τὸ βούλημα· μήπω
came-first the emperor to-end to-give the wish not-yet
γὰρ στείλας ταύτην εἰς Κωνσταντινούπολιν, ὡς ηὐτρέπιζε,
for having-sent her to Constantinople as he-was-preparing
καταλύει τὸν βίον, τὴν βασιλείαν αὐτοῦ καταλιπὼν τῷ
ends the life the kingship his having-left to-the
γαμβρῷ αὐτοῦ Ἰωάννῃ τῷ Δούκᾳ· οὐδὲ γὰρ εἶχεν ἄρρενα
son-in-law his John the Doukas not for he-had male
παῖδα εἰς ἥβην ἐλθόντα. ὃν γὰρ ἐκ τῆς βασιλίδος Ἄννης
child to manhood having-come whom for from the empress Anna
ἔσχηκεν ἄρρενα παῖδα, τεθνάναι προύφθασεν, ἐκ δὲ τῆς
he-had male child to-have-died came-first from and the(-one)
ἐξ Ἀρμενίων ὡρμημένης ἓν παιδίον ἄρρεν πεποίηκεν, ὅπερ
from Armenians having-come one child male he-made which
ὀκταετὲς ἦν, ἡνίκα ὁ βασιλεὺς καὶ πατὴρ αὐτοῦ ἐτεθνήκει.
eight-years-old was when the emperor and father his had-died
διὰ τὸ γοῦν ἀμοιρεῖν αὐτὸν ἄρρενος ἐνήβου γονῆς ὁ
because-of the then to-lack him of-male grown offspring the
ἐπὶ τῇ θυγατρὶ γαμβρὸς αὐτοῦ τῆς βασιλείας κληρονομεῖ.
on the daughter son-in-law his the kingship inherits
ἦν δὲ ὁ βασιλεὺς Θεόδωρος ὁ Λάσκαρις, ὁπότε τὸ
was and the emperor Theodore the Laskaris when the
τέλος ἔσχε τοῦ βίου, τῶν μὲν τεσσαράκοντα πέντε ἐτῶν
end he-had of-the life the indeed forty five years
ὑπερέκεινα, ἐλάττων δὲ τῶν πεντήκοντα, βασιλεύσας ἐκ
beyond less but than-the fifty having-reigned of

τούτων ἔτη δεκαοκτώ. ἦν δὲ τὸ σῶμα μικρός, οὐκ ἄγαν
these years eighteen he-was and in-the body small not very
δέ, μελάγχρους ἐφ' ἱκανόν, καθειμένον ἔχων τὸ γένειον
but dark to sufficient(-length) hanging-down having the beard
καὶ περὶ τὸ ἄκρον σχιζόμενον, ἐπ' ὀλίγον ἑτερόφθαλμος,
and at the tip split for a-little one-eyed
περὶ τὰς μάχας ὀξύς, θυμοῦ τε καὶ ἀφροδισίων ἡττώμενος,
in the battles sharp to-anger both and to-sexual-pleasures yielding
ἐλευθεριώτερος ἐν ταῖς δωρεαῖς· οἷς γὰρ ἂν βούλοιτο,
more-liberal in the gifts to-whom for — he-might-wish
πολὺ τὸ χρυσίον ἐδίδοτο, ὡς ἐν ἀκαρεῖ τούτους πλουτεῖν.
much the gold was-given so-that in moment them to-be-rich
τεταλαιπώρηκε δὲ πάμπολλα ἐν ταῖς μάχαις ταῖς τε
he-suffered and very-many(-things) in the battles the both
πρὸς Ἰταλοὺς καὶ τοὺς Πέρσας. ἀρχὴ γοῦν οὗτος ἐγεγόνει
against Italians and the Persians beginning then this(-man) had-become
τῆς τῶν Ῥωμαίων ἀρχῆς, ᾧ καὶ πολλὴν χάριν ὄφλειν
of-the of-the Romans rule to-whom also much gratitude to-owe
τοῖς Ῥωμαίοις πάνυ δέον καθέστηκε. κατετέθη δὲ ὁ νεκρὸς
for-the Romans very needful it-has-become was-laid and the corpse
αὐτοῦ ἐν τῇ τοῦ Ὑακίνθου μονῇ, ἔνθα καὶ ὁ βασιλεὺς
his in the — of-Hyakinthos monastery where also the emperor
Ἀλέξιος τέθαπται καὶ ἡ βασιλὶς Ἄννα ἡ τούτου σύζυγος.
Alexios is-buried and the empress Anna the his wife

On Theodore's death his son-in-law John Doukas Vatatzes is crowned. John Asan returns from Russia to rule the Bulgarians. Theodore of Epirus takes Thessalonica and calls himself emperor. John defeats the Latins at Poimanenon, crushes a plot of his cousin Nestongos, and makes peace with the Latins; before the peace Theodore of Epirus had taken Adrianople.

19 Καθὼς γοῦν εἰρήκειν, μετὰ τὴν τελευτὴν αὐτοῦ
as then I-had-said after the end his
ἐπιλαμβάνεται τῶν Ῥωμαϊκῶν σκήπτρων Ἰωάννης ὁ
takes-hold of-the Roman scepters John the
Δούκας ὁ γαμβρὸς αὐτοῦ, στεφθεὶς παρὰ τοῦ πατριάρχου
Doukas the son-in-law his crowned by the patriarch
Μανουήλ, ὃς τὸν Μάξιμον διεδέξατο. μετὰ γὰρ τὴν
Manuel who — Maximos succeeded after for the
τελευτὴν τοῦ πατριάρχου Μιχαὴλ ὁ Εἰρηνικὸς Θεόδωρος
end of-the patriarch Michael — Eirenikos Theodore
τῷ πατριαρχικῷ ἐνίδρυται θρόνῳ, ὃς καὶ Κωπᾶς ὑπὸ τῶν
on-the patriarchal is-seated throne who also Kopas by the
πολλῶν ἐκαλεῖτο· μετὰ δὲ ἐνιαυτοὺς ἓξ ἐκείνου τὸν βίον
many was-called after and years six he the life
ἀπολιπόντος ὁ μοναχὸς Μάξιμος εἰς τὸν πατριαρχικὸν
having-left the monk Maximos to the patriarchal
ἀνάγεται θρόνον, θεραπεύων τὴν γυναικωνίτιδα καὶ ὑπὸ
is-raised throne courting the women's-quarters and by
ταύτης ἀντιθεραπευόμενος· οὐδὲν γὰρ ἄλλο ἦν τὸ εἰς
it courted-in-return nothing for other was the(-thing) to
ταύτην ἀναβιβάσαν αὐτὸν τὴν περιωπήν. ἐπιβιοὺς δὲ
this having-raised him the eminence having-survived and
μῆνας ἓξ τελευτᾷ, καὶ ὁ Μανουὴλ εἰς τὸν πατριαρχικὸν
months six dies and — Manuel to the patriarchal

ἀνάγεται θρόνον, φιλόσοφος, ὡς ἐδόκει, ὢν καὶ ὑπὸ τῶν
is-raised throne philosopher as it-seemed being and by the
πολλῶν κατονομαζόμενος.
many being-named
Ἐπὶ δὲ τὰ Βουλγάρων καὶ αὖθις ὁ λόγος χωρεῖ. ὁ 20
to and the(-affairs) of-Bulgarians also again the account goes the
πρῶτος βασιλεὺς τῶν Βουλγάρων Ἀσὰν δύο ἔσχεν υἱούς,
first king of-the Bulgarians Asan two had sons
τὸν Ἰωάννην καὶ τὸν Ἀλέξανδρον. τοῦ γοῦν εἰρημένου
— John and — Alexander the then aforesaid
Βορίλλα βασιλικῶς τῶν Βουλγάρων κατάρχοντος, ὁ τοῦ
Borilas imperially over-the Bulgarians ruling the —
Ἀσὰν υἱὸς Ἰωάννης φυγαδείᾳ χρησάμενος περὶ τὰ τῶν
of-Asan son John flight having-used to the(-lands) of-the
Ῥώσων χωρεῖ, ἐκεῖσέ τε χρόνον ἐφ᾽ ἱκανὸν διαμείνας καί
Russians goes there both time for sufficient having-stayed and
τινας τῶν συγκλύδων Ῥώσων ἐν ἑαυτῷ περιαγαγών, τὴν
some of-the rabble Russians about himself having-gathered the
πατρικὴν ἀνακαλεῖται κληρονομίαν, καὶ πολεμεῖ τῷ Βορίλλᾳ
paternal reclaims inheritance and makes-war — on-Borilas
καὶ νικᾷ τοῦτον καὶ χώρας ἐγκρατ�ὴς οὐκ ὀλίγης γίνεται.
and conquers him and of-country master not small becomes
ὁ δὲ Βορίλλας ἔνδον εἰσέρχεται τοῦ Τρινόβου καὶ ἐπὶ ἑπτὰ
— and Borilas within goes — of-Trnovo and for seven
ἔτεσι τειχήρης ἔσω πολιορκεῖται. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀπέκαμον οἱ
years walled-in within is-besieged when and grew-weary the(-ones)
συνόντες αὐτῷ, τῷ Ἀσὰν Ἰωάννῃ προσέρχονται. φεύγων δὲ
being-with him — to-Asan John they-go-over fleeing and
ἁλίσκεται ὁ Βορίλλας καὶ παρὰ τοῦ Ἰωάννου τυφλοῦται, καὶ
is-captured — Borilas and by — John is-blinded and

οὕτως ἐγκρατὴς τῆς τῶν Βουλγάρων ἀπάσης ὁ Ἰωάννης
so master of-the of-the Bulgarians whole — John
γεγένηται. καὶ τὰ μὲν ἐν τοῖς Βουλγάροις τοσαῦτα.
has-become and the(-things) indeed among the Bulgarians so-much
21 Ὁ δὲ Κομνηνὸς Θεόδωρος, ὃν πρὸ μικροῦ ὁ λόγος
— and Komnenos Theodore whom before a-little the account
ἱστόρησε, μὴ θέλων μένειν ἐν τῇ οἰκείᾳ τάξει ἀλλὰ τὰ
narrated not wishing to-remain in the own rank but the(-things)
τῆς βασιλείας σφετερισάμενος, ἐπειδὴ τῆς Θεσσαλονίκης
of-the kingship having-appropriated since — of-Thessalonica
γέγονεν ἐγκρατὴς πολλήν τε χώραν τῆς Ῥωμαΐδος
he-became master much both country of-the Romania
ἐκ τῆς κεκρατημένης παρὰ τῶν Ἰταλῶν ὑφ᾽
of the(-country) mastered by the Italians under
ἑαυτὸν ἐποιήσατο, ἔτι δὲ καὶ τῆς παρὰ τῶν
himself made still and also of-the(-country) by the
Βουλγάρων κεχειρωμένης, πορφυρίδα τε ὑπενδύεται καὶ
Bulgarians subdued purple both puts-on and
ἐρυθρὰ περιβάλλεται πέδιλα, ἀντιστάντος αὐτῷ ἐπὶ τούτῳ
red puts-around sandals having-opposed him on this
στερρότατα τοῦ μητροπολίτου Θεσσαλονίκης Κωνσταντίνου
most-firmly the metropolitan of-Thessalonica Constantine
τοῦ Μεσοποταμίτου, ὃν καὶ πολλαῖς κακουχίαις καὶ
the Mesopotamites whom also with-many ill-treatments and
ἐξορίαις διὰ ταῦτα ὑπέβαλε τῶν κανονικῶν ἐθῶν
exiles because-of these-things he-subjected the canonical customs
ἀντεχόμενον. ὁ δὲ Βουλγαρίας ἀρχιεπίσκοπος Δημήτριος
holding-to the and of-Bulgaria archbishop Demetrios
τὸ βασιλικὸν περιδιδύσκει τοῦτον διάδημα, ὡς ἔφασκεν,
the imperial puts-on him diadem as he-said
αὐτόνομος ὢν καὶ μηδενὶ εὐθύνας ὀφείλων δοῦναι, καὶ
autonomous being and to-no-one accounts owing to-give and

διὰ ταῦτα ἐξουσίαν ἔχειν βασιλέας χρίειν οὕς τε ἂν
because-of these-things authority to-have emperors to-anoint whom both —
καὶ ὅπου καὶ ὅτε βούλοιτο. βασιλεὺς οὖν ἀναγορευθεὶς
also where also when he-might-wish emperor then proclaimed
ὁ Θεόδωρος βασιλικῶς ἐχρῆτο τοῖς πράγμασι, δεσπότας
— Theodore imperially handled the affairs despots
τε προυβάλλετο καὶ σεβαστοκράτορας μεγάλους τε
both he-promoted and sebastokrators great both
δομεστίκους, πρωτοβεστιαρίους καὶ τὴν λοιπὴν πᾶσαν
domestics protovestiarioi and the rest all
τάξιν βασιλικήν. ἀφυῶς δὲ ἔχων περὶ τοὺς τῆς βασιλείας
order imperial unfitly and being about the of-the kingship
θεσμοὺς Βουλγαρικώτερον ἢ μᾶλλον βαρβαρικώτερον ταῖς
ordinances more-Bulgarian-like or rather more-barbarian-like to-the
ὑποθέσεσι προσεφέρετο, οὐ τάξιν γινώσκων οὐδὲ κατάστασιν
matters he-behaved not order knowing nor establishment
οὐδὲ ὅσα ἐν τοῖς βασιλείοις ἀρχαῖα ἔθιμα καθεστήκασιν.
nor as-many-as in the palaces ancient customs have-been-established
οὗτος οὐ μικρῶς τῷ βασιλεῖ ἀντεφέρετο Ἰωάννῃ. ὁ μὲν
this(-man) not slightly to-the emperor opposed John the indeed
γὰρ βασιλεὺς ἠξίου αὐτὸν τῶν δευτερείων μετέχειν τῆς
for emperor deemed-worthy him of-the second-place to-share of-the
βασιλείας καὶ τῆς χώρας αὐτοῦ ἐγκρατῆ εἶναι καὶ κατ᾽
kingship and of-the country his master to-be and in
οὐδὲν ἄλλο ὑπείκειν αὐτῷ· ὁ δὲ ἀντέβαινε στερεώτερον.
nothing other to-yield to-him he and resisted more-stubbornly
Ὁ μὲν οὖν βασιλεὺς Ἰωάννης ἄρτι τῶν σκήπτρων 22
the indeed then emperor John just of-the scepters
ἐπειλημμένος καὶ κομιδῇ ἐν στενῷ οὖσαν τὴν τῶν
having-taken-hold and altogether in narrow being the of-the
Ῥωμαίων τεθεαμένος ἀρχήν, οὐκ ἀνασχόμενος ἐν
Romans having-beheld rule not having-endured in

πολλοστοῖς βασιλεύειν, δύο παραδραμόντων ἐνιαυτῶν
very-few to-reign two having-run-by years
μάχην ποιεῖται μετὰ τῶν Ἰταλῶν. καὶ συνάγεται στράτευμα
battle makes with the Italians and is-gathered army
Λατινικὸν ἀξιόμαχον, οὗ προυμάχοντο οἱ τοῦ βασιλέως
Latin battle-worthy where fought-in-front the of-the emperor
Θεοδώρου αὐτάδελφοι, οἱ σεβαστοκράτορες Ἀλέξιός τε καὶ
Theodore own-brothers the sebastokrators Alexios both and
Ἰσαάκιος. οὗτοι γὰρ ἅμα τῷ τὸν ἀδελφὸν αὐτῶν βασιλέα
Isaac these for at-once with-the the brother their emperor
θανεῖν τὴν θυγατέρα αὐτοῦ Εὐδοκίαν λαβόντες ἀποδρᾶναι
to-die the daughter his Eudokia having-taken to-run-away
πρὸς τὴν Κωνσταντινούπολιν ἐβουλεύσαντο· ἀλλὰ τοῦ μὲν
to — Constantinople planned but the indeed
σκοποῦ αὐτῶν ἥμαρτον, ἐκεῖνοι δὲ δραπέται ᾤχοντο. τῆς
aim their they-missed they and runaways went of-the
μάχης οὖν συρραγείσης ἐν τοῖς μέρεσι τοῦ Ποιμανηνοῦ,
battle then having-broken-out in the parts — of-Poimanenon
ὅπου καὶ ὁ ναὸς τοῦ ἀρχιστρατήγου τῶν ἄνω δυνάμεων
where also the church of-the archistrategos of-the above powers
ἐγκαθίδρυται Μιχαήλ, νικᾷ κατὰ κράτος ὁ βασιλεύς,
is-established Michael conquers by force the emperor
τῶν μὲν πλείστων Ῥωμαίων σχεδὸν ἐξηττημένων τὸ
of-the indeed most Romans almost having-been-defeated the
πρῶτον, αὐτοῦ δὲ τοῦ βασιλέως μετ᾽ ὀλίγων πάνυ τὴν
first himself and the emperor with few very the
νίκην ἐξειργασμένου πᾶσαν· αὐτός τε γὰρ δόρατος ἥψατο
victory having-wrought all himself both for spear touched
καὶ πολέμιον ἔβαλε καὶ ἀνδρεῖον ἐν ἐκείνῳ τῷ πολέμῳ
and enemy struck and brave in that the war
φρόνημα ἐνεδείξατο, οὐδὲ τοῖς πρὸ τοῦ ἀγνοούμενον.
spirit displayed nor to-the(-ones) before the(-time) unknown

ἡ τοιαύτη γοῦν νίκη εἰς μεγάλην αὔξησιν ἐγεγόνει τῆς
the such then victory to great increase became of-the
τῶν Ῥωμαίων ἀρχῆς, τῶν Ἰταλῶν δὲ συστολὴν καὶ
of-the Romans rule of-the Italians and contraction and
κατάπτωσιν. τοὺς μὲν γὰρ ζωγρίας τοὺς κρείττους αὐτῶν
downfall the(-ones) indeed for alive the stronger of-them
ἐν τῷ τοιούτῳ πολέμῳ κατέσχεν ὁ βασιλεύς, ἀλλὰ δὴ
in the such war held the emperor but indeed
καὶ τοὺς αὐταδέλφους Λασκάριας, οὓς τυφλοῖ ἐπ᾽ αἰτίαις
also the own-brothers Laskarides whom he-blinds on charges
εὑρών· ἄλλοι δὲ ξίφους ἔργον ἐγένοντο· οἱ δὲ
having-found(-them) others and of-sword work became the(-ones) and
μὴ συνιόντες τῷ πολέμῳ δειλίᾳ κάτοχοι ἐγεγόνεισαν.
not joining the war by-cowardice possessed had-become
καὶ μέρος δὲ τῶν Ἰταλῶν τὸ τῶν Σερρῶν κάστρον
and part too of-the Italians the — of-Serres fortress
τῷ τότε πολιορκοῦν ὑπὸ τοῦ Κομνηνοῦ Θεοδώρου
at-the then(-time) besieging by — Komnenos Theodore
δεσποζόμενον, ἐπεὶ τὴν τῶν οἰκείων τοιαύτην ἐπέγνωκεν
held when the of-the own such recognized
ἥτταν, ἀπέδρα ἐλευθέρας τὰς Σέρρας καταλιπόν· ἐς μικρὸν
defeat ran-away free — Serres having-left to little
γὰρ αὐτῷ κομιδῇ τοῦ ἁλῶναι ἦλθον. ἐντεῦθεν τὰ τῶν
for to-it altogether of-the to-be-taken came thence the(-affairs) of-the
Ἰταλῶν ἔνθεν κἀκεῖθεν διαιρούμενα κατά τε τὴν ἕω καὶ
Italians from-here and-from-there divided in both the east and
τὴν ἑσπέραν καὶ ἰσχυροῖς ἀντιπάλοις προσπταίοντα, τῷ
the west and on-strong opponents stumbling the
τε βασιλεῖ Ἰωάννῃ καὶ τῷ Κομνηνῷ Θεοδώρῳ, βασιλεῖ
both emperor John and — Komnenos Theodore emperor
φημιζομένῳ καὶ τουτῳΐ, ἀπήρχοντο καταπίπτειν. αὐτίκα
acclaimed and to-this(-man) began to-fall-down for-instance

γοῦν ὁ βασιλεὺς Ἰωάννης, ἐπειδὴ τοὺς Ἰταλοὺς ἐν τῷ
then the emperor John since the Italians in the
εἰρημένῳ τόπῳ καταλελύκει, τὰ ὑπ᾽ ἐκείνων κρατούμενα τῶν
aforesaid place had-destroyed the by them held of-the
Ῥωμαίων ἐπολιόρκει φρούρια, καὶ ἥλισκε ταῦτα μηδενὸς
Romans besieged fortresses and took them no-one
τελοῦντος τοῦ βοηθήσοντος. μέχρι μὲν γάρ τινος
being the(-one) going-to-help until indeed for some(-time)
οἱ ἐν τοῖς φρουρίοις ἀντείχοντο· ὡς δὲ χρονιωτέρους
the(-ones) in the fortresses held-out when and longer
ἐποίει τὰς πολιορκίας ὁ βασιλεύς, μάλιστα δὲ καὶ
he-made the sieges the emperor most and also
παρακαιρίους — οὐ γὰρ ἐν ἔαρι ἢ θέρει ἢ μετοπώρῳ, ἀλλ᾽
unseasonable not for in spring or summer or autumn but
ἐν μέσῳ χειμῶνος τὰς ἐφόδους ἐποιεῖτο — ἑλεπόλεις τε
in middle of-winter the assaults he-made siege-engines both
συνίστα καὶ τὰς ἐπάλξεις κατέβαλλεν, ἀποκάμνοντες οἱ
he-set-up and the battlements threw-down growing-weary the(-ones)
ἐντὸς τὰ μὲν προυδίδουν ὅρκοις τὴν ζωὴν ἐξωνούμενοι, ἐκ
within some indeed surrendered with-oaths the life buying-off from
δὲ τῶν ἔπιπτον μάχῃ καὶ καθείργνυντο ὡς δεσμῶται.
and the(-others) they-fell in-battle and were-shut-up as prisoners
ἑάλω γοῦν ὑπὸ τοῦ βασιλέως Ποιμανηνὸν Λεντιανὰ
was-taken then by the emperor Poimanenon Lentiana
Χαρίορος Βερβενίακον. ὁ γοῦν βασιλεὺς Ἰωάννης παντοίως
Charioros Berbeniakon the then emperor John in-every-way
τοῖς Λατίνοις μαχόμενος τριήρεις τε κατεσκεύασε καὶ περὶ
with-the Latins fighting triremes both built and about
τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον ταύτας ἔστησεν ἐν τόπῳ, ὃς Ὁλκὸς
— Hellespont these set in place which Holkos
ὀνομάζεται· καὶ ἦν πολλὰ παρέχων αὐτοῖς πράγματα,
is-named and was much giving them trouble

κατὰ δύσιν ὁρμώμενος καὶ λείαν τἀκείνων ποιούμενος
in west setting-out and booty of-their(-things) making
πορθῶν τε τὸ τῶν Μαδύτων ἄστυ καὶ τὴν Καλλιούπολιν
sacking both the — of-Madytos town and — Kallipolis
καὶ τὰ παραιγιάλια πάντα τοῖς Ἰταλοῖς ὑπόφορα ὄντα.
and the coastal(-places) all to-the Italians tributary being
Ἐν τουτοισὶ δὲ ὄντος τοῦ βασιλέως Ἰωάννου καὶ 23
in these-things and being the emperor John and
ἀκρατῶς μαχομένου τοῖς Ἰταλοῖς κατά τε χέρσον καὶ
unrestrainedly fighting the Italians on both land and
θάλατταν, σκευωρεῖται τούτῳ ἐπιβουλή. ὁ δὲ ταύτην
sea is-contrived against-him plot the(-one) and it
συστησάμενος πρωτεξάδελφος ἦν τοῦ βασιλέως ὁ Νεστόγγος
having-organized first-cousin was of-the emperor — Nestongos
Ἀνδρόνικος. οὑτοσὶ δὲ καὶ τὴν τῆς συγγενείας σχέσιν
Andronikos this(-man) and also the of-the kinship relation
παρ᾽ οὐδὲν θέμενος καὶ τὸν τῆς φιλίας ἀπορρήξας δεσμὸν
at nothing having-set and the of-the friendship having-broken bond
ἀνταρσίαν κατὰ τοῦ πρωτεξαδέλφου βασιλέως βεβούληται,
revolt against the first-cousin emperor planned
ἔχων τε συνεργὸν εἰς τοῦτο τὸν ἀδελφὸν Ἰσαάκιον καὶ
having both helper for this the brother Isaac and
ἑτέρους τῶν ἐπιφανῶν οὐκ ὀλίγους, τόν τε Φλαμούλην, ὃν
others of-the notable not few — both Phlamoules whom
μέγαν ἑταιρειάρχην ὁ βασιλεὺς τετίμηκε, τὸν Ταρχανειώτην,
grand hetaireiarch the emperor had-honored — Tarchaneiotes
τὸν Συναδηνόν, τὸν ἐπ᾽ ἀδελφῇ τούτου γαμβρὸν Στασηνόν,
— Synadenos the on sister his son-in-law Stasenos
τὸν Μακρηνὸν καὶ ἄλλους εἰς πλῆθος τὸν ἀριθμόν. ἐγένετο
— Makrenos and others in multitude the number was
δὲ ἡ ἐπιβουλὴ πολυήμερος καὶ τὸν βασιλέα ἐλάνθανεν. ἐν
and the plot of-many-days and the emperor escaped-notice in

τῇ Λαμψάκῳ δὲ διάγων μανθάνει ταῦτα. πυρὶ γοῦν τὰς
— *Lampsakos and staying he-learns these-things with-fire then the*
τριήρεις καταναλώσας, ἵνα μὴ τοῖς Ἰταλοῖς ὑπὸ χεῖρα
triremes having-consumed so-that not to-the Italians under hand
γένοιντο, καὶ προυργιαίτερον τὸν ἔσωθεν πόλεμον κρίνας
they-might-come and more-important the internal war having-judged
τοῦ ἔξωθεν, ἀπάρας ἐκεῖθεν περὶ τὴν Ἀχυράους ἀφίκετο
than-the external having-set-out from-there to — Achyraous arrived
κἀκεῖσε τὴν ἐξέτασιν τῆς ἐπιβουλῆς ἐποιήσατο. καὶ ἦσαν οἱ
and-there the inquiry of-the plot made and were the
συνωμόται πάντες ταῖς δίκαις ὑπεύθυνοι. ἀλλ᾽ ὁ βασιλεὺς
conspirators all to-the penalties liable but the emperor
φιλανθρωπότερον τοῖς νόμοις ἐχρήσατο, καὶ τὸν μὲν
more-humanely the laws used and — indeed
Νεστόγγον Ἰσαάκιον τυφλώσει καταδικάζει καὶ χειροκοπίᾳ,
Nestongos Isaac to-blinding condemns and to-hand-cutting
ὡσαύτως καὶ τὸν Μακρηνόν· ἐξελήλεκτο γὰρ ὡς πολλάκις
likewise also — Makrenos it-had-been-proven for that often
ἐφώρμησε κατὰ νῶτον τυγχάνων τοῦ βασιλέως ἑφελκύσαι
he-rushed at back being of-the emperor to-draw
τὴν σπάθην καὶ καταρράξαι καιρίαν· καὶ ἄλλους δέ τινας
the sword and to-strike mortal(-blow) and others too some
μικραῖς ποιναῖς καθυπέβαλε. τοὺς δὲ πλείστους ἀφῆκεν
to-small penalties subjected the and most he-let-go
εἱρκταῖς μέχρι τινὸς περικλείσας, καὶ αὐτὸν δὴ τὸν
in-prisons until some(-time) having-shut-up and himself indeed the
πρωτουργὸν τῆς ἐπιβουλῆς τὸν καὶ βασιλείας ἐφιέμενον,
first-mover of-the plot the(-one) also kingship desiring
τὸν Νεστόγγον Ἀνδρόνικον, ἐν τῷ φρουρίῳ τῆς Μαγνησίας
— *Nestongos Andronikos in the fortress — of-Magnesia*
συνέκλεισε· τοσοῦτον ἡ τῆς ἀγάπης σχέσις τὸν βασιλέα
shut-up so-much the of-the love relation the emperor

τοῦ κακοποιῆσαι τοῦτον ἐκώλυσεν. ὃς καὶ μετ᾽ ὀλίγον
from-the to-harm him prevented who also after little
ἀπέδρα, ὡς μέν τινες ἔφασκον, θελήσει τοῦ βασιλέως
ran-away as indeed some said by-the-will of-the emperor
ἐλευθερώτερον βαίνειν τοῦτον παρακελευσαμένου καὶ οἷον
more-freely to-go him having-ordered and as-if
κλέψαι τοῦτον τὴν σωτηρίαν βουλευσαμένου. ὃς καὶ
to-steal for-him the safety having-planned who also
νυκτὸς φυγὼν περὶ τὰ τῶν Μουσουλμάνων ἐφώρμησε,
by-night having-fled to the(-lands) of-the Muslims rushed
καὶ διῆγεν ἐκεῖσε μέχρι τῆς αὐτοῦ τελευτῆς. ἐντεῦθεν ὁ
and lived there until the his end thence the
βασιλεὺς προσεκτικώτερον ἐχρῆτο τοῖς πράγμασι καὶ τῆς
emperor more-attentively handled the affairs and of-the
προτέρας ἐλευθεριότητος οὐκ ἀντεποιεῖτο, φύλακάς τε
former liberality not laid-claim guards both
περὶ αὐτὸν ἔστησε καὶ φρουρούς, νύκτωρ καὶ μεθ᾽ ἡμέραν
about himself set and watchmen by-night and by day
τοῖς ἐκείνου προσέχοντας. μάλιστα δὲ περὶ ταῦτα
to-the(-things) his attending most and about these-things
συνέτεινεν ἡ βασιλὶς Εἰρήνη, ἀρρενωπότερον τὸ ἦθος
contributed the empress Irene more-manly the character
ἔχουσα καὶ τοῖς πᾶσι βασιλικώτερα ἐντυγχάνουσα.
having and to-the all more-royally meeting
Εἰς συνθήκας δὲ θελήσαντες οἱ Ἰταλοὶ ἐλθεῖν ἀπέλυσαν 24
to agreements and having-wished the Italians to-come released
πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα καὶ τὸ τῶν Πηγῶν ἄστυ. καὶ οὕτω δὴ
to the emperor also the — of-Pegai town and so indeed
μετ᾽ αὐτῶν ὁ βασιλεὺς Ἰωάννης εἰρήνευσε, πάντων τῶν
with them the emperor John made-peace all the(-places)
πρὸς νότον ὑποχωρησάντων αὐτῷ τῶν Λατίνων, ἔτι δὲ
toward south having-withdrawn to-him of-the Latins still and

κρατούντων τὰ πρὸς βορρᾶν τὰ πλησίον ὄντα τῆς
holding the(-places) toward north the(-places) near being of-the
Κωνσταντίνου καὶ τῇ τοῦ Νικομήδους πόλει ἐγγίζοντα.
of-Constantine and to-the — of-Nikomedes city drawing-near
συνέβη δέ τι καὶ πρὸ αὐτοῦ τοιοῦτον. οἱ γὰρ τῆς
happened and something also before it such the for —
Ἀδριανουπόλεως οἰκήτορες πρεσβείαν πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα
of-Adrianople inhabitants embassy to the emperor
ἐστείλαντο, ὅπως ἀποστείλῃ πρὸς αὐτοὺς στράτευμα καὶ
sent that he-send to them army and
τῆς Ἰταλῶν ἐλευθερώσῃ χειρός. ὁ δὲ τὸν πρωτοστράτορα
from-the of-Italians free hand he and the protostrator
Ἰσῆν στράτευμα δοὺς αὐτῷ ἐξαπέστειλε· συνῆν δὲ
Ises army having-given him sent-out was-with and
αὐτῷ καὶ ὁ Καμμύτζης Ἰωάννης. οἱ καὶ διαπεράσαντες
him also — Kamytzes John who also having-crossed
τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον καὶ διὰ τῆς Μακεδονίας διελθόντες
— Hellespont and through — Macedonia having-passed
εἰς Ἀδριανούπολιν ἀφίκοντο, ἐντὸς δὲ γενόμενοι τῆς
to Adrianople arrived within and having-come of-the
πόλεως διῆγον ἐκεῖσε. ἐλπὶς δὲ ἦν τῷ βασιλεῖ Ἰωάννῃ
city they-stayed there hope and was to-the emperor John
διὰ ταῦτα καὶ τῶν πέριξ ἐγκρατῆ γενέσθαι. ἀλλ᾽
because-of these-things also of-the(-places) around master to-become but
ὁ Κομνηνὸς Θεόδωρος, ὃν φθάσας ὁ λόγος ἐδήλωσε,
— Komnenos Theodore whom anticipating the account showed
τῶν ἐγγὺς πάντων γενόμενος ἐγκρατὴς ἄνευ μέντοι
of-the(-places) near all having-become master without however
τοῦ τῆς Ῥοδόπης ὄρους, ὅπερ καὶ Ἀχριδὸς ὠνόμασται,
the — of-Rhodope mountain which also Achridos is-named
καὶ τῶν ἐν τούτῳ ἄστεων καὶ τοῦ Μελενίκου — τούτων
and of-the in it towns and — of-Melenikon of-these

γὰρ ἦρχεν ὁ Σθλάβος, προσγενὴς ὢν τοῦ βασιλέως
for ruled — Sthlabos kinsman being of-the king
Ἀσὰν καὶ δεσπότης τετιμημένος ὑπὸ τοῦ βασιλέως τῆς
Asan and despot honored by the emperor of-the
Κωνσταντίνου Ἑρῆ, οὗ καὶ τὴν θυγατέρα ἐκ παλλακῆς
of-Constantine Henry whose also the daughter from concubine
αὐτῷ γεγεννημένην ἠγάγετο εἰς γυναῖκα. οὗτος δὴ
to-him born he-took as wife this(-man) indeed
ὁ Σθλάβος, ἵνα μικρόν τι τὸν εἱρμὸν τοῦ λόγου
— Sthlabos that a-little some(-thing) the sequence of-the account
διέλωμαι, φρούριον τὸν Μελενίκον εὑρὼν ὀχυρὸν καὶ
I-may-interrupt fortress — Melenikon having-found strong and
σχεδὸν πᾶσιν ἐναντιουμένοις ἀνάλωτον αὐτοκρατὴς ἦν,
almost to-all opposing impregnable autocrat was
μηδενὶ τῶν πέριξ ἀρχόντων ὑποπεσών. ἐνίοτε μὲν γὰρ
to-no-one of-the around rulers having-submitted sometimes indeed for
Ἰταλοῖς ὑπῆρχε ξύμμαχος ἐκ κήδους αὐτοῖς συναγόμενος,
to-Italians was ally by marriage-alliance to-them joined
ἐνίοτε δὲ Βουλγάροις ἐκ συγγενείας ὁμοφρονῶν, ἐνίοτε
sometimes and with-Bulgarians by kinship agreeing sometimes
δὲ τῷ Κομνηνῷ Θεοδώρῳ· καὶ ἦν οὐδέποτέ τινι οὔτε
and — with-Komnenos Theodore and he-was never to-anyone neither
ὑποτασσόμενος οὔτ᾽ εἰς ἀληθῆ πίστιν καὶ ὁμοφροσύνην
subject nor into true faith and concord
συνερχόμενος. τούτῳ συνεζύγη μετὰ θάνατον τῆς αὐτοῦ
coming to-this(-man) was-married after death of-the his
γαμετῆς ἡ τοῦ Πετραλίφα θυγάτηρ, τοῦ γυναικαδέλφου
wife the — of-Petraliphas daughter of-the wife's-brother
τοῦ Κομνηνοῦ Θεοδώρου, περὶ ἧς παρακατιὼν ὁ λόγος
— of-Komnenos Theodore about whom going-on the account
δηλώσει. ἄνευ μέντοι, καθὼς εἰρήκειν, τῶν ὑποπιπτόντων
will-show without however as I-had-said of-the subject

τῷ τοιούτῳ Σθλάβῳ χωρῶν τὰ πάντα ὑπὸ τὸν Κομνηνὸν
to-the such Sthlabos countries the all under — Komnenos
ἐγεγόνει Θεόδωρον. ἐπεὶ γοῦν Μοσυνούπολις καὶ Ξάνθεια
had-become Theodore since then Mosynopolis and Xantheia
καὶ ἡ Γρατζιανοὺς αὐτὴ ὑπὸ τοῦτον ἐτέλει, τὸ τῆς
and — Gratzianous itself under him was the —
Σταγείρας ὑπερβὰς ὄρος, ὃ δὴ Μάκρην ὀνομάζουσιν
of-Stageira having-crossed mountain which indeed Makre call
οἱ πολλοί, τὰ ἐκεῖθεν τοῦ Ἔβρου κατέδραμεν, ἄνετα
the many the(-places) beyond — of-Hebros he-overran unguarded
εὑρὼν πάντα καὶ μηδενὶ φρουρίῳ περιφραγνύμενα.
having-found all and with-no fortress fenced-around
ἔνθεν τοι καὶ περὶ τὸ Διδυμότειχον γεγονὼς ἐν οὐ
thence therefore also about — Didymoteichon having-come in not
πολλῷ χρόνῳ βασιλεὺς ἐπεφημίζετο τούτων. ἀφικόμενος
much time emperor was-acclaimed of-these having-arrived
δὲ καὶ περὶ τὴν Ἀδριανούπολιν εὗρεν ἐντὸς τὸν δηλωθέντα
and also about — Adrianople found within the aforesaid
Ἰσῆν τὸν πρωτοστράτορα καὶ τὸν Καμμύτζην μετὰ τοῦ
Ises the protostrator and — Kamytzes with the
στρατεύματος τοῦ βασιλέως Ἰωάννου. ἀπατηλοῖς δὲ λόγοις
army of-the emperor John with-deceitful and words
τοὺς οἰκήτορας ὑπελθών, ὡς πλουτίσειε τούτους ἄκρως
the inhabitants having-won-over as he-would-enrich them highly
καὶ τῶν ἄλλων Ῥωμαίων ὑπερυψώσειε, πείθει τὸ μὲν τοῦ
and above-the other Romans would-exalt persuades the indeed of-the
βασιλέως ἐξαγαγεῖν στράτευμα ἔξω, αὐτὸν δὲ εἰσαγαγεῖν.
emperor to-lead-out army out him and to-lead-in
ἐξάγεται οὖν ὁ πρωτοστράτωρ Ἰσῆς καὶ ὁ Καμμύτζης
is-led-out then the protostrator Ises and — Kamytzes
μετὰ τοῦ συνόντος τούτοις στρατεύματος ἐπὶ ὅρκοις τοῦ
with the being-with them army on oaths of-the

μή τινα τούτων παθεῖν τι δεινόν. ἐξελθόντες οὖν ὁ
not any of-them to-suffer anything dread having-gone-out then the
μὲν πρωτοστράτωρ οὐδὲ ὅλως τὸν Κομνηνὸν Θεόδωρον
indeed protostrator not-even at-all — Komnenos Theodore
τεθέαται — τοῦτο γὰρ δὴ αὐτοῖς συμπεφώνηται — ὁ δὲ
beheld this for indeed to-them had-been-agreed — and
Καμμύτζης συντυχὼν αὐτῷ οὐκ ἀπέβη τοῦ ἵππου οὐδὲ
Kamytzes having-met him not dismounted from-the horse nor
ὡς βασιλεῖ προσεκύνησεν. εἰς ὃ βαρυθυμήσας ὁ Κομνηνὸς
as to-emperor did-obeisance at which aggrieved — Komnenos
Θεόδωρος — ἐβούλετο γὰρ ὡς βασιλέα ἐκεῖνον πάντας
Theodore wished for as emperor him all
ἔχειν Ῥωμαίους, ἐπείπερ καὶ ὡς βασιλεὺς ἐφημίζετο —
to-have Romans since also as emperor he-was-acclaimed
ὕβρεις τε κατέχεε τοῦ ἀνδρὸς καὶ μικροῦ ἂν καὶ πληγὰς
insults both poured-down on-the man and nearly — also blows
ἐπέθετο. τοῦτο τῷ Καμμύτζῃ ἀφορμὴ ἐγεγόνει πρὸς τὸν
would-have-laid-on this — to-Kamytzes occasion had-become with the
βασιλέα τιμῆς· ὡς γὰρ αὖθις τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον διεπέρασαν
emperor of-honor when for again — Hellespont they-crossed
καὶ πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα ἀφίκοντο, μέγας ἑταιρειάρχης
and to the emperor arrived grand hetaireiarch
διὰ ταῦτα ὁ Καμμύτζης τετίμηται. ὁ Κομνηνὸς οὖν
because-of these-things — Kamytzes was-honored — Komnenos then
Θεόδωρος ἐγκρατὴς καὶ τῆς Ἀδριανουπόλεως γεγονὼς
Theodore master also — of-Adrianople having-become
πολλὰ παρέσχε τοῖς Ἰταλοῖς πράγματα. κατέδραμε γὰρ
much gave to-the Italians troubles he-overran for
πάντα τὰ ὑπ᾽ ἐκείνων κρατούμενα, καὶ μέχρις αὐτῆς
all the(-places) by them held and as-far-as itself
τῆς Βιζύης γενόμενος τὸ ἔξω κατέσχε τοῦ ἄστεος καὶ
— Bizye having-come the(-parts) outside held of-the town and

λείαν πολλὴν ἐκεῖθεν ἐποιήσατο, καὶ μέχρι καὶ τῶν πυλῶν
booty much thence made and as-far-as even the gates
τῆς Κωνσταντίνου κατήντησε καὶ πτοίαν πολλὴν τοῖς
of-the of-Constantine arrived and terror much on-the
Λατίνοις ἐνέβαλε. τότε δὴ καὶ ὁ Ἀσὲλ δε Κάε, ὃς τῇ
Latins cast then indeed also — Ansel de Cayeux who to-the
θυγατρὶ τοῦ βασιλέως Θεοδώρου τοῦ Λασκάριος συνεζύγη,
daughter of-the emperor Theodore the Laskaris was-married
ὑπό τινος τοῦ Κομνηνοῦ Θεοδώρου δόρατι ἐπλήγη τὸν
by some — of-Komnenos Theodore with-spear was-struck the
τράχηλον· καὶ ἦν ὡς ἔδοξε τὰ τῆς βολῆς ἐκείνῳ
neck and it-was as it-seemed the(-things) of-the blow to-him
θανάσιμα, ἀλλ᾽ ὑπό του τῶν ἰατρῶν τεθεράπευται. ἦν
deadly but by one of-the physicians was-healed was
δὲ τὸ ἀπὸ τοῦδε τραχυτέρα αὐτῷ ἡ φωνὴ καὶ οὐκ
and the(-time) from this rougher his the voice and not
εὐχερῶς οἱ τοῦ τραχήλου στρεφόμενοι σπόνδυλοι.
easily the of-the neck turning vertebrae

V · KLOKOTNITSA AND THE YOUNG AKROPOLITES

Theodore of Epirus breaks his treaty with Asan and is defeated and captured at Klokotnitsa; Asan frees the common soldiers, and much of the west passes to him. The Latins call John, king of Jerusalem, to Constantinople, where he achieves little. Akropolites, sixteen, is sent to the emperor John.

Οὕτως οὖν ἐπαυξήσας τοῖς πράγμασιν ὁ Κομνηνὸς
so then having-increased in-the affairs — Komnenos
Θεόδωρος, ἐπειδὴ ὁμορῶν ἐγεγόνει τοῖς Βουλγάροις, εἰς
Theodore since bordering he-had-become on-the Bulgarians into
σπονδάς τε συνῆλθε τῷ Βουλγάρων βασιλεῖ Ἰωάννῃ τῷ
treaties both came with-the of-Bulgarians king John the

Ἀσάν, ὃν φθάσας ὁ λόγος εἴρηκε μετὰ τὸν Βορίλλαν
Asan whom anticipating the account said after — Borilas
βασιλεῦσαι τῆς τῶν Βουλγάρων, καὶ συγγένειαν μετὰ
to-have-reigned of-the of-the Bulgarians and kinship with
τούτου πεποίηκε, προσλαβόμενος ἐπὶ τῷ ἀδελφῷ αὐτοῦ
him made having-taken for the brother his
Μανουὴλ τὴν θυγατέρα αὐτοῦ Μαρίαν, ἥτις ἐκ παλλακῆς
Manuel the daughter his Maria who from concubine
ἐκείνῳ γεγέννηται. ὁ μὲν οὖν Ἄγγελος Θεόδωρος τὰς
to-him was-born — indeed then Angelos Theodore the
μετὰ τοῦ Ἀσὰν Ἰωάννου σπονδὰς διαλύσας, οἷα ἐκεῖνος
with — Asan John treaties having-dissolved as that(-man)
ἀνὴρ θρασύτερος καὶ ἀτακτότερον φερόμενος οὐ μόνον ἐν
man more-reckless and more-disorderly behaving not only in
βασιλείοις ἀλλὰ καὶ ἐν πᾶσιν ἁπλῶς τοῖς πολιτικοῖς, καὶ
palace but also in all simply the civic(-affairs) and
θαμὰ παραβαίνων τοὺς ὅρκους καὶ παρασπονδῶν τοῖς
often transgressing the oaths and breaking-treaties with-the(-ones)
ἐν γειτόνων, κατὰ Βουλγάρων χωρεῖ, πολλὴν συναθροίσας
among neighbors against Bulgarians goes much having-gathered
τὴν στρατιὰν ἔκ τε Ῥωμαίων συγκεκροτημένην καὶ
the army from both Romans assembled and
Ἰταλῶν. παραμείψας οὖν τὴν Ἀδριανοῦ περὶ τὰ ἄνω
Italians having-passed then the of-Hadrian toward the(-parts) upper
τοῦ Ἔβρου τὴν πορείαν ἐποιεῖτο, ζητῶν μετὰ Βουλγάρων
— of-Hebros the march made seeking with Bulgarians
συρρῆξαι πόλεμον. ἐξήτει δὲ ἄρα τὸν αὐτοῦ ὄλεθρον.
to-break-out war he-sought and then the his destruction
ἐδόκει καὶ γὰρ ὡς οὐδ' ὅλως οἱ Βούλγαροι ὑποπτήξαντες
he-thought also for as not-even at-all the Bulgarians having-cowered
τὴν ὁρμὴν καὶ μόνην τῆς στρατιᾶς αὐτοῦ ὑποσταῖεν. οὐχ
the onrush and alone of-the army his would-withstand not

οὕτω δὲ καὶ οἱ Βούλγαροι, ἀλλ᾽ ὁ Ἀσὰν Ἰωάννης ταῖς
so but also the Bulgarians but — Asan John in-the
ἐπιορκίαις καὶ ταῖς παρασπονδήσεσι τοῦ Ἀγγέλου Θεοδώρου
perjuries and in-the treaty-breakings — of-Angelos Theodore
μᾶλλον τεθαρρηκὼς ἢ ταῖς σφετέραις δυνάμεσιν, ὀλίγον
rather trusting than in-the his-own forces small
τι συμμαχικὸν ἀπὸ Σκυθῶν εἰληφώς, οὐκ εἰς χιλίους
some allied(-force) from Scythians having-taken not to thousand
μετρούμενον, θαρραλεώτερον εἰς τὴν μάχην ἐφέρετο, ὥς
measuring more-boldly to the battle went as
φασί τινες κἀν τῇ σημαίᾳ τὸν ἔγγραφον ὅρκον τοῦ
say some even-on the standard the written oath —
Θεοδώρου ἀπαιωρήσας. καὶ δὴ περί που τὸν παρέβριον
of-Theodore having-hung and indeed about somewhere the riverside
τόπον — Κολοκοτινίτζαν αὐτὸν ὀνομάζουσι — ξυμβάλλουσι
place Klokotnitsa it they-name join
τὰ στρατεύματα. καὶ ὡς ἐν μικρῷ τὸ πᾶν παραστῆσαι,
the armies and as in little the all to-present
κατὰ κράτος νικᾶται παρὰ τῶν Βουλγάρων καὶ τῶν
by force is-conquered by the Bulgarians and the
Σκυθῶν ὁ Θεόδωρος, καὶ συλλαμβάνεται μὲν παρὰ τῶν
Scythians — Theodore and is-captured indeed by the
πολεμίων οὗτος, οὐκ ὀλίγοι δὲ καὶ τῶν προσγενῶν αὐτοῦ
enemies this(-man) not few and also of-the relatives his
καὶ τῶν ἐν τέλει τε καὶ λογάδων, καὶ τὰ ἐκείνων
and of-the(-ones) in office both and select and the(-things) of-them
πάντα λεία τοῖς Βουλγάροις ἐγένετο. φιλανθρωποτέρως δὲ
all booty to-the Bulgarians became more-humanely and
περὶ τὸ ἁλωθὲν πλῆθος ὁ Ἀσὰν διατεθείς, τοὺς πλείους
about the captured multitude — Asan disposed the most
τῶν στρατευμάτων καὶ μάλιστα τοὺς χυδαιοτέρους καὶ
of-the armies and especially the more-common and

σύγκλυδας ἐλευθεροῖ καὶ πρὸς τὰς αὐτῶν ἀποπέμπει κώμας
rabble frees and to the their sends-away villages
τε καὶ πόλεις, τάχα μὲν καὶ τὸ φιλάνθρωπον ἐνδεικνύμενος,
both and cities perhaps indeed also the humanity displaying
τάχα δὲ καὶ τὸ συμφέρον τούτῳ πραγματευόμενος·
perhaps and also the advantage for-himself contriving
ἐβούλετο καὶ γὰρ δεσπόσαι τῶν τοιούτων, τῆς Ῥωμαϊκῆς
he-wished also for to-master of-the such from-the Roman
ἀρχῆς ἀποστήσας. οὗ καὶ τετύχηκεν· ἐπεὶ καὶ γὰρ κατ᾽
rule having-detached which also he-attained since also for against
αὐτῶν κατόπιν ἐχώρει, πάντες ἀναιμωτὶ τούτῳ ὑπέπιπτον,
them behind he-went all bloodlessly to-him submitted
καὶ γίνεται μὲν ὑπ᾽ αὐτὸν ἡ Ἀδριανοῦ, ἐκ τοῦ σχεδὸν
and becomes indeed under him the of-Hadrian from the almost
δὲ καὶ τὸ Διδυμότειχον, εἶτα Βολερὸν ἅπαν, Σέρραι,
and also — Didymoteichon then Boleron whole Serres
Πελαγονία καὶ Πρίλαπος καὶ τὰ πέριξ τούτων.
Pelagonia and Prilapos and the(-places) around these
κατέδραμε δὲ καὶ τῆς Μεγάλης Βλαχίας, ἀλλὰ καὶ τοῦ
overran and also — of-Great Vlachia but also —
Ἐλβάνου κατακυριεύει, καὶ μέχρι τοῦ Ἰλλυρικοῦ τὰς λείας
of-Albanon masters and as-far-as — Illyricum the plunderings
ποιεῖ. ἐπεὶ δὲ τὸ πολὺ τοῦ βουλεύματος κατειργάσατο
makes when and the most of-the plan he-accomplished
καὶ ὡς ἠγάπα τὰ κατ᾽ αὐτὸν διέθετο, εἰς τοὺς
and as he-liked the(-things) concerning him arranged to the
οἰκείους ἐπανέζευξε τόπους, τινὰ μὲν τῶν φρουρίων
own returned places some indeed of-the fortresses
καταλελοιπὼς ὑπὸ Ῥωμαίων δεσπόζεσθαι, τὰ πλείω δὲ
having-left by Romans to-be-held the more and
ὑφ᾽ ἑαυτὸν ποιησάμενος, στρατιώτας ἐν τούτοις τάξας
under himself having-made soldiers in these having-placed

καὶ στρατηγοὺς καὶ τοὺς εἰσπραττομένους τὰ δημόσια
and generals and the(-ones) exacting the public
φορολογήματα. ἔδοξε γοῦν τοῖς πᾶσι τότε καὶ θαυμαστὸς
taxes he-seemed then to-the all then both wonderful
καὶ μακάριος· οὐ γὰρ ἐχρῆτο μαχαίραις ἐν τοῖς ἰδίοις
and blessed not for he-used swords among the own
οὐδὲ ἐχραίνετο φόνοις Ῥωμαϊκοῖς, ὡς οἱ πρὸ αὐτοῦ
nor was-stained with-murders Roman as the(-ones) before him
τῶν Βουλγάρων. ἔνθεν τοι καὶ οὐ μόνον παρὰ Βουλγάρων
of-the Bulgarians thence therefore also not only by Bulgarians
ἀλλὰ καὶ παρὰ Ῥωμαίων ἐφιλεῖτο καὶ ἑτέρων ἐθνῶν.
but also by Romans he-was-loved and other nations
26 Ἐπεὶ γοῦν, ὡς ὁ λόγος ἱστόρησεν, ὁ Ἄγγελος Θεόδωρος
when then as the account narrated — Angelos Theodore
λάφυρον ἐγεγόνει μετὰ καὶ λοιπῶν προσηκόντων τῷ γένει
spoil had-become with also others related to-the race
καὶ ἐκκρίτων ἀνδρῶν τῷ Ἀσάν, ἐφρουρεῖτο μὲν παρ᾽
and select men — to-Asan was-guarded indeed by
αὐτοῦ, ἐφιλοφρονεῖτο δὲ τὰ πολλά. καὶ τοῦτο ἦν ἐπὶ
him was-treated-kindly and the(-things) much and this was for
πολύ· ἐπεὶ δὲ εἰς τὰ οἴκοι νεωτερισμοῖς χρᾶσθαι
much(-time) when and in the(-affairs) at-home revolutions to-use
πεφώραται, ἐκτυφλοῖ αὐτὸν ὁ Ἀσάν. ὁ μὲν οὖν ἀδελφὸς
he-was-caught blinds him — Asan the indeed then brother
αὐτοῦ Μανουὴλ ὁ Ἄγγελος, ὃς δεσποτικῷ ἀξιώματι
his Manuel the Angelos who with-despotic dignity
παρὰ τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ τετίμητο, φυγῇ χρησάμενος, ἡνίκα
by the brother had-been-honored flight having-used when
τὸ Ῥωμαϊκὸν ἐτρέπετο στράτευμα, περὶ τὴν Θεσσαλονίκην
the Roman was-routed army to — Thessalonica
ἀπῄει καὶ δεσπότης ὠνομάζετο. ταύτης τε κυριεύων
went and despot was-named of-it both being-master

καὶ τῶν περὶ αὐτήν, ἐρυθροῖς δὲ γράμμασι τὰς
and of-the(-places) around it with-red and letters the
αὐτοῦ γραφὰς ἐπεκύρου. πρὸς ὃν καὶ ἀπέσκωψέ τις
his writings ratified to whom also jested one
τῶν πρέσβεων παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως Ἰωάννου ἀποσταλείς,
of-the envoys by the emperor John sent
ὡς εἰς σὲ καὶ μᾶλλον ἁρμόσει τὸ εἰς Χριστὸν
as to you also rather will-fit the(-verse) to Christ
ψαλτῳδούμενον, σὲ τὸν βασιλέα καὶ δεσπότην. ἦν μὲν οὖν
sung you the king and master was indeed then
τὸ ἀπὸ τοῦδε ὁ Ἄγγελος Μανουὴλ τῶν ἐναπολειφθεισῶν
the from this(-time) — Angelos Manuel of-the left-remaining
πρὸς τὰ δυτικὰ μέρη χωρῶν τε καὶ πόλεων ἐγκρατής,
toward the western parts countries both and cities master
μὴ παρὰ τῶν Βουλγάρων τὸ σύνολον ἐνοχλούμενος, ἐπεὶ
not by the Bulgarians at all troubled since
τῇ ἐκ παλλακίδος τοῦ Ἀσὰν συνεκοιτάζετο θυγατρί.
with-the from concubine — of-Asan he-slept daughter
Ἀλλὰ περὶ τοὺς ἐν τῇ Κωνσταντίνου Λατίνους 27
but to the in the of-Constantine Latins
ἐλθέτω καὶ αὖθις ὁ τῆς ἱστορίας εἱρμός. οἱ ἐν τῇ
let-come also again the of-the history sequence the(-ones) in —
Κωνσταντινουπόλει, ἐπειδή, ὡς προειρήκειμεν, ὁ Ῥομπέρτος,
Constantinople since as we-had-said-before — Robert
ὃν ὡς βασιλέα ὁ λόγος ἔχειν τούτους ἱστόρησε, τὴν
whom as emperor the account to-have them narrated —
Εὔριπον καταλαβὼν τετελεύτηκεν, ἐναπελείφθη δὲ ὁ
Euripos having-reached died was-left and the
ἀδελφὸς αὐτοῦ Βαλδουῖνος ἔτι ἀφῆλιξ ὤν, στέλλουσι
brother his Baldwin still under-age being send
πρεσβείαν πρὸς Ἰωάννην τὸν ὀνομαζόμενον Ἱεροσολύμων
embassy to John the named of-Jerusalem

ῥῆγα, φήμην τε πολλὴν αὐχοῦντα περὶ τὰς στρατιωτικὰς
king fame both much boasting about the military
μεθόδους βριαρόν τε χεῖρα καὶ τῷ μεγέθει τοὺς κατ᾽
methods mighty both in-hand and in-the size the(-ones) of
αὐτὸν ὑπερβάλλοντα, ὡς ἄν τε ἀφίκοιτο πρὸς αὐτοὺς
his-time surpassing so-that — both he-might-come to them
καὶ βασιλεὺς Κωνσταντινουπόλεως φημισθείη καὶ ἄρξοι
and emperor of-Constantinople be-acclaimed and might-rule
ὡς αὐτοκράτωρ τῶν εἰς αὐτήν, ἐπιγαμβρεύσοι δὲ
as autocrat of-the(-things) in it might-take-as-son-in-law and
ἑαυτῷ καὶ τὸν ὃν εἶχον εἰς τὴν κληρονομίαν, ὡς
for-himself also the(-one) whom they-had for the inheritance as
ᾤοντο, Βαλδουῖνον — ὑπῆρχε γὰρ τῷ ῥηγὶ καὶ θυγάτριον
they-thought Baldwin there-was for to-the king also little-daughter
— μετὰ δὲ τὴν τοῦ ῥηγὸς ἀποβίωσιν βασιλεύσοι τούτων
after and the of-the king death might-reign of-these
ὁ Βαλδουῖνος, αὔξην προσδεδεγμένος τῆς ἡλικίας, ἐπεὶ καὶ
— Baldwin growth having-received of-the age since also
ὁ ῥὴξ ἔξωρος ἄγαν ἦν, περί που τὰ ὀγδοήκοντα ἔτη ἢ
the king past-age very was about somewhere the eighty years or
καὶ πλείω τούτων διαβιώσας· ὡς καὶ αὐτὸς τοῦτον εἶδον,
also more than-these having-lived as also I-myself him saw
καὶ ὑπερεξεπλάγην τὸ τοῦ ἀνδρὸς μῆκος ἐν πάσῃ διαπλάσει
and was-astounded-at the of-the man height in all form
τοὺς ἄλλους πολὺ ὑπερβάλλον κατά τε μῆκος καὶ πλάτος.
the others much surpassing in both height and breadth
ξυνέθετο γοῦν ὁ ῥὴξ τῇ πρεσβείᾳ καὶ καταλαμβάνει τὴν
agreed then the king with-the embassy and reaches the
Κωνσταντίνου, τὴν πορείαν διὰ θαλάττης πεποιηκώς· οὐδὲ
of-Constantine the journey through sea having-made not
γὰρ εἶχε λαὸν ἀξιόχρεων ὡς ἄν γε πεζοπορήσειεν.
for he-had people worthy so-that — at-least he-might-march-on-foot

ἐπεὶ δὲ καταλάβοι τὴν Κωνσταντίνου, οὐκ εὐχερῶς εἶχεν
when and he-reached the of-Constantine not easily he-could
ἐξιέναι τε καὶ μάχης κατάρξαι· καὶ γὰρ ἐπέγνω τὸν
to-go-out both and battle to-begin also for he-recognized the
βασιλέα Ἰωάννην στρατηγικώτατόν τε ὄντα καὶ ταῖς κατ᾽
emperor John most-strategic both being and in-the against
ἐχθρῶν μάχαις εὐμεθοδώτατον. ἐμέμφετο γοῦν ἑαυτὸν τῆς
enemies battles most-methodical blamed then himself for-the
ἐγχειρήσεως καὶ ὅτι πρώτως τοῦ ἔργου ἐπελάβετο· καὶ
undertaking and that first the work he-took-on and
κακῶς ἔφασκε νοεῖν τοὺς λέγοντας, εἴ γε καὶ οὕτως
badly he-said to-think the(-ones) saying if at-least also so
ὑπελάμβανον καὶ οὐκ ἠρέθιζον αὐτὸν διὰ τὸ σφίσι
they-supposed and not they-provoked him for the for-themselves
συμφέρον, ὡς καταλάβοι ἂν εἰς χώρους ὧν οὐκ ἐπίσταται
advantage that he-would-reach — into lands which not knows
ἄρχειν ὁ ἐπ᾽ αὐτοῖς βασιλεύων· καλῶς γὰρ ἐγνώκει
to-rule the(-one) over them reigning well for he-had-known
καὶ ἔλεγεν, ὡς εἰ δέκα τοσοῦτοι χῶροι τῷ βασιλεῖ
and said that if ten so-many lands to-the emperor
Ἰωάννῃ πρὸς δεσποτείαν ὑπῆρχον, καλῶς ἂν ἠπίστατο
John for mastery belonged well — he-would-know
τούτων κατάρχειν καὶ βασιλεύειν καὶ διασώζειν ἐκ τῶν
them to-rule and to-reign and to-preserve from the
ἐχθρῶν. εἴτε γοῦν διὰ ταῦτα εἴτε καὶ τρυφῆσαι εἰς
enemies whether then because-of these-things or also to-luxuriate to
ἄκρον ἐν τοῖς τῆς Κωνσταντίνου βεβουλημένος καλοῖς,
the-utmost in the of-the of-Constantine having-wished good(-things)
δύο ἐνιαυτοὺς ἐντὸς αὐτῆς διήνυσε. μόγις οὖν τριήρεις
two years within it spent hardly then triremes
οἰκονομήσας καὶ στράτευμα συναθροίσας ὅσον εἶχε
having-arranged and army having-gathered as-much-as he-had

πρὸς δύναμιν, κατὰ τῆς ἕω ἐχώρησε, καὶ περὶ τὸ τῆς
to power against the east went and at the —
Λαμψάκου ἐλλιμενίζει νεώριον, προσεχῶς τῷ τότε τοῦ
of-Lampsakos puts-in dockyard immediately at-the then(-time) of-the
βασιλέως Ἰωάννου ἐκ τῆς κατὰ τοῦ καίσαρος Γαβαλᾶ
emperor John from the against the caesar Gabalas
μάχης ὑποστρέψαντος, ὃν διὰ νεωτερισμὸν ἐμαχέσατο.
battle having-returned whom for revolt he-fought
28 Ὁ μὲν οὖν βασιλεύς, περὶ τὰ τῆς Σταδείας μέρη τὰς
the indeed then emperor about the — of-Stadeia parts the
σκηνώσεις ποιούμενος, τῷ Παλαιολόγῳ Ἀνδρονίκῳ, ὃν
encampments making — to-Palaiologos Andronikos whom
μέγαν δομέστικον εἶχε, περὶ οὗ καὶ μικρὸν πρόσθεν εἰρήκειν,
great domestic he-had about whom also a-little before I-had-spoken
τὰ στρατεύματα καὶ τοὺς στρατηγοὺς παραδοὺς καὶ περὶ
the armies and the generals having-handed-over and about
τὴν νῆσον Ῥόδον τριήρεσιν ἱκαναῖς καὶ λοιπαῖς ἐξαποστείλας
the island Rhodes with-triremes sufficient and other having-sent-out
ναυσίν, εἴ πως βριαρώτερον ἐπιτεθείη τῷ ἀποστάτῃ καὶ
ships if somehow more-forcefully he-might-attack the rebel and
καταβλάψειεν οἷς οἶδε λόγοις τῆς στρατηγίας — ἐπεὶ
might-harm with-what he-knows methods of-the generalship when
δὲ ταῦτα οὕτω συμβαίη καὶ κατὰ σκοπὸν Ἰωάννῃ
and these-things so might-turn-out and according-to aim to-John
τῷ βασιλεῖ τὰ περὶ τὸν καίσαρα γένοιτο, ἀκούσοι
the emperor the(-affairs) concerning the caesar might-become he-hears
δὲ καὶ ὡς ὁ ῥὴξ ἐξῄει τῆς Κωνσταντίνου καὶ
and also that the king was-going-out from-the of-Constantine and
βουλὴν ἔχει προσοκεῖλαι τῇ Λαμψάκῳ κἀκεῖ ἐξελθεῖν καὶ
plan has to-put-in — at-Lampsakos and-there to-go-out and
Ῥωμαίοις πολεμῆσαι, μεθ᾽ ὧν ἔτυχε διάγειν ὁ βασιλεὺς
Romans to-fight with whom happened to-be-staying the emperor

— ὀλίγοι δὲ ἦσαν οὗτοι, ἐπεὶ τὸ πολὺ τῆς στρατιᾶς
few and were these since the great-part of-the army
τῇ μάχῃ καὶ τῇ ὥρᾳ τοῦ χειμῶνος τεταλαιπωρηκὸς
by-the battle and by-the season of-the winter having-been-worn-out
περὶ τὰ οἴκοι ἐφέρετο — χωρεῖ πρὸς τὴν Λάμψακον
to the(-things) at-home was-borne goes to — Lampsakos
καὶ τοῖς τῆς Σιγρηνῆς μέρεσι τὰς σκηνὰς πήγνυσι.
and in-the — of-Sigrene parts the tents pitches
Τότε καὶ αὐτὸς πρὸς τῶν γονέων ἐκ τῆς Κωνσταντίνου 29
then also myself by the parents from the of-Constantine
ἀπεστάλην τῷ βασιλεῖ, ἑκκαιδεκέτης ὢν καὶ νῦν τῆς
I-was-sent to-the emperor sixteen-years-old being and now the
ἐγκυκλίου ἀπηλλαγμένος παιδεύσεως, ἣν γραμματικὴν
general having-finished education which grammar
κατονομάζουσιν οἱ πολλοί. ἐβούλετο δέ μοι καὶ ὁ πατὴρ
name the many wished and for-me also the father
λάθρα τῆς τῶν Λατίνων ἀπολισθῆσαι χειρός· ἰσχυρῶς
secretly the of-the Latins to-slip-away hand strongly
γὰρ παρ᾽ αὐτῶν ἐκεκράτητο ταῖς τε τῶν ἀναλωμάτων
for by them be-had-been-held by-the both of-the expenses
δαψιλείαις καὶ ταῖς σφῶν δεξιώσεσι, καὶ τὸ πολλὴν
abundances and by-the their welcomes and the much
ἔχειν περὶ αὐτὸν ὑπηρεσίαν τέκνα τε θεράποντάς τε καὶ
to-have about him service children both servants and also
θεραπαινίδας οὐκ ὀλίγον ἐποίει τούτῳ τὸ ἐμποδών. ἀλλ᾽
maidservants not little made to-this(-man) the hindrance but
ἦν αὐτῷ κατὰ νοῦν τῷ τότε, καθὼς ἂν ἄρα δυνάμεως
it-was to-him in mind at-the then(-time) as-much-as — then of-power
σχοίη, εἰ δεήσει, παρακινδυνεῦσαι πρὸς τὴν ἐξέλευσιν
he-might-have if it-will-need to-run-risks for the departure
καὶ ἀποπλῆσαι τὸ σπουδαζόμενον. διά τοι τοῦτο κἀμὲ
and to-fulfill the thing-earnestly-sought because-of indeed this also-me

πρὸς τὸν κρατοῦντα προπέπομφε. κεκώλυκε δὲ τοῦτον
to the ruler he-sent-ahead hindered and this(-man)
νόσος βαρεῖα· ἡμιθνὴς γὰρ σχεδὸν καὶ ἡμίξηρος γεγονώς,
illness heavy half-dead for almost and half-withered having-become
περὶ δύο που ἔτη τῇ κλίνῃ προσπεπατταλευμένος,
about two somewhere years to-the bed nailed
ἀπέλιπε τὸ βιοῦν, αὐτὸς δὲ ἐναπελείφθην τοῖς ἀνακτόροις
he-left the living I-myself and was-left-behind in-the palaces
προμηθείας βασιλικῆς ἀξιούμενος.
of-forethought imperial being-deemed-worthy
30 Ὡς γοῦν ἔφημεν, καταλαβὼν ὁ ῥὴξ Ἰωάννης, ὁ καὶ
as then we-said having-reached the king John the also
βασιλεὺς Κωνσταντινουπόλεως φημιζόμενος, τὴν Λάμψακον,
emperor of-Constantinople acclaimed — Lampsakos
περὶ τὸν οὕτω πως ὀνομαζόμενον τόπον Ὁλκὸν τὰς
at the thus somehow named place Holkos the
νῆας τούτου καθώρμισεν. ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς Ἰωάννης ἐπεὶ μὴ
ships his anchored the but emperor John since not
εἶχε μεθ' ἑαυτοῦ στρατὸν ἀξιόμαχον κωλῦσαι τούτῳ τὴν
he-had with himself army fit-for-battle to-hinder for-him the
ἔξοδον δι' ἃς εἰρήκειν αἰτίας, μεθόδοις στρατηγικαῖς μεθ'
going-out for which I-had-spoken reasons by-methods strategic with
ὧν εἶχεν ὀλίγων τὰς τῶν πολεμίων κινήσεις ἐκώλυεν.
whom he-had few the of-the enemies movements he-hindered
ἐξῆλθον οὖν οἱ Λατῖνοι καὶ ὁ τούτων ῥὴξ Ἰωάννης
went-out then the Latins and the their king John
καὶ ἐβάδισαν μὲν τόπους τινὰς παραιγιαλίους· οὐδὲ
and marched indeed places some coastal not-even
γὰρ ἠδύναντο μακρότερον τῶν νηῶν αὐτῶν ἀποστῆναι,
for they-could farther from-the ships their to-stand-away
ὁ γὰρ ἀντιστρατηγῶν αὐτοῖς βασιλεὺς ἐπηκολούθει καὶ
the for generalling-against them emperor followed-close and

ὑπῆρχε δεινὸς μετὰ μικρᾶς πάνυ δυνάμεως ἀναχαιτίσαι
was able with small very power to-check
τοὺς ἐναντίους. ὁ μὲν οὖν βασιλεὺς περὶ τὰς τῶν βουνῶν
the opponents the indeed then emperor about the of-the hills
ὑπωρείας ἐποιεῖτο τὰς πορείας, περὶ δὲ τὰς ᾐϊόνας οἱ
foothills made the marches about but the shores the
Ἰταλοί. ὀλίγον οὖν χρόνον διαβιβάσαντες ἐν τῇ τοῦ
Italians little then time having-passed in the of-the
βασιλέως παραιγιαλίῳ χώρᾳ — οὔπω γὰρ παρέδραμον
emperor coastal land not-yet for had-run-past
τέτταρες μῆνες — καὶ ὀλίγον τόπον πατήσαντες — ἀπὸ
four months and little place having-trodden from
γὰρ τῆς Λαμψάκου μέχρι καὶ τῶν Κεχρεῶν ἀφίκοντο —
for — Lampsakos as-far-as also — Kechreai they-arrived
μικρὸν ἢ μηδὲν λυμήναντες — προύφθασε γὰρ ὁ βασιλεὺς
little or nothing having-damaged anticipated for the emperor
τὰ χρειώδη πάντα τοῖς ὑψηλοτέροις τόποις διασώσασθαι
the necessary(-things) all in-the higher places to-save-safely
— περὶ τὸ τῶν Πηγῶν ἐχώρησαν ἄστυ, ἓν μόνον φρούριον
about the — of-Pegai went town one only fortress
χειρωσάμενοι, ὃ Κεραμιδᾶς ὀνομάζεται, περί που
having-subdued which Keramidas is-named about somewhere
τοὺς βουνοὺς διακείμενον τῆς Κυζίκου. εἶχον δὲ τὰς ναῦς
the hills lying — of-Kyzikos they-had and the ships
αὐτῶν ἑτοίμους εἰς τὴν Κωνσταντίνου παλινοστῆσαι, καὶ
their ready to the of-Constantine to-sail-back and
ᾤχοντο ἂν αἰσχύνης καὶ ζημίας πεπληρωμένοι, εἰ μὴ τοῦ
would-have-gone — of-shame and of-loss filled if not the
τῶν Πηγῶν ἄστεος περιεγένοντο τῇ κλοπῇ. ἀνὴρ γάρ τις
— of-Pegai town they-had-mastered by-the theft man for a
δεινὸς ἀναρριχᾶσθαι πρὸς ἀκρωνυχίας πετρῶν ὁδὸν ἐφεῦρε,
clever to-clamber to tips of-rocks way discovered

δι᾽ ἧς ὡπλισμένους Λατίνους εἰς τὴν ἀκρόπολιν νυκτὸς
through which armed Latins into the citadel by-night
ἀνεβίβασεν· οἳ καὶ τοῖς φύλαξιν αἴφνης ἐπεισπεσόντες
he-brought-up who also on-the guards suddenly having-fallen-upon
αὐτούς τε ἐφόνευσαν καὶ εἷλον τὸ ἄστυ. τοῦτο πρὸς βραχὺ
them both murdered and took the town this for short-while
μὲν Ῥωμαίους εἰς δειλίαν ἐνέβαλε· πλήρης γὰρ ἦν ἡ πόλις
indeed Romans into cowardice cast full for was the city
ἀνδρῶν καλῶν τε καὶ ἀγαθῶν κἀκ τῶν περιφανεστέρων
of-men fine both and good and-from the more-conspicuous
ἐν στρατιώταις· ἀλλ᾽ ἡ τοῦ βασιλέως περὶ τὰ
among soldiers but the of-the emperor about the(-things)
τοιαῦτα οἰκονομία καὶ στρατηγικωτάτη δεινότης τὴν
such management and most-strategic cleverness the
τῶν Ῥωμαίων δειλίαν τότε ἀπετινάξατο καὶ εἰς πτοίαν
of-the Romans cowardice then shook-off and into terror
μᾶλλον τοὺς Λατίνους ἐνέβαλε καὶ τῆς τε φυσικῆς
rather the Latins cast and the both natural
ῥοπῆς καὶ τῆς ἐκ τῆς ἁλώσεως τῶν κατασχεθέντων
inclination and the from the capture of-the(-places) seized
γεγενημένης σφίσιν ὁρμῆς ἀνέστειλε. καὶ ὑπέστρεψαν εἰς
having-arisen for-them impulse checked and they-returned to
τὴν Κωνσταντίνου, μικρόν, ὡς ἔφημεν, ἢ οὐδὲν εἰργασμένοι.
the of-Constantine little as we-said or nothing having-accomplished

John betroths his son Theodore to Asan's daughter Helen, and Akropolites studies under Hexapterygos and Blemmydes. John takes Kallipolis; they celebrate the marriage at Lampsakos, raise Trnovo to a patriarchate, and ravage the Latin lands up to the walls of Constantinople. Asan, regretting the alliance, takes back his daughter, and joins the Latins and the Cumans against John at Tzouroulos, which holds; then he makes peace again.

Ὁ μὲν οὖν βασιλεὺς Ἰωάννης, οἷα ἐκεῖνος δεινὸς ἐφευρεῖν 31
the indeed then emperor John as that(-man) clever to-find-out
μεθόδους ἐν περιστάσεσι σῶσαί τε τὸ οἰκεῖον, ὑπὲρ
methods in difficulties to-save both the own for
οὗ καὶ πλείονος ἐδεῖτο λόγου, ἀναχαιτίσαι δὲ καὶ τὸ
which also more was-needed account to-check and also the
ὑπεναντίον, ὡς ἂν δι' ἀμφοῖν τὰ οἰκεῖα κρατύνοιτο,
opposing so-that — through both the own-affairs might-be-strengthened
εὑρίσκει τρόπον ἀποπληρωτικὸν τοῖν δυοῖν. ἐγεννήθη γὰρ
finds way fulfilling of-the two was-born for
αὐτῷ υἱὸς ἐκ τῆς βασιλίδος Εἰρήνης, ᾧ καὶ κλῆσις τοῦ
to-him son from the empress Irene to-whom also name of-the
πάππου καὶ βασιλέως Θεοδώρου τοῦ Λασκάριος ἐπετέθειτο·
grandfather and emperor Theodore the Laskaris had-been-given
ἑνδέκατον δέ οἱ ἔτος τότε ἠνύετο. καὶ ὁ Ἀσὰν δὲ
eleventh and for-him year then was-being-completed and — Asan and
θυγάτριον ἔσχεν — Ἑλένη αὐτῇ τοὔνομα — παρὰ τῆς ἐξ
little-daughter had Helen for-her the-name by the from
Οὔγγρων γαμηθείσης αὐτῷ· ἔννατον καὶ ταύτῃ ἔτος
Hungarians married to-him ninth also for-this(-woman) year
ἦν. πρεσβείαν γοῦν στέλλει ὁ βασιλεὺς πρὸς τὸν τῶν
was embassy then sends the emperor to the of-the
Βουλγάρων ἄρχοντα τὸν Ἀσάν, καὶ μνηστείας τῶν παίδων
Bulgarians ruler — Asan and of-betrothal of-the children

μνημονεύει καὶ τῆς ἀμφοῖν ἀγχιστείας καὶ τοῦ δι᾽
mentions and of-the both kinship and of-the through
ἀλλήλων εἰς ἀλλήλους συνασπισμοῦ τε καὶ συγκροτήσεως.
each-other for each-other alliance both and cooperation
καὶ δέχεται ὁ Ἀσὰν τὴν πρεσβείαν, καὶ πληροῦνται καὶ
and receives — Asan the embassy and are-fulfilled both
συμφωνίαι, καὶ ἐπὶ τούτοις καὶ ὅρκοι προύβησαν.
agreements and upon these also oaths proceeded
32 Τότε γοῦν καὶ αὐτὸς ἔρωτι τῶν μαθημάτων ἁλοὺς
then at-any-rate also myself by-love of-the studies caught
καὶ τῆς ὑψηλοτέρας τῶν λόγων παιδεύσεως, τοῖς πᾶσι
and of-the higher of-the letters education to-the all
χαίρειν εἰπὼν θελήματι τοῦ κρατοῦντος μετὰ καὶ
farewell having-said by-will of-the ruler with also
ἑτέρων μειράκων εἰς τὰς τῶν λογικῶν παιδευμάτων
other youths to the of-the logical teachings
θύρας παρήγγειλα. παιδευτὴς δὲ ἦν ἡμῖν ὁ Ἑξαπτέρυγος
doors I-entered teacher and was to-us — Hexapterygos
Θεόδωρος. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἔμπροσθεν τοῦ βασιλέως συνήλθομεν,
Theodore when and before the emperor we-had-come-together
πρός με τείνας τὸν λόγον ὁ βασιλεὺς εἰρήκει, ὡς
to me having-directed the speech the emperor had-said that
‘τούτους μὲν ἐκ Νικαίας λαβὼν τῷ διδασκαλείῳ
these indeed from Nicaea having-taken to-the school
παρέδωκα, σὲ δὲ τοῦ ἐμοῦ ἐκβαλὼν οἴκου τουτοισὶ
I-handed-over you but from-the my having-cast-out house to-these-here
συναφῆκα διδάσκεσθαι. δεῖξον οὖν, ὡς ἀληθῶς τῆς ἐμῆς
I-let-go-with to-be-taught show then that truly from-the my
οἰκίας ἐξῄεις, καὶ οὑτωσὶ τῶν μαθημάτων ἀντιποιήθητι.
household you-went-out and so-thus the studies lay-claim-to
στρατιώτης μὲν γὰρ τὸ ἐπιτήδευμα γεγονὼς ὁπόσα
soldier indeed for by-the profession having-become as-much-as

ἂν ἔσχες τὰ τοῦ σιτηρεσίου παρὰ τῆς βασιλείας
— you-would-have the(-things) of-the pay from the majesty
μου, τοσαῦτα ἂν ἴσως ἢ καὶ ὀλίγον πλείω διά τοι τὸ
my so-much — perhaps or also little more because-of indeed the
τοῦ γένους περιφανές· ἔμπλεως δὲ φιλοσοφίας φανεὶς
of-the family distinction full and of-philosophy having-appeared
μεγάλων ἀξιωθήσῃ τῶν τιμῶν τε καὶ τῶν γερῶν·
of-great you-will-be-deemed-worthy of-the honors both and of-the privileges
μόνοι γὰρ τῶν πάντων ἀνθρώπων ὀνομαστότατοι βασιλεὺς
alone for of-the all men most-renowned emperor
καὶ φιλόσοφος.' οὕτω μὲν τῶν ἀνακτόρων ὑποχωρήσας
and philosopher thus indeed from-the palaces having-withdrawn
εἰς διδασκάλου φέρων ἐνέβαλον ἐμαυτόν, ἑπτακαιδέκατον
to of-a-teacher carrying I-threw myself seventeenth
ἔτος ἄγων. ἦν δὲ οὗτος, ὡς ἔφην, ὁ Ἑξαπτέρυγος,
year leading was and this(-man) as I-said — Hexapterygos
ἀνὴρ οὐ πάνυ μὲν ἐπιστήμων ἐν τοῖς μαθήμασιν, ἀγαθὸς
man not very indeed learned in the studies good
δὲ φράζειν, οἷα ῥητορικοῖς λόγοις κατάκρως ἐνδιατρίψας
but to-express as in-rhetorical words utterly having-spent-time
καὶ τὸ ἐξαγγέλλειν εὐφυῶς μεμελετηκὼς καὶ πολλοῦ
and the to-declare aptly having-practiced and of-much
διὰ τοῦτο ἠξιωμένος ὀνόματος. ἐκείνου δὲ
because-of this having-been-deemed-worthy name of-that(-man) and
τελευτήσαντος μετὰ τὴν εἰς ἡμᾶς τῶν ποιημάτων σαφήνειαν
having-died after the to us of-the poems clarification
καὶ τὴν τῆς τῶν λόγων τέχνης διδασκαλίαν, παρὰ τὸν
and the of-the of-the letters art teaching to —
Βλεμμύδην Νικηφόρον, ὃν τότε πάντες οἴδαμεν τῶν
Blemmydes Nikephoros whom then all we-know of-the
ἄλλων τελεώτερον ἐν ταῖς κατὰ φιλοσοφίαν ἐπιστήμαις,
others more-perfect in the in philosophy sciences

ἐφοίτησά τε αὐτὸς καὶ ὅσοι σὺν ἐμοὶ ἐτελοῦντο τὰ
I-attended both myself and as-many-as with me were-completing the
λογικά. καὶ ὁ μὲν περὶ ἡμῶν λόγος μέχρι τοσούτου νυνί·
logical(-studies) and the indeed about us account up-to so-far now
ἐσαῦθις δὲ ὅπῃ παρείκοι τῇ ἱστορίᾳ παρεμβληθήσεται.
again but wherever it-may-allow to-the history will-be-inserted

33 Ἐπεὶ δέ, ὡς προειρήκειν, καὶ ἀμφοῖν τοῖν βασιλέοιν αἱ
when and as I-had-said-before also to-both to-the two-emperors the
σπονδαὶ τῆς συμβιβάσεως γένοιντο, τῷ τε βασιλεῖ φημι
treaties of-the agreement happened to-the both emperor I-mean
Ἰωάννῃ τῷ Δούκᾳ καὶ τῷ κρατοῦντι τῶν Βουλγάρων Ἀσὰν
John the Doukas and to-the ruling of-the Bulgarians Asan
Ἰωάννῃ, προκατέλαβε μὲν ὁ βασιλεὺς τὴν Λάμψακον καὶ
John anticipated indeed the emperor — Lampsakos and
διαπεραιοῦται μετὰ τῶν οἰκείων δυνάμεων εἰς Καλλιούπολιν,
crosses-over with the own forces to Kallipolis
καὶ πολεμεῖ τὸ ἄστυ ἐλεπόλεις στήσας, καὶ ἐν οὐ πολλῷ
and wars-on the town siege-engines having-set-up and in not much
τῷ χρόνῳ χειροῦται τοῦτο, τῆς τῶν Βενετικῶν ἀνασώσας
the time subdues it from-the of-the Venetians having-recovered
τοῦτο χειρός. μετὰ τοῦτο καταλαμβάνει τὴν Καλλιούπολιν
it hand after this reaches — Kallipolis
καὶ ὁ Ἀσὰν σὺν τῇ οἰκείᾳ γαμετῇ τῇ ἐξ Οὔγγρων Μαρίᾳ
also — Asan with the own wife the from Hungarians Maria
καὶ τῇ θυγατρὶ Ἑλένῃ, καὶ συνέρχεται εἰς Καλλιούπολιν τῷ
and the daughter Helen and comes-together at Kallipolis to-the
βασιλεῖ, καὶ τὰ εἰς φιλίαν ἀμφότεροι διαπράττονται.
emperor and the(-things) for friendship both accomplish
οὗτος μὲν οὖν οὐ διεπέρασε τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον, ἀλλ᾽
this(-man) indeed then not crossed — Hellespont but
ἔμεινεν ἐν τοῖς τῆς Καλλιουπόλεως μέρεσιν· ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς
remained in the — of-Kallipolis parts the but emperor

Ἰωάννης τὴν αὐτοῦ σύζυγον σὺν τῇ θυγατρὶ Ἑλένῃ λαβὼν
John the his consort with the daughter Helen having-taken
διαπεραιοῦται εἰς Λάμψακον, ἔνθα ἦν ἡ βασιλὶς Εἰρήνη,
crosses-over to Lampsakos where was the empress Irene
καὶ πληροῦσι τὴν τῶν παίδων συνάφειαν, τοῦ πατριάρχου
and they-fulfill the of-the children union of-the patriarch
Γερμανοῦ τὰ τῆς ἱερολογίας τελέσαντος. τότε καὶ
Germanos the(-rites) of-the sacred-office having-performed then also
ὁ Τρινόβου ἀρχιερεύς, ὑπὸ τὸν Κωνσταντινουπόλεως
the of-Trnovo high-priest under the(-one) of-Constantinople
τελῶν, αὐτονομίᾳ τετίμηται καὶ πατριάρχης ἀναγορεύεσθαι
being with-autonomy has-been-honored and patriarch to-be-proclaimed
κέκριται βασιλικῷ καὶ συνοδικῷ τῷ θεσπίσματι, χάριτας
has-been-decided by-imperial and synodal the decree favors
τῶν προυχόντων ἀποτιννύντων τῷ Βουλγάρων ἄρχοντι
of-the leading-men paying to-the of-Bulgarians ruler
Ἀσὰν τοῦ κήδους ἕνεκα καὶ τῆς φιλίας.
Asan of-the marriage-alliance for-the-sake and of-the friendship
Ἐπεὶ γοῦν ὅσα εἰς τὰ τοιαῦτα φέρει πεπλήρωται, ἡ
when then as-much-as to the such(-things) pertains had-been-fulfilled the
μὲν βασιλὶς Εἰρήνη τὸν υἱὸν μετὰ τῆς νύμφης λαβοῦσα
indeed empress Irene the son with the bride having-taken
τοῖς ἑῴοις συνδιητᾶτο χώροις, ὡσαύτως δὲ καὶ ἡ τοῦ
in-the eastern lived regions likewise and also the —
Ἀσὰν σύζυγος ἐν τοῖς οἰκείοις τόποις ὑπέστρεψεν, ὁ
of-Asan consort to the own places returned the
δὲ βασιλεὺς Ἰωάννης καὶ ὁ Ἀσὰν τὰς οἰκείας δυνάμεις
and emperor John and — Asan the own forces
προσειληφότες καὶ ἄμφω τὴν δυτικὴν κατέδραμον χώραν,
having-taken-in-addition and both the western overran land
ὁπόση ἦν τοῖς Λατίνοις δουλεύουσα. καὶ λείαν μὲν πολλὴν
as-much-as was to-the Latins subject and booty indeed much

ἐποιήσαντο καὶ Σκυθῶν ἐρημίαν — τὸ τῆς παροιμίας
made and Scythians' desolation the(-saying) of-the proverb
εἰπεῖν — τὴν ἅπασαν ἀπειργάσαντο, σφίσι δὲ αὐτοῖς
to-say the whole wrought for-themselves and themselves
κατὰ τοὺς ὅρκους τὰ ἄστη καὶ τὴν χώραν διεμερίσαντο.
according-to the oaths the towns and the land divided
καὶ Καλλιούπολις μέν, ἐπεὶ καὶ πρὸ τῆς συνελεύσεως τοῦ
and Kallipolis indeed since also before the meeting —
Ἀσὰν παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως ἑάλω, ὑπὸ τὸν βασιλέα ἐγένετο,
of-Asan by the emperor was-taken under the emperor came
ὁμοίως καὶ Μάδυτα καὶ πᾶσα ἡ ὀνομαζομένη Χερρόνησος.
likewise also Madyta and all the named Chersonese
εἶλε δὲ ὁ βασιλεὺς καὶ τὸ τοῦ Κισσοῦ φρούριον, καὶ
took and the emperor also the — of-Kissos fortress and
μέχρι ποταμοῦ, ὃν Μαρίτζαν ὁ πολὺς κατονομάζει
as-far-as river which Maritza the many names
λαός, τὰ σύνορα ἔθετο. ἐκράτησε δὲ καὶ τοῦ ὄρους τοῦ
people the boundaries he-set mastered and also the mountain —
Γάνου καὶ ἐν αὐτῷ ἐδείματο καὶ πολίχνιον, ἔνθα καὶ τὸν
of-Ganos and on it built also small-town where also —
Κοτέρτζην Νικόλαον φυλάττειν ἐξέπεμψε καὶ πράγματα
Kotertzes Nikolaos to-guard sent and troubles
παρέχειν Λατίνοις τοῖς ἐν τῇ Τζουρουλῷ, ἄνδρα πολλοῖς
to-cause to-Latins the(-ones) in — Tzouroulos man in-many
κατεξητασμένον πολέμοις καὶ ἐς τοσοῦτον εὐδοκιμήσαντα,
tested wars and to such-a-degree having-won-repute
ὡς πάντας τοιαύτην δόξαν περὶ τούτου σχεῖν, μήτε πρὸ
that all such opinion about him to-have neither before
αὐτοῦ μήτε μὴν μετ' αὐτὸν ἄλλον φανῆναι τοιούτοις
him nor indeed after him other to-have-appeared in-such
ἔργοις ἐγκεχειρηκότα ἢ τοσαῦτα κατωρθωκότα. ὁ δὲ
deeds having-undertaken or so-many having-achieved — and

Ἀσὰν τὰ ὑπεράνω τῶν εἰρημένων χώρων καὶ πρὸς
Asan the(-parts) above of-the said regions and toward
Βορρᾶν νεύοντα ὑφ' ἑαυτὸν ἔσχε. μέχρι μὲν οὖν καὶ
north inclining under himself had as-far-as indeed then also
αὐτῶν τῶν τειχῶν τῆς Κωνσταντίνου καὶ ἀμφότεροι
the-very the walls of-the of-Constantine also both
κατηντήκεσαν, τοῦ ῥηγὸς Ἰωάννου ἐπ' αὐτῶν καθεζομένου
had-arrived the king John on them sitting
καὶ καθορῶντος, καὶ πτοίαν πολλὴν τοῖς Λατίνοις ἐνέβαλον
and looking-down and terror much on-the Latins cast
καὶ ἐν στενῷ κομιδῇ τὰ κατ' αὐτοὺς ἔθεντο. ἐπεὶ
and in strait utterly the(-affairs) concerning them put when
δὲ ὁ τοῦ μετοπώρου παρερρύη καιρὸς καὶ ὁ χειμὼν
and the of-the autumn had-flowed-past season and the winter
ἤγγιζεν, ἀλλήλοις συνταξάμενοι ὅ τε βασιλεὺς Ἰωάννης
drew-near with-each-other having-taken-leave the both emperor John
καὶ ὁ Ἀσὰν ὁ μὲν εἰς τὴν οἰκείαν χώραν τῶν
and — Asan the(-one) indeed to the own land of-the
Βουλγάρων χωρεῖ, ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς εἰς τὴν ἕω διαπερᾷ.
Bulgarians goes the and emperor to the east crosses
Ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁ υἱὸς αὐτοῦ Θεόδωρος ἀφῆλιξ ἐτύγχανεν ὤν, 34
when and the son his Theodore under-age happened being
— ἑνδέκατον γὰρ διήνυεν ἔτος, ὥσπερ ἔφημεν, ἡνίκα
eleventh for was-completing year as we-said when
τῇ βασιλίδι Ἑλένῃ πρὸς γάμου κοινωνίαν ἐξεύγνυτο —
to-the empress Helen to of-marriage partnership he-was-yoked
τὰ μὲν ἐς συνουσίαν ἔμενον ἀτελῆ. ἀνήγοντο δὲ
the(-things) indeed toward intercourse remained unfulfilled were-brought-up and
παρὰ τῆς βασιλίδος Εἰρήνης καὶ ἐπαιδεύοντο, οἷα ἐκείνη
by the empress Irene and were-educated as that(-lady)
φύσεως ἀγαθῆς τυχοῦσα καὶ πρὸς ἅπαν καλὸν ἐπινεύουσα.
nature good having-had and to every good inclining

τὰ μὲν οὖν τῶν Λατίνων πράγματα συνεστάλη τε
the indeed then of-the Latins affairs were-contracted both
τότε πολύ, καὶ τῷ κήδει τῶν δύο αὐτοκρατόρων
then much and by-the marriage-alliance of-the two emperors
εἰς ταπεινὸν ἄγαν καταπεπτώκει τούτων τὸ φρόνημα.
to low very had-fallen their the spirit
ὁ δὲ ῥὴξ Ἰωάννης μικρὸν ἐπιβιώσας ἐξ ἀνθρώπων
the and king John a-little having-survived from men
ἐγένετο, τὴν τῆς Κωνσταντινουπόλεως ἐξουσίαν τῷ αὐτοῦ
became the — of-Constantinople authority to-the his
γαμβρῷ τῷ Βαλδουίνῳ ὡς κλῆρον καταλιπών. ὁ δέ γε
son-in-law — Baldwin as inheritance having-left — but at-least
Ἀσὰν μετάμελος ἐπὶ ταῖς μετὰ τοῦ βασιλέως Ἰωάννου
Asan repentant at the with the emperor John
συνθήκαις, ὡς ἐφάνη, γενόμενος τρόπον ἐζήτει, ὅπως ἂν
agreements as he-appeared having-become way sought how —
τὴν θυγατέρα ἀποσπάσῃ τοῦ συζύγου βασιλέως τοῦ
the daughter he-might-tear-away from-the husband emperor —
Θεοδώρου καὶ ἑτέρῳ ταύτην κηδεύσῃ· τῶν γὰρ Ῥωμαίων
Theodore and to-another her might-marry of-the for Romans
ἐδεδίει πάνυ τὴν εἰς τὰ βελτίω προκοπήν, ἔθνους ἄρχων
he-feared very the to the better progress of-a-nation ruler
ὑποτεταγμένου πάλαι Ῥωμαίοις. σκέπτεται γοῦν αἰτίαν ὡς
subjected long-ago to-Romans contrives then pretext as
ἐδόκει μὲν εὔλογον, κἂν οὐκ ἐλάνθανε τοὺς ἐπισταμένους
seemed indeed reasonable even-if not it-escaped the(-ones) understanding
τὰ πράγματα, καὶ ἀποστέλλει πρέσβεις πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα
the affairs and sends envoys to the emperor
καὶ τὴν βασιλίδα, ὡς ἐπεὶ πλησιάσειε τῇ Ἀδριανοῦ
and the empress that when he-came-near to-the of-Hadrian
βούλεται καὶ αὐτὸς καὶ ἡ σύζυγος αὐτοῦ τὸ θυγάτριον ἰδεῖν
wishes both himself and the wife his the little-daughter to-see

καὶ πατρικῶς περιπτύξασθαι καὶ τὰ εἰκότα πληρῶσαι
and fatherly to-embrace and the fitting(-things) to-fulfill
καὶ αὖθις ἀποπέμψαι πρὸς τὸν πενθερὸν καὶ τὸν σύζυγον.
and again to-send-back to the father-in-law and the husband
ὁ μὲν οὖν βασιλεὺς Ἰωάννης καὶ ἡ βασιλὶς Εἰρήνη, καίτοι
the indeed then emperor John and the empress Irene although
γε ἀκριβῶς εἰδότες τὸ δρᾶμα καὶ καθαρῶς ἐπιγνόντες
at-least exactly knowing the drama and clearly having-recognized
τὴν σκευωρίαν, ὅμως πέμπουσι πρὸς τὸν Ἀσὰν τὴν
the plot nevertheless send to — Asan the
θυγατέρα, τοῦτ᾽ εἰρηκότες ὡς, εἰ τὴν θυγατέρα κατάσχοι
daughter this having-said that if the daughter he-should-detain
καὶ τοῦ νομίμως συζευχθέντος ἀποστερήσειεν, ἔστι θεὸς
and of-the lawfully joined should-deprive there-is God
ὁ τὰ πάντα ἐφορῶν καὶ τιμωρίαν ἐπάγων τοῖς
the(-one) the all overseeing and punishment bringing on-the(-ones)
τοὺς ὅρκους παραβαίνουσι καὶ τὰς συνθήκας, ἃς ἐπὶ θεῷ
the oaths transgressing and the agreements which upon God
μάρτυρι συνεστήσαντο, διαλύουσιν. ὁ μὲν οὖν Βούλγαρος
as-witness they-made dissolving the indeed then Bulgarian
τὴν θυγατέρα λαβὼν ᾤχετο, τοὺς ἑπομένους αὐτῇ
the daughter having-taken went-off the(-ones) following her
πάντας ὀπισθορμήτους ποιήσας, καὶ τὸν Αἷμον διαβὰς
all backward-turned having-made and — Haimos having-crossed
ἐχώρει περὶ τὸν Τρίνοβον, κλαιούσης μὲν τῆς αὐτοῦ
went about — Trnovo weeping indeed the his
θυγατρὸς καὶ ὀλοφυρομένης καὶ τῆς πενθερᾶς καὶ βασιλίδος
daughter and lamenting both the mother-in-law and empress
Εἰρήνης καὶ τοῦ συζύγου λίαν ἐποδυρομένης τὸν χωρισμόν.
Irene and the husband greatly bewailing the separation
ὅτε φασὶ τὸν Ἀσὰν προσλαβόμενον αὐτὴν τῆς αὐτοῦ
when they-say — Asan having-taken her of-the his

ἐφεστρίδος ἔμπροσθεν ἐπικαθίσαι καὶ τύψαι κατὰ κόρρης
saddle-cloth in-front to-set and to-strike on cheek
τοῖς δακτύλοις καὶ ἐπαπειλῆσαι δεινῶς, εἰ μὴ σιγῇ φέροι,
with-the fingers and to-threaten terribly if not in-silence she-bore
ὅσα οἱ διὰ βουλῆς ἐστιν ἐπ' αὐτῇ διαπράξασθαι.
as-much-as to-him by plan is upon her to-accomplish
35 Κατ' ἐκεῖνο καιροῦ καὶ τὸ τῶν Σκυθῶν γένος, τῶν
at that(-point) of-time also the of-the Scythians race the
Τατάρων καταδραμόντων αὐτῶν, ὁπόσοι τὸ ξίφος ἐκείνων
Tatars having-overrun them as-many-as the sword of-those
ἐξέφυγον, ἀσκοῖς τὸν Ἴστρον διαπεράσαντες καὶ τὸν Αἷμον
escaped on-skins — Istros having-crossed and — Haimos
ὑπερπηδήσαντες τέκνοις ἅμα καὶ γυναιξί, καὶ ἀκόντων
having-leapt-over with-children together and wives and unwilling
Βουλγάρων — πολλαὶ γὰρ ὑπῆρχον χιλιοστύες — τοὺς τῆς
Bulgarians many for were thousands the —
Μακεδονίας χώρους κατέλαβον, οἱ μὲν περὶ τὸν Ἔβρον
of-Macedonia regions occupied the(-ones) indeed about — Hebros
καὶ τὰ ἐκεῖσε πεδία τὰς νομὰς ποιούμενοι, οἱ δὲ περὶ
and the there plains the pastures making the(-others) and about
τὰ κατωτέρω μέρη καὶ τὸν ποταμόν, ὃν ἡ χύδην ῥέουσα
the lower parts and the river which the diffusely flowing
γλῶττα καθώσπερ ἔφημεν Μαρίτζαν κατονομάζει. καὶ γὰρ
tongue as we-said Maritza names and for
ἔστιν ὡς ἀληθῶς Ἔβρος μέχρι καὶ τῆς Αἴνου τὰς ἐκδρομὰς
it-is as truly Hebros as-far-as also — Ainos the outlets
ποιούμενος κἀκεῖθεν περὶ τὸ Αἰγαῖον ἐκρέων πέλαγος·
making and-thence into the Aegean flowing-out sea
ὅτι δὲ συμβάλλουσι τούτῳ καὶ ἕτεροι ποταμοὶ καὶ μείζω
because and join with-this also other rivers and greater
ποιοῦσιν, ἐναλλάττει τοῖς παροικοῦσι καὶ τοὔνομα.
make it-changes for-the(-ones) dwelling-beside also the-name

ἐλήιζον γοῦν τὰ ἐν Μακεδονίᾳ πάντα καὶ ὡς ἐν ὀλίγῳ
plundered then the(-things) in Macedonia all and as in little
ἔρημα τὰ πάντα τῶν οἰκητόρων ἐποίησαν, καὶ Σκυθῶν
deserted the all of-the inhabitants they-made and Scythians'
ἐρημίαν — τὸ τῆς παροιμίας εἰπεῖν — ἀπειργάσαντο,
desolation the(-saying) of-the proverb to-say wrought
καὶ πολιχνίων δὲ ὁπόσα ὑπῆρχον εὐχείρωτα πολέμῳ
and of-small-towns too as-many-as were easily-taken in-war
περιεγένοντο. καὶ ἐφονεύοντο μὲν πολλοί, ἐσκυλεύοντο δὲ
they-mastered and were-murdered indeed many were-despoiled and
πάντες καὶ ᾐχμαλωτίζοντο καὶ ἀπεμπολοῦντο ἐν τοῖς μείζοσιν
all and were-taken-captive and were-sold in the greater
ἄστεσιν, οἷον τῇ Ἀδριανουπόλει, τῷ Διδυμοτείχῳ, τῇ Βιζύῃ,
towns such-as — Adrianople — Didymoteichon — Bizye
τῇ Καλλιουπόλει, καὶ εἴ τι ἄλλο ἦν τείχεσιν ἐρυμνοτέροις
— Kallipolis and if any other was with-walls stronger
ὠχυρωμένον καὶ τῷ πλήθει τῶν οἰκούντων ἠσφαλισμένον.
fortified and by-the multitude of-the inhabitants secured
Ἐπεὶ οὖν οὕτω ταῦτα συνέβη, καὶ τὸ τῶν Λατίνων 36
when then thus these-things happened also the of-the Latins
γένος, καθ' ἡμῶν ἀεὶ μανίαν τρέφοντες, καὶ χεῖρον δὲ
race against us always madness nourishing and worse too
διατεθέντες διὰ τὴν πρὸ μικροῦ γενομένην σφίσι παρά
disposed because-of the before little having-happened to-them from
τε τοῦ βασιλέως Ἰωάννου καὶ τοῦ Ἀσὰν ἔφοδον καὶ
both the emperor John and — Asan attack and
τῶν χωρῶν καὶ τῶν πολιχνίων αὐτῶν στέρησιν, καιρὸν
of-the lands and of-the small-towns their deprivation occasion
ἐζήτουν ἐπιχειρήσασθαι καθ' ἡμῶν, εὑρόντες τῷ τότε
sought to-make-attempt against us having-found at-the then(-time)
δυνάμενον, ὡς ᾤοντο, τὴν ἧτταν τούτοις ἀνακαλέσασθαι.
able as they-thought the defeat for-them to-recall

καὶ πρῶτα μὲν τὸν Ἀσὰν ὑποποιοῦνται καὶ τούτῳ τὰ
and first indeed — Asan win-over and with-him the(-terms)
πρὸς εἰρήνην σπένδονται, ἔπειτα δὲ σὺν αὐτῷ καὶ τοὺς
for peace make-treaty then and with him also the
Σκύθας, βαρβάρους ἄνδρας, ἀλήτας τε καὶ ἐπήλυδας,
Scythians barbarian men wanderers both and newcomers
μικροῖς τισι τοῖς χαρίσμασι, μακροτέραις δέ γε ταῖς
with-small some the gifts with-larger and at-least the
ὑποσχέσεσιν εἰς ἑαυτοὺς ἕλκουσι καὶ συμπράκτορας τῶν
promises to themselves draw and fellow-agents of-the
ἔργων ποιοῦσι. καὶ δὴ συμμαχίαν τοσαύτην ἔκ τε
deeds make and indeed alliance so-great from both
Σκυθῶν καὶ Βουλγάρων συνηθροικότες οἱ Ἰταλοὶ ὁμόσε
Scythians and Bulgarians having-gathered the Italians together
κατὰ τοῦ βασιλέως Ἰωάννου χωροῦσιν. ἐπεὶ δὲ σφίσιν
against the emperor John go when and for-them
ἐκ τοῦ σχεδὸν τὸ τῆς Τζουρουλοῦ ἄστυ ἐτύγχανε, κατ᾽
from the near the — of-Tzouroulos town happened against
ἐκείνου τὴν μάχην ἱστῶσι, παρόντος αὐτοπροσώπως καὶ
that(-town) the battle they-set present in-person also
τοῦ Ἀσὰν μετὰ τοσούτων χιλιοστύων τῶν Σκυθικῶν
— Asan with so-many thousands of-the Scythian
καὶ τῶν Βουλγαρικῶν στρατευμάτων καὶ τῶν Ἰταλικῶν
and of-the Bulgarian armies and of-the Italian
μηχανημάτων. ἦν δὲ τῆς Τζουρουλοῦ τὴν φρουρὰν παρὰ
engines was and — of-Tzouroulos the garrison from
τοῦ βασιλέως Ἰωάννου προσδεδεγμένος ὁ Ταρχανειώτης
the emperor John having-received — Tarchaneiotes
Νικηφόρος, ὃς ἐπὶ τῆς τραπέζης τοῦ βασιλέως ὑπῆρχε
Nikephoros who over the table of-the emperor was
τότε, μέγας δὲ δομέστικος τετίμηται ὕστερον· γαμβρὸς
then great and domestic was-honored later son-in-law

δὲ ἦν τοῦ μεγάλου δομεστίκου τοῦ Παλαιολόγου ἐπὶ
and he-was of-the great domestic — of-Palaiologos by
τῇ πρώτῃ αὐτοῦ θυγατρὶ Μαρίᾳ. ἦν δὲ ὁ Ταρχανειώτης
the first his daughter Maria was and — Tarchaneiotes
καὶ στρατιώτης καλὸς καὶ ἀγαθὸς στρατηγὸς καὶ πολλῆς
both soldier fine and good general and much
ἐπαπολαύων τῆς παρὰ θεοῦ ἀντιλήψεως, καθὼς καὶ
enjoying of-the from God help as also
μέχρι τέλους ἐπέγνωσται· μάλιστα καὶ γὰρ ἐδόκει τοῖς
up-to end has-been-recognized especially also for he-seemed to-the
πολλοῖς εὐτυχίᾳ κατορθούμενος τὰ πολλὰ ἢ εὐανδρίᾳ
many by-good-fortune succeeding the most than by-manliness
καὶ στρατηγίᾳ τῶν ἐναντίων περιγενόμενος. ἐπεὶ δὲ τῷ
and generalship the opponents overcoming when and by-the
ἄστει παρεκαθίσαντο, — μηχανήματα μὲν καὶ ἑλεπόλεις
town they-sat-down engines indeed and siege-engines
τοῖς Ἰταλοῖς ἐγεγόνεισαν πολλαί τε καὶ ἰσχυραί, ὡς
to-the Italians had-been-made many both and strong so-as
μὴ μόνον τηλικοῦδε ἄστεος περιγενέσθαι ἰσχύουσαι ἀλλὰ
not only so-great town to-overcome being-strong but
καὶ ὑψηλοτέρων τειχῶν καὶ εὐμεγεθεστέρων πόλεων,
also of-higher walls and of-larger cities
— τότε τὸ γενναῖον φρόνημα καὶ τὴν στρατηγικὴν
then the noble spirit and the strategic
μεθοδείαν μετὰ τῶν σὺν αὐτῷ ὁ ἐπὶ τῆς τραπέζης
method with the(-ones) with him the(-one) over the table
λαμπρῶς ἐνεδείξατο· ἦν δὲ τὸ ὅλον τῆς τοῦ θεοῦ
brilliantly displayed was and the whole of-the — of-God
ἀντιλήψεως. ἀντεμηχανᾶτο γὰρ ἔνδον ὁ Ταρχανειώτης
help counter-contrived for within — Tarchaneiotes
τοῖς ἔξωθεν μηχανήμασι, καὶ τῇ τοσαύτῃ πληθύϊ τῆς
to-the outside engines and to-the so-great multitude of-the

στρατιᾶς ἀντεπεξῆγε τὸ ἀνδρικὸν ἐν πολλοστοῖς ἄγαν τοῖς
army led-out-against the manliness in very-few very the
στρατιώταις. ἐν ἀμηχανίᾳ δὲ ἦν ὁ βασιλεὺς Ἰωάννης, οὐ
soldiers in helplessness and was the emperor John not
τοσοῦτον τῶν ἐν τῷ ἄστει ὑπεραγωνιῶν, ἀλλ᾽ εἰδώς,
so-much for-the(-ones) in the town agonizing but knowing
οἷα ἐχέφρων καὶ συνετὸς τὰ πολέμια, ὡς εἰ τὸ ἄστυ
as sensible and intelligent the(-things) of-war that if the town
παρὰ τῶν ἐναντίων ἁλῴη, φροῦδα πάντα τὰ ἐν
by the opponents should-be-taken gone all the(-things) in
τῇ δύσει τούτῳ τυγχάνοντα γένοιντο. τέως οὖν ἠγάπα
the west to-him being would-become meanwhile then he-was-content
μᾶλλον ἐν τούτῳ ἐπτοῆσθαι τοὺς πολεμίους καὶ τὸ πολὺ
rather in this to-be-frightened the enemies and the much
τῆς ῥύμης σφίσιν ἐναποκόπτεσθαι· ἔμελε γὰρ αὐτῷ
of-the onrush for-them to-be-cut-off was-a-care for to-him
μᾶλλον τὰ ἐν τῇ ἕῳ, ὧν ἐλευθέρων ὑπαρχόντων
rather the(-things) in the east which free being
τῆς μάχης πλεῖον αὐτῷ τὸ τῆς εὐφροσύνης ὑπῆν.
from-the battle more to-him the of-the gladness was-beneath
Πολιορκουμένου γοῦν τοῦ ἄστεος Τζουρουλοῦ αἴφνης ἐπῄει
being-besieged then the town Tzouroulos suddenly came
μήνυμα τῷ Ἀσάν, ὡς ἡ σύζυγος αὐτοῦ ἡ ἐξ Οὔγγρων
message — to-Asan that the wife his the from Hungarians
ἐξ ἀνθρώπων ἐγένετο· τετελεύτηκε δὲ κατὰ ταὐτὸ
from men became had-died and at the-same(-time)
καὶ παιδίον αὐτοῦ καὶ ὁ Τρινόβου ἐπίσκοπος. θεομηνίαν
also child his and the of-Trnovo bishop God's-wrath
γοῦν ἡγησάμενος ταῦτα πυρὶ ἀφανίζει τὰς ἑλεπόλεις,
then having-considered these-things with-fire destroys the siege-engines
καὶ ὡς εἶχε δρόμου περὶ τὸν Τρίνοβον ἵκετο. μόνοι
and as he-had of-running to — Trnovo came alone

γοῦν ἀπολελειμμένοι οἱ Ἰταλοί, ἐπεὶ μὴ ἀποχρώντως
then left-behind the Italians since not sufficiently
εἶχον εἰς τὴν τοῦ ἄστεος πολιόρκησιν, κἀκεῖνοι τὴν
they-were for the of-the town siege they-too the
κατ᾽ αὐτῶν μάχην καταλελοιπότες ἐς τὴν Κωνσταντίνου
against them battle having-abandoned to the of-Constantine
ᾤχοντο. ἠλευθέρωτο γοῦν τὸ ἄστυ τῆς τῶν ἐναντίων
went had-been-freed then the town from-the of-the opponents
πολιορκίας, καὶ συνηλευθέρωτο καὶ ὁ ἐπὶ τῆς τραπέζης
siege and had-been-freed-with also the(-one) over the table
Ταρχανειώτης, νικηφόρος, ἐν τούτοις κατὰ τὴν κλῆσιν
Tarchaneiotes victory-bearer in these according-to the name
ἀναφανείς. ὁ μὲν οὖν Ἀσάν, ἐπειδὴ τούτῳ τὰ προρρηθέντα
having-appeared — indeed then Asan since to-him the aforesaid
ξυμβέβηκε λυπηρά, εὐσεβῶς καὶ μάλα οἰηθείς, ὡς
had-happened grievous(-things) piously and very having-thought that
διὰ τὰς παραβασίας τῶν ὅρκων, ὧν μετὰ τοῦ βασιλέως
through the transgressions of-the oaths which with the emperor
Ἰωάννου ξυνέθετο, καὶ τὸ ἀποσπάσαι τὴν θυγατέρα τοῦ
John he-had-made and the to-tear-away the daughter from-the
συζύγου Θεοδώρου ταυτὶ γένοιτο, μετάμελος ἐπὶ τούτοις
husband Theodore these-things should-have-come repentant upon these
γενόμενος πρέσβεις ἐξαπεστάλκει πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα, ἑαυτόν
having-become envoys had-sent-out to the emperor himself
τε ἐξουθενῶν τῆς κακίστης πράξεως καὶ τὰς συνθήκας
both despising for-the most-wicked deed and the agreements
ἀνακαλούμενος καὶ συγγνώμην τῶν πεπραγμένων
recalling and pardon for-the(-things) done
αἰτούμενος. ὁ μὲν οὖν βασιλεὺς Ἰωάννης καὶ ἡ βασιλὶς
asking the indeed then emperor John and the empress
Εἰρήνη, οἷα ἐκεῖνοι πρὸς τὰ εὐσεβέστερα καὶ θειότερα
Irene as those(-two) to the more-pious(-things) and more-divine

ἀπονεύοντες, δέχονταί τε τὴν πρεσβείαν, καὶ οὐδ' εἰς
inclining receive both the embassy and not-even into
μακροὺς ἐλθόντες λόγους τούς τε ὅρκους καὶ αὖθις πεδοῦσι
long having-come words the both oaths and again fasten
καὶ τὴν νύμφην Ἑλένην ἀνακαλοῦνται. ἀποστέλλεται γοῦν
and the bride Helen recall is-sent then
αὕτη πρός τε τὸν πενθερὸν καὶ τὸν σύζυγον, καὶ εἰρήνη
she to both the father-in-law and the husband and peace
πάλιν μέσον Ῥωμαίων τε καὶ Βουλγάρων.
again between Romans both and Bulgarians

VII · LOSSES AND GAINS

Baldwin II brings a Frankish army through Bulgaria and takes Tzouroulos. John's fleet is beaten under Jofré. Asan marries Theodore Angelos' daughter Irene, and the blinded Theodore recovers Thessalonica for his son John. The empress Irene and Asan die. John wins Theodore over, besieges Thessalonica, and makes its John renounce the imperial title; Germanos the patriarch dies.

37 Ὁ μὲν οὖν τῆς ἱστορίας δρόμος ἐφ' ἑτέραν τρέπεται
the indeed then of-the history course to another turns
τὴν ὁδὸν καὶ τὰ περὶ τῶν ἐν τῇ Κωνσταντίνου
the road and the(-things) about the(-ones) in the of-Constantine
διασαφήσει· πολυσχιδῶς γὰρ τότε τῶν πραγμάτων
will-make-clear in-many-ways for then the affairs
κεκινημένων διὰ τὸ πολυαρχίαν ἐν πᾶσι γενέσθαι,
having-been-moved because-of the many-rule in all to-have-arisen
ποικίλως δεῖ καὶ τὰ τοῦ λόγου συστρέφεσθαι.
variously it-is-necessary also the(-things) of-the account to-be-twisted-together
ὁ μὲν οὖν Βαλδουῖνος, ὃν ὁ λόγος βασιλεῦσαι τῆς
— indeed then Baldwin whom the account to-have-reigned of-the

Κωνσταντίνου προείρηκεν, ἀπειρηκὼς ἐν ταῖς πρὸς
of-Constantine has-said-before having-given-up in the against
Ῥωμαίους μάχαις, μᾶλλον δὲ τῇ πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα
Romans battles rather and in-the against the emperor
Ἰωάννην ἐναντιότητι — ἐς μικρὸν γὰρ τὰ ἐκείνου
John opposition to little for the(-affairs) of-that(-man)
παρὰ τούτου συνέσταλται — πρὸς τὸν τῶν Φράγγων
by this(-man) has-been-contracted to the of-the Franks
ἀποδεδημήκει ῥῆγα, προσῳκειωμένον τούτῳ καθ᾽ αἷμα,
had-traveled king related to-this(-man) by blood
οὐ μὴν ἀλλὰ καὶ ὡς ξυμφυλέτην ἄγαν τε Ῥωμαίοις
not however but also as fellow-tribesman very both to-Romans
ἐχθρὸν καὶ βοηθεῖν διὰ ταῦτα ἕτοιμον. καὶ συμμαχίαν
hostile and to-help because-of these-things ready and alliance
ζητεῖ ἀξιόλογον, καὶ ἐπιτυγχάνει τοῦ σκοποῦ. καὶ ἐν οὐ
seeks considerable and attains the aim and in not
πολλῷ χρόνῳ ἑξήκοντα χιλιάδες συνηθροίσθησαν Φράγγων,
much time sixty thousands were-gathered of-Franks
ἵν᾽ ὅπως κατὰ Ῥωμαίων χωρήσωσιν. ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐκ
in-order that against Romans they-might-go since and not
ἦν αὐτοῖς εὔδρομος διὰ νηῶν ἡ ὁδός, τῆς ἀναγωγῆς
was for-them easy through ships the road the putting-to-sea
προσαπαιτούσης πλείω ἢ κατὰ δύναμιν τὸν μισθόν,
demanding more than according-to power the pay
διὰ τῆς χέρσου τὴν πορείαν ποιοῦνται. καὶ δὴ τὰς ἄνω
through the dry-land the march they-make and indeed the upper
παραμείψαντες Γαλλίας καὶ διελθόντες τὴν Ἰταλίαν διὰ
having-passed Gauls and having-gone-through — Italy through
τῶν ὑπωρειῶν τῶν Ἄλπεων εἰς τὸ Ὀστρίκιον ἀφίκοντο,
the foothills — of-Alps to — Austria arrived
καὶ τὴν Οὐγγρίαν παραγγείλαντες διαπερῶσι τὸν Ἴστρον
and — Hungary having-passed cross — Istros

καὶ τῇ Βουλγάρων προσέσχον, πᾶσι μὲν ὡς φίλοις
and to-the of-Bulgarians put-in to-all indeed as friends
καὶ συγγενέσι καθ' ὁδὸν χρώμενοι· καὶ διὰ σφᾶς μὲν
and kinsmen on way treating and because-of them indeed
αὐτούς, οὐχ ἧττον δὲ καὶ διὰ τὴν πρὸς ἡμᾶς ἔχθραν
themselves not less and also because-of the toward us enmity
ἐφιλοφρονοῦντο παρὰ τῶν κατὰ τόπους κρατούντων τὰ
were-welcomed by the(-ones) in places ruling the
μάλιστα. οἱ μὲν οὖν Βούλγαροι τὰς μετὰ Ῥωμαίων σπονδὰς
most the indeed then Bulgarians the with Romans treaties
παρεωρακότες ἄδειαν τοῖς Φράγγοις δεδώκασι διὰ τῶν
having-disregarded leave to-the Franks have-given through the
ὀρῶν αὐτῶν διελθεῖν, τῷ δοκεῖν ὑπ' αὐτῶν βιασθέντες
mountains their to-go-through in-the seeming by them having-been-forced
τὴν ἐκβολήν. τὸ μὲν οὖν ἄστυ τῆς Τζουρουλοῦ καὶ αὖθις
the passage the indeed then town — of-Tzouroulos also again
ἑάλω, ἐκστρατευσάντων κατ' αὐτῶν τῶν Λατίνων καὶ
was-taken having-marched-out against them the Latins and
συμμαχούντων τούτοις καὶ τῶν Σκυθῶν. εἰς φυλακὴν δὲ
allying with-them also the Scythians for guarding and
ἦν τούτου ὁ Πετραλίφας Ἰωάννης, ὃς μέγας χαρτουλάριος
was of-it — Petraliphas John who great chartoularios
πρὸς τοῦ βασιλέως Ἰωάννου τετίμητο, ἀνὴρ γενναῖος
by the emperor John had-been-honored man noble
τὴν χεῖρα καὶ πολεμικοῖς πράγμασι κατεξητασμένος
the hand and in-warlike affairs tested
παιδόθεν. τὸ δὲ τῆς Λατινικῆς δυνάμεως περιὸν καὶ τὸ
from-childhood the but of-the Latin power superiority and the
ἀπειροπληθὲς τῶν Σκυθῶν καὶ τὸ τῶν ἑλεπόλεων συχνόν
boundless-multitude of-the Scythians and the of-the siege-engines numerous
τε καὶ καρτερὸν παραδοῦναι τοῦτον τὸ ἄστυ τοῖς Ἰταλοῖς
both and strong to-hand-over this(-man) the town to-the Italians

πεποιήκεσαν. φασὶ δέ τινες καὶ προδοσίαν μελετῆσαί
had-made say and some also treason to-have-plotted
τινας κρύφα, κἀντεῦθεν πτοηθῆναι τὸ ἀπρόοπτον
some secretly and-thence to-have-been-terrified-at the unforeseen
τῆς ἁλώσεως. οἱ μὲν οὖν Λατῖνοι τὴν Τζουρουλὸν
of-the capture the indeed then Latins — Tzouroulos
ἐχειρώσαντο, καὶ τοὺς ἐν ταύτῃ Ῥωμαίους συνάμα τῷ
subdued and the in it Romans together-with —
Πετραλίφᾳ δεσμώτας ἤγαγον εἰς τὴν Κωνσταντίνου, καὶ
Petraliphas as-prisoners led to the of-Constantine and
πρὸς τοὺς οἰκείους αὐτοὺς ἀπημπόλησαν.
to the own(-people) them sold
Τοῦ δὲ ἄστεος τῆς Τζουρουλοῦ πολιορκουμένου παρὰ
the and town — of-Tzouroulos being-besieged by
τῶν Ἰταλῶν, ὁ βασιλεὺς Ἰωάννης τριήρεις ἱκανὰς
the Italians the emperor John triremes sufficient
συσκευασάμενος καὶ στράτευμα οὐκ ὀλίγον μεθ' ἑαυτοῦ
having-equipped and army not small with himself
προσλαβὼν κατὰ τῶν Ἰταλῶν ἐπεχείρει. ἀπὸ μὲν οὖν
having-taken against the Italians attempted from indeed then
τῆς Νικομηδείας ἀπάρας καὶ παραμείψας τὸν Χάρακα
— Nicomedia having-set-out and having-passed — Charax
ἐπόρθησε τὴν Δακίβυζαν πρὸ καιροῦ καὶ κατέσχε ταύτην,
sacked — Dakibyza before time and held it
προσέτι δὲ καὶ τὸ τοῦ Νικητιάτου φρούριον, καὶ ὑφ'
besides and also the — of-Niketiates fortress and under
ἑαυτὸν καὶ τοῦτο πεποίηκεν. ἐδυστύχησε δὲ τῷ τότε
himself also this made was-unfortunate and at-the then(-time)
ἐν ταῖς τριήρεσιν, ἀπειροπολέμων ὄντων τῶν ἐν
in the triremes inexperienced-in-war being of-the(-ones) in
αὐταῖς μαχομένων καὶ τοῦ Ἰοφρὲ τοῦ Ἀρμενίου, εἰς τάξιν
them fighting and — of-Jofré the Armenian in rank

ἡγεμόνος ἐν τούτοις τυγχάνοντος καὶ ὀκνηρότερον τελοῦντος
of-commander in these happening and more-sluggishly performing
περὶ τὰ μάχιμα. προϋπῆρχε δὲ τὴν τῶν τριήρεων
about the(-things) of-fighting previously-held and the of-the triremes
στρατηγίαν ὁ Κοντοφρὲ Μανουὴλ περιεζωσμένος, ἀνὴρ
command — Kontophre Manuel having-been-girded man
γενναῖος τὴν χεῖρα καὶ Ἄρην πνέων κατά τε θάλατταν
noble the hand and Ares breathing by both sea
καὶ ξηράν. ἀλλὰ πρό τινων ἡμερῶν θρασυτέρας τὰς
and land but before some days bolder the
διαλέξεις περὶ τοῦ ναυτικοῦ πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα ποιησάμενος
conversations about the navy to the emperor having-made
— εἰρήκει καὶ γὰρ ὡς οὐκ ἂν ἀντωπήσαιεν ταῖς Ἰταλικαῖς
had-said also for that not — would-face the Italian
τριήρεσιν αἱ ἡμέτεραι, κἂν πολλαπλασιάζοιντο πρὸς αὐτάς,
triremes the ours even-if they-should-be-multiplied against them
ἀκριβῶς τὰ περὶ ἀμφοῖν ἐπιστάμενος — παρεστάλη
exactly the(-things) about both understanding was-removed
τῆς ἡγεμονίας, καὶ ὁ Ἰοφρὲ αὐτὴν διεδέξατο, καὶ ἡττήθη
from-the command and — Jofré it succeeded-to and was-defeated
ἧττταν σφόδρα δεινήν. τριάκοντα γὰρ ἐξάρχων τριήρεων ὑπὸ
defeat very terrible thirty for leading triremes by
τρισκαίδεκα ἐκνενίκηται, καὶ τοσαύτας ἀπώλεσεν ὁπόσαι
thirteen has-been-conquered and so-many lost as-many-as
ἦσαν τῶν ἐναντίων· ἑκάστη γὰρ τούτων μίαν ἐκέρδησε
were of-the opponents each for of-these one gained
λάφυρον αὐτοῖς ἀνδράσι καὶ ὅπλοις. καὶ ταῦτα μὲν
spoil themselves with-men and with-arms and these-things indeed
ἔσχεν οὕτως. ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς Ἰωάννης καὶ αὖθις μετὰ τοῦ
had so the and emperor John also again with the
βασιλέως Ἀσὰν εἰρήνην εἶχε, καὶ τῇ συγγενείᾳ καὶ ἄμφω
king Asan peace had and by-the kinship also both

συνεδέδεντο, οὐκ ἀκριβῶς μὲν τοῦ Ἀσὰν τὰς ἐνόρκους
had-been-bound not exactly indeed — of-Asan the sworn
συμφωνίας φυλάττοντος· ἔστι γὰρ ὅτε διὰ κέρδος μικρὸν
agreements keeping there-is for when for gain small
παρεσπόνδει. τέως οὖν ἐν τῷ φανερῷ καὶ πλατυκῶς
he-broke-treaty meanwhile then in the open and broadly
ἔστεργε τὴν ἀγάπην καὶ τὰ τῶν φίλων ἐποίει.
he-cherished the love and the(-things) of-the friends did
Ὁ μὲν οὖν Ἀσὰν Ἰωάννης τῆς συζύγου στερηθείς, 38
— indeed then Asan John of-the wife having-been-deprived
ἣν ἐξ Οὐγγρίας εἶναι ὁ λόγος φθάσας ἱστόρησεν,
whom from Hungary to-be the account anticipating narrated
ἠγάγετο εἰς γυναῖκα τὴν θυγατέρα τοῦ Ἀγγέλου Θεοδώρου
took as wife the daughter — of-Angelos Theodore
τὴν Εἰρήνην, καλὴν τὸ εἶδος καὶ εὐμεγέθη, μηδὲ τὸ
— Irene fair the form and well-grown not-even the
τοῦ αὐταδέλφου τοῦ πατρὸς αὐτῆς κῆδος ὑπιδών,
of-the own-brother of-the father her marriage-alliance having-regarded
ὅτιπερ τῇ ἐκ παλλακίδος αὐτοῦ θυγατρὶ συνηυνάζετο.
that-indeed with-the from concubine his daughter slept
ἦσαν δὲ τῷ Ἀγγέλῳ Θεοδώρῳ παῖδες ἄρρενες δύο,
were and — to-Angelos Theodore children male two
Ἰωάννης καὶ Δημήτριος, καὶ θήλειαι δύο, ἡ Ἄννα καὶ ἡ
John and Demetrios and female two — Anna and the
ῥηθεῖσα Εἰρήνη, μεθ' ἧς ὁ Ἀσὰν παῖδας γεγέννηκε τρεῖς,
said Irene with whom — Asan children begot three
τὸν Μιχαήλ, τὴν Θεοδώραν καὶ τὴν Μαρίαν. ἀπελύθη γοῦν
— Michael — Theodora and — Maria was-released then
τῶν δεσμῶν διά τοι τοῦτο καὶ ὁ Ἄγγελος Θεόδωρος,
from-the bonds because-of indeed this also — Angelos Theodore
καὶ συναινέσει τοῦ γαμβροῦ αὐτοῦ τοῦ Ἀσὰν ἐγκρατὴς
and with-consent of-the son-in-law his — of-Asan master

γενέσθαι τῆς Θεσσαλονίκης καὶ πάσης ἧς πρότερον ἦρχε
to-become — of-Thessalonica and of-all which before he-ruled
χώρας ἠθέλησε. καὶ δή τινας ὀλίγους παρὰ τοῦ Ἀσὰν
land wished and indeed some few from — Asan
προσλαβόμενος, ἐπεὶ φανερῶς κινῆσαι κατὰ τοῦ Μανουὴλ
having-taken-in-addition since openly to-move against — Manuel
τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ αὐτοῦ οὐκ ἠδύνατο, κρύφα μηχανᾶται τὴν εἰς
the brother his not he-could secretly contrives the into
Θεσσαλονίκην εἴσοδον, εὐτελῆ τινα ἀμφιασάμενος ῥάκια καὶ
Thessalonica entry cheap some having-put-on rags and
τὴν εἴσοδον ὑποκλέψας τῆς πόλεως. ἐπεὶ δὲ εἰσήει καί
the entry having-stolen of-the city when and he-was-entering also
τισιν ἐπεγνώσθη τοῖς οἷς ἐβούλετο, οὓς ὅτε εὐτύχει
by-some was-recognized by-the(-ones) whom he-wished whom when he-prospered
ἐφίλει τε καὶ εὐηργέτει, μεθ' ὧν καὶ τεθάρρηκε τὴν κατὰ
he-loved both and benefited with whom also he-dared the against
τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ σκῆψιν, οὐ πολλοῦ δεηθεὶς τοῦ χρόνου
the brother onset not much having-needed the time
ἐγκρατής τε αὖθις τῆς Θεσσαλονίκης ἐγένετο καὶ τῶν πέριξ
master both again — of-Thessalonica became and of-the around
πόλεων καὶ χωρῶν. βασιλεὺς δὲ ὀνομάζεσθαι οὐκ ἠθέλησε
cities and lands emperor but to-be-named not he-wished
διὰ τὸ τῶν ὀφθαλμῶν πάθος, τὸν δὲ υἱὸν αὐτοῦ Ἰωάννην
because-of the of-the eyes affliction the but son his John
βασιλέα ὠνόμασε καὶ ἐρυθροῖς πεδίλοις τοὺς πόδας ἐκείνου
emperor named and with-red sandals the feet of-that(-man)
ὑπέδησε καὶ τοιούτοις γράμμασιν ὑπογράφειν διώρισεν,
shod and with-such letters to-sign appointed
αὐτόν τε διέπειν τὰ κοινὰ καὶ διεξάγειν τὰ τοῦ
himself both to-manage the common(-affairs) and to-conduct the(-affairs) of-the
υἱοῦ. τὸν δ' ἀδελφὸν Μανουὴλ τῆς ἀρχῆς ἐκβαλὼν
son the and brother Manuel from-the rule having-cast-out

καὶ ἐμβαλὼν ἔν τινι τριήρει περὶ τὴν Ἀττάλου ἐξώρισε,
and having-put in a trireme to the of-Attalos exiled
τὴν δὲ σύζυγον αὐτοῦ πρὸς τὸν πατέρα Ἀσὰν ἐξέπεμψεν.
the and wife his to the father Asan sent-away
ὁ δ' Ἀσὰν τὸν πενθερὸν μᾶλλον ἐφίλει Θεόδωρον ἢ τὸν
— and Asan the father-in-law rather loved Theodore than the
γαμβρὸν αὐτοῦ Μανουήλ· ὑπερηγάπα γὰρ τὴν σύζυγον
son-in-law his Manuel he-loved-exceedingly for the wife
Εἰρήνην οὐχ ἧττον ἢ Ἀντώνιος τὴν Κλεοπάτραν.
Irene not less than Antony — Cleopatra
Ὁ μὲν οὖν Μανουὴλ τῇ Ἀττάλου προσοκείλας
— indeed then Manuel at-the of-Attalos having-put-in
παρὰ προσδοκίαν τοὺς ἐξ Ἄγαρ εὗρε φιλανθρωπίᾳ
beyond expectation the(-ones) from Hagar found with-humanity
μᾶλλον πρὸς αὐτὸν χρησαμένους· ἐπεὶ γὰρ εἰρήκει
rather toward him having-dealt when for he-had-said
πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα Ἰωάννην τυγχάνειν αὐτοῦ τὴν ὁρμήν,
to the emperor John to-be-aiming his the impulse
παρεχώρησάν τε τούτῳ τὴν δίοδον καὶ ∗∗∗ ἐφοδιασάμενοι
they-granted both to-him the passage and (lacuna) having-provisioned
προσηκόντως. ἐκεῖθεν οὖν πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα ἀφίκετο
fittingly thence then to the emperor arrived
οὗτος, καὶ ὁ βασιλεὺς ἀσμένως τε τοῦτον ἐδέξατο καὶ
this(-man) and the emperor gladly both him received and
ὡς προσῳκειωμένον τῷ γένει καὶ ὡς πάλαι δεσπότην
as related to-the family and as long-ago despot
ὠνομασμένον· δοὺς δὲ αὐτῷ χρῆμα καὶ τριήρεις
named having-given and to-him money and triremes
ἓξ περὶ Μεγάλην Βλαχίαν ἀφῆκεν, ὅρκους παρ' αὐτοῦ
six to Great Vlachia he-let-go oaths from him
λαβὼν φρικώδεις, οἷος ἐκεῖνος συνέσεως καὶ ἀγχινοίας
having-taken awful as that(-man) of-understanding and of-shrewdness

πλήρης ὤν. καταλαβὼν οὖν τὸν τῆς Δημητριάδος χῶρον
full being having-reached then the — of-Demetrias region
ὁ Μανουὴλ κἀκεῖθεν τοῖς μὲν τῶν οἰκείων γραφαῖς
— Manuel and-thence to-the(-ones) indeed of-the own(-people) by-letters
παρασημήνας τὴν αὐτοῦ ἔφοδον, τοὺς δὲ ὑποθέλξας ταῖς
having-signified the his approach the(-others) and having-charmed with-the
ὑποσχέσεσιν, οὐ διὰ πολλῶν συνηθροίκει τῶν ἡμερῶν περὶ
promises not in many had-gathered the days about
αὐτὸν στράτευμα, ἦρξέ τε Φαρσάλων καὶ Λαρίσσης καὶ
him army ruled both Pharsala and Larissa and
Πλαταμῶνος καὶ τῶν περὶ αὐτά. εἶτα δὴ σπονδὰς
Platamon and of-the(-places) about them then indeed treaty
ποιησάμενος συνῆλθε τούτου τοῖν ἀδελφοῖν τῷ τε
having-made came-together of-this(-man) with-the-two brothers — both
Κωνσταντίνῳ καὶ τῷ Θεοδώρῳ· ὁ μὲν γὰρ Κωνσταντῖνος
Constantine and — Theodore — indeed for Constantine
δεσπότης, ὡς ἔφημεν, ὧν ἦρχεν ὧν εἰρήκειμεν ἄρχειν, ὁ δὲ
despot as we-said being ruled what we-had-said to-rule — and
Θεόδωρος ἦν ὁ τοῦ φημιζομένου ἐν Θεσσαλονίκῃ Ἰωάννου
Theodore was the of-the acclaimed in Thessalonica John
πατήρ. ἐπεὶ δὲ συνῆεσαν, πείθουσι καὶ ἄμφω τὼ ἀδελφὼ
father when and they-came-together persuade also both the two-brothers
τὸν Μανουὴλ τῶν σπονδῶν ἐκστῆναι τῶν πρὸς τὸν
— Manuel from-the treaties to-stand-away the(-ones) toward the
βασιλέα Ἰωάννην. ὁ δὲ ἑκὼν ἀέκων, ὡς ἔφασκον οἱ
emperor John he and willing unwilling as said the(-ones)
παρατυχόντες καὶ περὶ τῶν τοιούτων εἰδότες, συνήνεσεν
happening-by and about the such(-things) knowing agreed
αὐτῶν τοῖς βουλεύμασι· καὶ τὸ ἀπὸ τοῦδε ὑπῆρχον
their with-the counsels and the from this(-time) were
συνδεδεμένοι, ταῖς σφετέραις χώραις ταῖς μεμερισμέναις
bound with-the own lands the(-ones) divided

αὐτοῖς ἀρκούμενοι, καὶ μετὰ τῶν ἐν Πελοποννήσῳ καὶ
to-them being-content and with the in Peloponnese and
Εὐρίπῳ Λατίνων συμβιβάσεις ἔχοντες εἰρηνικάς.
Euripos Latins agreements having peaceful
Οὐ πολὺς παρερρύη χρόνος, καὶ ὁ Μανουὴλ ἐξ ἀνθρώπων 39
not much flowed-by time and — Manuel from men
ἐγένετο, μετάμελος, ὡς ἔλεγον, τῶν παραβασιῶν τῶν
became repentant as they-said of-the transgressions the(-ones)
πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα γενόμενος. θνήσκει δὲ καὶ ἡ βασιλὶς
toward the emperor having-become dies and also the empress
Εἰρήνη, γυνὴ σωφρονική τε καὶ ἀρχικὴ καὶ πολὺ τὸ
Irene woman prudent both and fit-to-rule and much the
μεγαλεῖον ἐπιδεικνυμένη τὸ βασίλειον. ἔχαιρε δὲ καὶ
grandeur displaying the imperial rejoiced and also
λόγοις καὶ σοφῶν ἠκροᾶτο μετὰ ἡδονῆς· ἐτίμα δὲ τούτους
in-letters and of-wise listened-to with pleasure honored and them
ὑπερβαλλόντως, ὡς ἔστιν ἐκ τούτου γνῶναι. καὶ γὰρ
exceedingly as it-is from this to-know also for
ἐκλείψεως γινομένης, ἡλίου τὸν καρκίνον διοδεύοντος περὶ
of-eclipse happening of-sun the Crab traversing about
μεσημβρίαν, ἐπείπερ αὐτὸς οὕτω συμβὰν ἐν τοῖς βασιλείοις
midday since I-myself so it-happened in the palace
ἀπῆλθον — ἐσκηνοῦτο δὲ περὶ τοὺς τόπους οὓς ὀνομάζουσι
I-went was-encamped and about the places which they-name
Περίκλυστρα σὺν τῇ βασιλίδι ὁ βασιλεύς — ἠρώτηκέ
Periklystra with the empress the emperor asked
με τὴν τῆς ἐκλείψεως αἰτίαν. καὶ αὐτὸς μὲν ἀκριβῶς
me the of-the eclipse cause and I-myself indeed exactly
οὐκ εἶχον ἐρεῖν — ἄρτι καὶ γὰρ τῶν τῆς φιλοσοφίας
not could to-say just-now also for of-the of-the philosophy
ἡψάμην ὀργίων παρὰ τοῦ σοφοῦ Βλεμμύδου διδασκόμενος
I-had-touched rites from the wise Blemmydes being-taught

— ὅμως μέντοι παρ᾽ αὐτοῦ τῷ τότε ὅσον ἦν
nevertheless however from him at-the then(-time) as-much-as was
εἰκὸς ἐπιγνοὺς τήν τε τῆς σελήνης ἐπιπρόσθησιν αἰτίαν
likely having-learned the both of-the moon interposition cause
τῆς ἐπισκιάσεως ἔλεγον εἶναι, καὶ δοκεῖν μὲν ἐκλείπειν
of-the overshadowing I-said to-be and to-seem indeed to-be-eclipsed
τὸν ἥλιον, οὐκ ἀληθῆ δὲ εἶναι τὴν τῆς φαύσεως στέρησιν,
the sun not true but to-be the of-the illumination deprivation
μᾶλλον μέντοι τοῦτο τὴν σελήνην πάσχειν, ἐπὰν τῷ
rather however this the moon to-suffer whenever in-the
σκιάσματι ἐμπέσῃ τῆς γῆς, διὰ τὸ ἐξ ἡλίου τὸ φέγγος
shadow it-falls of-the earth because-of the from sun the light
αὐχεῖν. ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁ λόγος ἐπὶ μήκιστον παρετείνετο, ἀντέλεγε
to-boast when and the discussion to greatest-length was-being-extended contradicted
δὲ τοῖς λεγομένοις ὁ ἰατρὸς Νικόλαος, ἀνὴρ ἥκιστα μὲν
and the things-said the physician Nikolaos man least indeed
φιλοσοφίας μετασχών, ἄκρος δὲ τὴν οἰκείαν τέχνην καὶ
in-philosophy having-shared supreme but the own art and
μάλιστα τὴν διὰ πείρας γινωσκομένην· πάνυ δὲ οὗτος
especially the(-one) through experience known very and this(-man)
ἠγαπᾶτο τῇ βασιλίδι, ἀκτουαρίου δὲ εἶχε τιμήν. ἐπεὶ
was-loved by-the empress of-aktouarios and had honor when
γοῦν ἀντέλεγεν οὗτος, αὐτὸς δὲ πλέον ἐστωμυλλόμην,
then contradicted this(-man) I-myself and more I-was-chattering
ἐν τῷ μεταξὺ τῶν λεγομένων ἀπεκάλεσέ με ἡ βασιλὶς
in the midst of-the things-said called me the empress
μωρόν· εἶτα δὴ ὥσπερ τι οὐ προσῆκον ἐργασαμένη,
fool then indeed as-if something not fitting having-done
πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα στραφεῖσα ‘ἀπρεπῶς ἄρα εἰρήκειν᾽ ἔφη
toward the emperor having-turned unfittingly then I-had-spoken said
‘καλέσασα τοῦτον μωρόν᾽. καὶ ὁ βασιλεὺς ‘οὐ καινόν·
having-called this(-man) fool and the emperor not strange

μειράκιον γάρ ἐστιν᾽. εἴκοσι γὰρ σὺν ἑνὶ τότε ὑπῆρχον
youth for he-is twenty for with one then I-was
ἐτῶν, καὶ οὐ πάμπαν ἀπᾴδει τούτου τὸ πρόσρημα.
of-years and not wholly is-out-of-tune his the address
ἀλλ᾽ ἡ βασιλὶς ‘οὐ χρεών’ φησι ‘τὸν φιλοσόφους λόγους
but the empress not it-is-right says the(-one) philosophical words
προφέροντα οὑτωσί γε προσαγορευθῆναι παρ᾽ ἡμῶν᾽.
bringing-forward thus at-least to-be-addressed by us
ταῦτ᾽ εἶπον, ὡς ἂν παραστήσαιμι ὅπως τε αὕτη
these-things I-said so-that — I-might-show how both she
ἐφίλει τοὺς λόγους καὶ τοὺς εἰδότας τούτους ἐτίμα.
loved the letters and the(-ones) knowing them honored
θνήσκει μέν, ὡς ἔφην, ἡ βασιλὶς αὕτη, οἶμαι δὲ καὶ τὴν
dies indeed as I-said the empress this I-think and also the
τοῦ ἡλίου ἔκλειψιν τὸν αὐτῆς προσημᾶναι θάνατον. καὶ
of-the sun eclipse the her to-have-foretold death and
κομήτης δὲ πρὸ μηνῶν ἓξ περὶ τὸ μέρος ἀνεφάνη τοῦ
comet too before months six about the part appeared of-the
βορρᾶ· ἦν δὲ πωγωνίας καὶ διήρκεσε μῆνας τρεῖς, οὐκ
north was and bearded and lasted months three not
ἐν ἑνὶ τόπῳ ἀλλ᾽ ἐν διαφόροις φαινόμενος.
in one place but in different appearing
Μετὰ βραχὺ δὲ καὶ ὁ Βουλγάρων ἄρχων Ἀσὰν ἐξ
after short(-while) and also the of-Bulgarians ruler Asan from
ἀνθρώπων ἐγένετο, ἀνὴρ ἐν βαρβάροις ἄριστος ἀναφανείς,
men became man among barbarians best having-appeared
οὐκ ἐν τοῖς οἰκείοις γὰρ μόνον ἀλλά γε δὴ καὶ
not with the own for only but at-least indeed also
τοῖς ἀλλοτρίοις. ἐχρήσατο καὶ γὰρ φιλανθρωπότερον τοῖς
the foreign(-ones) he-dealt also for more-humanely to-the
προσερχομένοις αὐτῷ ἐπήλυσι καὶ μάλιστα τοῖς Ῥωμαίοις,
coming-over to-him strangers and especially to-the Romans

καὶ φιλοτίμως αὐτοῖς παρεῖχε τὰ σιτηρέσια. ἐπεὶ οὖν
and generously to-them provided the provisions when then
αὐτὸς ἐτεθνήκει, ὁ υἱὸς αὐτοῦ, ὃν Καλιμᾶνον ὠνόμαζον,
he had-died the son his whom Kaliman they-named
ἐκ τῆς ἐξ Οὔγγρων τούτῳ γεγεννημένος, τὴν ἀρχὴν
from the(-woman) from Hungarians to-him born the rule
ἀνεδέξατο. ἦν δὲ τῷ τοιούτῳ Καλιμάνῳ καὶ αὐτοκασιγνήτη,
took-up was and to-the such Kaliman also own-sister
ἧς τοὔνομα Θάμαρ. ἐκ δὲ τῆς τοῦ Ἀγγέλου θυγατρὸς
whose the-name Thamar from but the — of-Angelos daughter
τῷ Ἀσὰν τρεῖς παῖδες γεγέννηνται, ἄρρην ὁ Μιχαὴλ καὶ
— to-Asan three children have-been-born male — Michael and
θήλειαι, ὡς εἰρήκαμεν, ἡ Μαρία καὶ ἡ Ἄννα. ὁ μὲν οὖν
female as we-have-said — Maria and — Anna — indeed then
Καλιμᾶνος τὴν πατρικὴν ἀρχὴν ἀναζωσάμενος καὶ τὰς
Kaliman the paternal rule having-girded-on and the
μετὰ τοῦ βασιλέως Ἰωάννου σπονδὰς ἀνενεώσατο, καὶ εἶχον
with the emperor John treaties renewed and held
εἰρήνην ἐν τοῖς τοιούτοις τὰ πράγματα. τοῦ δὲ Μανουὴλ
peace in the such the affairs — and of-Manuel
τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ Θεοδώρου τετελευτηκότος, τὴν κρατουμένην
the brother of-Theodore having-died the held
παρ᾽ αὐτοῦ χώραν ὁ ἀνεψιὸς αὐτοῦ Μιχαὴλ κατέσχε καὶ
by him land the nephew his Michael occupied and
τῇ αὐτοῦ προσήρμοσε χώρᾳ· καὶ ἦσαν αὖθις εἰρηνεύοντες
to-the his joined land and they-were again keeping-peace
ὅ τε Θεόδωρος ὁ Ἄγγελος, τὸν υἱὸν αὐτοῦ Ἰωάννην
— both Theodore the Angelos the son his John
ἔχων ἐν Θεσσαλονίκῃ καὶ τοῖς περὶ αὐτὴν βασιλικῶς
having in Thessalonica and in-the(-places) around it imperially

φημιζόμενον, καὶ ὁ θεῖος αὐτοῦ Κωνσταντῖνος δεσπότης
acclaimed and the uncle his Constantine despot
καὶ οὗτος καλούμενος, καὶ ὁ ἀνεψιὸς αὐτοῦ Μιχαήλ.
also this(-man) being-called and the nephew his Michael
Ὁ μὲν οὖν βασιλεὺς Ἰωάννης, ἐπειδὴ ὁ Βούλγαρος Ἀσὰν 40
the indeed then emperor John since the Bulgarian Asan
ἐκποδὼν ἐγένετο καὶ μειράκιον ἦρχε τῆς τῶν Βουλγάρων,
out-of-the-way became and a-youth ruled the of-the Bulgarians
ἀδείας δραξάμενος ἐπεχείρησε τὴν βασιλικὴν καταλῦσαι
license having-grasped attempted the imperial to-dissolve
κλῆσιν τὴν ἐπιφημιζομένην τῷ Ἰωάννῃ τῷ υἱῷ τοῦ
title the(-one) given — to-John the son —
Ἀγγέλου. καὶ πρῶτον μηνύμασιν ὑποποιεῖται τὸν αὐτοῦ
of-Angelos and first by-messages wins-over the his
πατέρα Θεόδωρον. καὶ δῆτα οἷος ἐκεῖνος ἀπροόπτως
father Theodore and indeed as that(-man) without-foresight
ἐπιχειρῶν ἐν τοῖς πράγμασι, μηδέν τι τῶν
attempting in the affairs nothing at-all of-the(-things)
συμβησομένων ὑπιδὼν προσέρχεται τῷ βασιλεῖ Ἰωάννῃ.
to-come having-suspected comes to-the emperor John
καὶ ὑποδέχεται αὐτὸν οὗτος ἀσμένως καὶ τετίμηκε,
and receives him this(-man) gladly and honored
θεῖόν τε τοῦτον ἀποκαλῶν κἂν τῇ αὐτοῦ συγκαθίζων
uncle both him calling even-at the his sitting-together
τραπέζῃ καὶ τῶν λοιπῶν φιλοφρονημάτων μεταδιδούς.
table and of-the other courtesies giving-a-share
ἐπεὶ δὲ τοῦτον ἐν χεροῖν ἔσχεν ὁ βασιλεύς, ἔτυχε
when and him in hands had the emperor it-happened
δὲ καὶ ταῖς αὐτοῦ δυνάμεσι ταῖς Ῥωμαϊκαῖς στράτευμα
and also to-the his forces the Roman army
ἀξιόμαχον προστεθὲν ἐκ Σκυθῶν — τούτους γὰρ πρὸ
fit-for-battle added from Scythians these for before

βραχέος δώροις τε καὶ δεξιώσεσι ποικίλαις ὁ βασιλεὺς
short(-while) with-gifts both and welcomes various the emperor
Ἰωάννης χειροήθεις τε πεποίηκεν ἐξ ἀγριωτέρου τοῦ
John tame both made from wilder the
ἤθους καὶ τῆς Μακεδόνων ἀπέσπασε καὶ πρὸς τὰ τῆς
character and from-the of-Macedonians drew-away and to the of-the
ἕω διεπέρασε μέρη — τούτοις μᾶλλον θαρρήσας καὶ μηδέν
east crossed parts in-these rather having-trusted and nothing
τι δεινὸν ἐκ Βουλγάρων προσδοκῶν, τὸ μὲν διὰ τὰς
at-all terrible from Bulgarians expecting partly indeed because-of the
γεγενημένας σπονδάς, τὸ δὲ καὶ διὰ τὸ ὑπὸ μειρακίου
made treaties partly and also because-of the by a-youth
τὰ τῶν Βουλγάρων διεξάγεσθαι, ἀπάρας τῆς ἕω
the(-affairs) of-the Bulgarians to-be-conducted having-set-out from-the east
ὁ βασιλεὺς καὶ διαπεραιωθεὶς τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον, τὰς ἐκ
the emperor and having-crossed — Hellespont the from
τῶν Ῥωμαϊκῶν στρατευμάτων δυνάμεις καὶ τὰς ἐκ τῶν
the Roman armies forces and the(-ones) from the
Σκυθῶν μεθ' ἑαυτοῦ ἔχων χωρεῖ κατὰ τοῦ ἐν Θεσσαλονίκῃ
Scythians with himself having goes against the in Thessalonica
βασιλεύειν φημιζομένου Ἰωάννου. ἐπεὶ δὲ παρῆλθε τὰ
to-reign acclaimed John when and he-passed the
τῆς Θράκης καὶ Μακεδονίας χωρία, ἤδη δὲ καὶ τὴν
— of-Thrace and Macedonia places already and also —
Χριστούπολιν παρήμειψε καὶ τὸν Στρυμόνα, τῷ φρουρίῳ
Christoupolis passed and — Strymon at-the fortress
τῆς Ῥεντίνης προσέσχεν, ὑπό τινων τηρουμένῳ τῶν
— of-Rentina put-in by some guarded of-the(-men)
Ἰωάννου· οἳ καὶ πρὸ τοῦ τὰ στρατεύματα τοῦ βασιλέως
of-John who also before the the armies of-the emperor
Ἰωάννου ἰδεῖν καταλιπόντες τὸ φρούριον, φυγῇ χρησάμενοι
John to-see having-left the fortress flight having-used

δρομαῖοι τὴν Θεσσαλονίκην εἰσῄεσαν. ἔρημον δὲ ἀνδρῶν
running — Thessalonica entered deserted and of-men
πολεμιστῶν εὑρόντες οἱ τοῦ βασιλέως κατέσχον αὐτὸ
warriors having-found the(-men) of-the emperor seized it
καὶ φυλακὴν ἐγκατέστησαν. ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς τὴν στρατιὰν
and garrison installed the and emperor the army
ἅπασαν συλλεξάμενος ἐγγύς που τῆς Θεσσαλονίκης ὡσεὶ
all having-gathered near somewhere — Thessalonica about
σταδίους ὀκτὼ τὴν σκηνὴν πήγνυσι· κῆπος τοῦ Προβατᾶ
stades eight the tent pitches garden — of-Probatas
ἡ κλῆσις τοῦ τόπου. ἐλεπόλεις μὲν καὶ μηχανήματα οὐκ
the name of-the place siege-engines indeed and engines not
ἦν αὐτῷ εὐχερὲς κατὰ τῆς τοσαύτης πόλεως στήσασθαι
was for-him easy against the so-great city to-set-up
κἀντεῦθεν μετὰ μάχης τοιᾶσδε χειρώσασθαι, ἐκδρομὰς δὲ
and-thence with battle such to-subdue sallies but
ἐποίει διὰ τῶν στρατευμάτων καὶ τὰ πέριξ πάντα
he-made through the armies and the(-places) around all
ἐλήιζε, καὶ μάλιστα διὰ τῶν Σκυθῶν.
plundered and especially through the Scythians
πάντα γοῦν λείαν ἐποίουν. εἶχε δὲ μεθ' ἑαυτοῦ καὶ τριήρεις,
all then booty they-made he-had and with himself also triremes
ὧν ἦρχεν ὁ Κοντοφρὲ Μανουήλ. ἔγκριτοι δὲ τῷ βασιλεῖ
which commanded — Kontophre Manuel select and the emperor
παρείποντο ἄνδρες, ὁ Τορνίκης Δημήτριος, τὰ κοινὰ
attended men — Tornikes Demetrios the common(-affairs)
διέπων καὶ μεσιτεύων ταῖς ὑποθέσεσιν, Ἀνδρόνικος ὁ
managing and mediating in-the matters Andronikos the
Παλαιολόγος, ὃς τὴν τοῦ μεγάλου δομεστίκου περιεξώννυτο
Palaiologos who the of-the great domestic was-girded-with
δύναμιν, τὰ τῶν στρατευμάτων διεξάγων πράγματα, καὶ
power the of-the armies conducting affairs and

ἄλλοι πλείους εἰς ἡγεμόνας ἀποτεταγμένοι, ὅ τε Ῥαοὺλ
others more as commanders appointed — both Raoul
Ἀλέξιος πρωτοβεστιάριος ὤν, ὁ ἐπὶ τῆς τραπέζης
Alexios protovestiarios being the(-one) over the table
Νικηφόρος ὁ Ταρχανειώτης, ὁ Κοντοστέφανος ὁ
Nikephoros the Tarchaneiotes — Kontostephanos the(-one)
τὴν πρωτοσεβαστοῦ ἔχων ἀξίαν, ὁ Πετραλίφας μέγας
the of-protosebastos having dignity — Petraliphas great
χαρτουλάριος ὠνομασμένος, καὶ ἄλλοι τῶν ἐπιφανῶν οὐκ
chartoularios named and others of-the conspicuous not
ὀλίγοι. ὁ μὲν οὖν βασιλεὺς Ἰωάννης παρακαθήμενος
few the indeed then emperor John sitting-before(-it)
ὅσα ἦν εἰκὸς ποιεῖν ἐποίει κατὰ τῆς πόλεως. οἱ δὲ
as-much-as was likely to-do did against the city the(-ones) and
ἐντὸς οὐκ ἀπώκνουν ἐργάζεσθαι, ἀλλὰ καὶ οὗτοι ἐκδρομὰς
within not shrank to-work but also these sallies
τῶν πυλῶν ἐξιόντες κατὰ τῶν τοῦ βασιλέως ἐποίουν. οὐ
from-the gates going-out against the(-men) of-the emperor made not
συχναὶ παρῆλθον ἡμέραι, καὶ τὸ τῶν Ταχαρίων ἔθνος κατὰ
many passed days and the of-the Tachars nation against
τῶν Μουσουλμάνων χωρῆσαν καὶ πόλεμον κατ᾽ αὐτῶν
the Muslims having-gone and war against them
συρρῆξαν νενίκηκε. καὶ ὁ λόγος φθάνει πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα,
having-broken-out conquered and the report reaches to the emperor
διαμηνυθεὶς παρὰ τοῦ υἱέος αὐτοῦ τοῦ βασιλέως Θεοδώρου·
announced by the son his the emperor Theodore
τοῦτον γὰρ καταλελοίπει περὶ τὰ μέρη τῶν Πηγῶν
him for he-had-left about the parts — of-Pegai
διατρίβειν, ἀφεὶς μετ᾽ αὐτοῦ καὶ τὸν Μουζάλωνα Ἰωάννην,
to-stay having-left with him also — Mouzalon John
μυστικὸν μὲν ὄντα ὅτε τοῖς κοσμικοῖς συνετάττετο, τότε δὲ
mystikos indeed being when with-the secular(-men) he-was-ranked then but

μοναχὸς ἦν, ἀνὴρ ὀξύνους καὶ δραστήριος καὶ βασιλικοῖς
monk he-was man sharp-minded and energetic and in-imperial
τῶν ἄλλων πλέον ἐμπρέπων πράγμασι, καὶ τὸν Λιβαδάριον
than-the others more distinguished affairs and — Libadarios
Μιχαήλ, μέγαν ἑταιρειάρχην ὄντα. ὡς γοῦν τῆς φήμης ὁ
Michael great hetaireiarch being as then of-the report the
βασιλεὺς ἤσθετο, σιωπὴν παραγγείλας τοὺς εἰδότας ἄγειν
emperor perceived silence having-ordered the(-ones) knowing to-keep
καὶ μηδενὶ περὶ τούτου κοινωνεῖν, εἰς συμβιβάσεις μετὰ
and with-no-one about this to-share to agreements with
τοῦ ἐντὸς Ἰωάννου χωρεῖ, πρέσβιν ἐν τούτοις λαβὼν τὸν
the within John goes envoy in these having-taken the
Ἰωάννου πατέρα τὸν Ἄγγελον Θεόδωρον. πληρουμένων
of-John father — Angelos Theodore being-fulfilled
γοῦν ἡμερῶν τεσσαράκοντα ἐγένοντο αἱ σπονδαὶ καὶ οἱ
then days forty were-made the treaties and the
ὅρκοι προέβησαν· τὰ μὲν γὰρ ἐρυθρὰ πέδιλα ἀπεβάλλετο
oaths proceeded the indeed for red sandals he-cast-off
καὶ τὴν περιμάργαρον πυραμίδα, εἰς ἣν καὶ λίθος
and the pearl-studded pyramid on which also stone
ὑπερκάθηται κόκκινος, βασιλικὰ ταῦτα σύμβολα, τετίμηται
sits-above scarlet imperial these symbols was-honored
δὲ πρὸς τοῦ βασιλέως τῷ δεσποτικῷ ἀξιώματι, καὶ
and by the emperor with-the despotic dignity and
εὔνους ἀνεφάνη τῷ βασιλεῖ. ταῦτα διαπραξάμενος ὁ
well-disposed appeared to-the emperor these-things having-accomplished the
βασιλεὺς παλινοστεῖ πρὸς τὴν ἕω, καταλιπὼν δεσπότην
emperor returns to the east having-left despot
τὸν βασιλέα καὶ ὑποχείριον, ὅρκοις συνδήσας τοῖς εἰωθόσι
the emperor and subject with-oaths having-bound the customary
καὶ δώροις εἰκόσι δεξιωσάμενος καὶ πάντας τοὺς ὑπ᾽
and with-gifts fitting having-welcomed and all the(-ones) under

ἐκεῖνον φιλοφρονησάμενος χρήμασι. καταλελοίπει δὲ μετ'
that(-man) having-courted with-money had-left and with
αὐτοῦ καὶ τὸν πατέρα τούτου Θεόδωρον.
him also the father his Theodore

41 Ὁ μὲν οὖν βασιλεὺς Ἰωάννης κατειλήφει τὴν ἕω. τὴν γοῦν
the indeed then emperor John had-reached the east the then
χειμερινὴν τότε παραμείψας ὥραν ἐν τῷ Νυμφαίῳ, ὡς
winter then having-passed season in — Nymphaion as
ἔθος ἦν αὐτῷ, ἀπάρας ἐκεῖθεν περὶ τὴν Λάμψακον ᾔει·
custom was for-him having-set-out thence to — Lampsakos went
κἀκεῖσε τὸ θέρος διαβιβάσας καὶ τὴν τῆς ὀπώρας ὥραν,
and-there the summer having-spent and the of-the autumn season
ἐπεὶ ὁ χειμὼν ἤρξατο, τοῦ χώρου μεταβὰς περὶ τὰ τῶν
when the winter began from-the region having-moved about the —
Πηγῶν ἐχώρει μέρη. μεγίστου δὲ χειμῶνος πεπείραται καθ'
of-Pegai went parts very-great and winter experienced on
ὁδόν, ἀρξαμένου μὲν ἐπὰν ὁ βασιλεὺς εἰς τὴν Σιγρηνὴν
road having-begun indeed when the emperor at — Sigrene
ἐσκήνωσεν· ἡμέρας δύο δὲ τῇ δριμύτητι τούτου καὶ τῇ
encamped days two and by-the sharpness of-it and by-the
σφοδροτάτῃ φορᾷ τῆς χιόνος τεταλαιπώρηκε, μέχρις ἂν
most-violent onrush of-the snow was-worn-out until —
κατηντήκει ἐς τὸ τῶν Πηγῶν ἄστυ. πολλοὶ γοῦν καθ' ὁδὸν
he-arrived at the — of-Pegai town many then on road
ἐτεθνήκεισαν καὶ πολλαί· μέχρι γοῦν τριακοσίων, ὡς οἱ
had-died and many(-women) up-to then three-hundred as the(-ones)
ἀριθμήσαντες ἔφασκον, ὑπὸ τῆς χιόνος κατεχώσθησαν,
having-counted said by the snow were-buried
μὴ δυνάμενοι ἀντωπῆσαι τῇ τοῦ πνεύματος φορᾷ. οὐδεὶς
not being-able to-face the of-the wind onrush no-one
γοῦν τῶν ἰδόντων ἔλεγε γινώσκειν γεγενῆσθαί ποτε
then of-the(-ones) having-seen said to-know to-have-happened ever

τοιοῦτον χειμῶνα. ἦγε δὲ τῷ τότε ὀκτωκαιδεκάτην
such winter was-keeping and at-the then(-time) eighteenth
μὴν ὁ Δεκέβριος, ἔτος δὲ ἦν ἐπὶ τῷ ἑξακισχιλιοστῷ καὶ
month — December year and was at the six-thousandth and
ἑπτακοσιοστῷ τὸ τεσσαρακοστὸν οἶμαι πρῶτον. ὁ μὲν οὖν
seven-hundredth the fortieth I-think first the indeed then
βασιλεὺς ἐν τῷ τῶν Πηγῶν ἄστει διημερεύσας, μέχρις ἂν τὸ
emperor in the — of-Pegai town having-spent-the-days until — the
πολὺ τοῦ χειμῶνος λωφήσῃ, ἐξιὼν ἐκεῖθεν εἰς τὸ Νύμφαιον
great-part of-the winter should-abate going-out thence to — Nymphaion
ἀπῄει, καὶ ἦν ἐκεῖσε μέχρι καὶ τῆς τοῦ ἔαρος ἐπιλάμψεως.
went-off and was there up-to also the of-the spring shining-forth
Ἐπεὶ γοῦν, ὡς εἰρήκειμεν, ἡ τῶν Μουσουλμάνων παρὰ
when then as we-had-said the of-the Muslims by
τῶν Ταχαρίων καταλέλυται στρατιά, σουλτὰν δὲ ἦρχεν
the Tachars has-been-destroyed army sultan and ruled
αὐτῶν, οὗ κλῆσις Ἰαθατίνης, υἱὸς τοῦ σουλτὰν Ἀζατίνη,
them whose name Iathatines son of-the sultan Azatines
φαῦλος ἐξ ἀγαθοῦ ἀρχὸς γεγονώς· πότοις γὰρ ἔχαιρε καὶ
worthless from good ruler having-become in-drinkings for he-rejoiced and
ἀσελγείαις καὶ κοίταις ἀλλοκότοις τε καὶ ἀτόποις, καὶ συνῆν
in-licentiousness and in-beds strange both and out-of-place and was-with
ἀεὶ ἀνθρωπίσκοις οὐκέτι λόγον εἰδόσιν οὐδ' ἀνθρωπίνην
always little-men no-longer reason knowing nor human
φύσιν τὸ σύνολον. ὁ πατὴρ δὲ αὐτοῦ οὐ τοιοῦτος ἦν, ἀλλ'
nature the whole the father and his not such was but
ἡττᾶτο μέν, οὐ σφόδρα δέ, τῶν ἀσελγειῶν· διὸ καὶ
was-overcome indeed not very and by-the licentiousness wherefore also
βέλτιον τῶν πρὸ αὐτοῦ ἐστρατήγει καὶ φιλίως πρὸς
better than-the(-ones) before him he-generalled and friendly toward
τὸν βασιλέα διέκειτο. ἀλλ' οὗτος, οἷς ἔχαιρε, πλησμίως
the emperor was-disposed but this(-man) in-what he-rejoiced to-satiety

τούτων ἀπώνατο. πεπείραται γοῦν μάχης Ταχαρικῆς καὶ
from-these profited experienced then battle Tacharian and
ἥττηται. ἐν στενῷ γοῦν τῶν πραγμάτων κομιδῇ γεγονὼς
was-defeated in strait then of-the affairs utterly having-become
πρέσβεις ἐκπέμπει πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα Ἰωάννην βουλῆς τε
envoys sends to the emperor John of-counsel both
ἀξιῶν ἀρίστης ἐξ αὐτοῦ τυχεῖν, ὡς ἂν ἀποτρέψαιτο
asking best from him to-obtain so-that — he-might-turn-away
τὸν ἀντίπαλον καὶ μικρὸν κουφισθείη τοῦ βάρους αὐτοῦ,
the opponent and a-little might-be-relieved of-the burden his
σωτηριῶδες τοῦτο φάσκων τυγχάνον ἀμφοῖν· τοῦ γὰρ γένους
saving this saying happening for-both of-the for race
τῶν Μουσουλμάνων παρὰ τῶν Ταχαρίων ἀπολωλότος
of-the Muslims by the Tachars having-perished
ἄνετος λείπεται τοῖς ἐναντίοις ἡ κατὰ τῶν Ῥωμαϊκῶν
free is-left to-the opponents the against the Roman
χωρῶν ἔφοδος. καὶ ἦν τοῦτο πάνυ γε ἀληθές. ὁ γοῦν
lands attack and was this very at-least true the then
βασιλεὺς Ἰωάννης, οἷα ἐκεῖνος δεινὸς ἐν τοιούτοις πράγμασιν,
emperor John as that(-man) clever in such affairs
ἀποδέχεται ἄσμενος τὴν πρεσβείαν καὶ εἰς ἑνῶσιν συνελθεῖν
receives glad the embassy and into union to-come
ᾑρετίσατο τῷ σουλτάν, ὡς ἂν τοῦτο τοῖς ἐναντίοις
chose with-the sultan so-that — this to-the opponents
εἰς ἀποτροπὴν γένοιτο· ἡνωμένων γὰρ τῶν τοιούτων δύο
for turning-away might-become united for of-the such two
ἀρχῶν μεγίστων εἰκὸς πτοίαν γενέσθαι τοῖς πολεμίοις,
powers very-great likely terror to-come to-the enemies
πρὸς ἕνα μὲν ἔχουσι τὸν σκοπόν, πρὸς δὲ δύο ἀθρόον
against one indeed having the aim against and two at-once
εὑρισκομένοις. καὶ γοῦν ἐπὶ τοῖς τοιούτοις συσκευασάμενοι
being-found and then upon the such(-terms) having-prepared

συνηλθέτην καὶ ἄμφω, ὅ τε βασιλεὺς Ἰωάννης καὶ ὁ
came-together and both the both emperor John and the
σουλτὰν Ἰαθατίνης, ἐν τῷ ἄστει τῆς Τριπόλεως, ὅπου καὶ
sultan Iathatines in the town — of-Tripolis where also
ὁ Μαίανδρος ῥεῖ ποταμός. γέφυραν γοῦν ἐξ αὐτοσχεδίου
— Maeander flows river bridge then from improvisation
ἐκ ξύλων οἱ τοῦ σουλτὰν ἐργασάμενοι, εὐχερῆ τοῖς
of timbers the(-men) of-the sultan having-made easy for-the(-ones)
βουλομένοις πεποιήκασι τὴν περαίωσιν. ἀλλήλους γοῦν
wishing made the crossing each-other then
οἱ ἀρχοὶ φιλοφρόνως δεξιωσάμενοι, ἔτι δὲ καὶ τοὺς ὑφ᾽
the rulers in-friendly-fashion having-welcomed still and also the under
ἑκάτερον ἑκάτεροι προύχοντας, καὶ συνθήκας, ἃς καὶ πρὸ
each each leading-men and agreements which also before
τοῦ εἶχον, κρειττόνως βεβαιωσάμενοι, ὡς ἂν μάχοιντο
this they-had more-strongly having-confirmed so-that — they-might-fight
συνημμένως τοῖς ἐναντίοις, διελύθησαν, ὁ μὲν βασιλεὺς
jointly against-the opponents parted the indeed emperor
ὑποστρέψας εἰς τὴν Φιλαδέλφου, ὁ δὲ σουλτὰν εἰς τὴν
having-returned to the of-Philadelphia the and sultan to the
Ἰκονιέων, ἔνθα εἶχε καὶ τὰ βασίλεια. τότε μὲν καὶ
of-Iconians where he-had also the palace then indeed also
ἀμφοῖν τὰ τῆς μάχης ἠρέμησαν. καὶ γὰρ ἡ τῶν
for-both the(-affairs) of-the battle were-quiet also for the of-the
Ταχάρων στρατιὰ καθ᾽ ἑαυτὴν ἔμενε καὶ οὐ κεκίνητο
Tachars army by itself remained and not had-been-moved
ὡς ἔθος· ἐν τοῖς ἑαυτῶν καὶ γὰρ ἠσχολοῦντο πράγμασι.
as custom in the their-own also for they-were-occupied affairs
Μετ᾽ οὐ πολὺ δὲ καὶ ὃν προειρήκειμεν Ἰωάννην τὸν 42
after not much and also whom we-had-said-before John the
δεσπότην γεγενημένον παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως Ἰωάννου τὸ
despot made by the emperor John the

χρεὼν εἰλήφει. ὑπῆρχε δὲ αὐτῷ ἀδελφὸς Δημήτριος,
debt had-taken was and to-him brother Demetrios
ὃς μεταστειλάμενος πρεσβείαν εἰς τὸν βασιλέα τοῦ τε
who having-sent-for embassy to the emperor of-the both
δεσποτικοῦ ἀξιώματος ἐκεκληρονομήκει τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ καὶ
despotic dignity had-inherited of-the brother and
δεσπόζειν πάντων τῶν ὑπ᾽ ἐκεῖνον προστέτακται. ἀλλ᾽
to-be-master of-all the(-ones) under that(-man) has-been-ordered but
ἦν οὗτος οὐκ ἀδελφὰ φρονῶν Ἰωάννῃ τῷ ἀδελφῷ,
was this(-man) not brotherly(-things) thinking with-John the brother
ἀλλὰ πολλῷ τῷ μέτρῳ διέζευκτο. ἐκείνου μὲν γὰρ
but by-great the measure was-sundered of-that(-man) indeed for
εὐσεβείᾳ καὶ εὐλαβείᾳ καὶ σωφροσύνῃ χαίροντος — καὶ
in-piety and in-reverence and in-temperance rejoicing also
γὰρ ἔλεγον οἱ τὰ αὐτοῦ εἰδότες μὴ ἄν ποτε
for said the(-ones) the(-things) of-him knowing not — ever
ἀπολειφθῆναι μηδεμιᾶς ἡμέρας τοῦ ἔτους τοῦ μὴ τῆς
to-be-left-out of-any day of-the year from-the not the
θείας ἱεροτελεστίας ἐπακροάσασθαι, εἰ μή τις ἐκώλυε
divine sacred-office to-hear if not some hindered
νόσος· προσεῖχε δὲ παννυχίσιν εὐχαῖς, καὶ τὰς καθ᾽ ὥραν
illness be-attended and to-all-night prayers and the by hour
ὑμνῳδίας ὁσημέραι ἐπλήρου. ὡμίλει δὲ καὶ διηνεκῶς
hymn-singings daily fulfilled consorted and also continually
Ναζιραίοις, καὶ ἦν αὐτῷ διὰ σπουδάσματος ὅτι πλείστου
with-Nazirites and was to-him for endeavor as much-as-possible
τὸ τοῦ μονήρους βίου τυχεῖν καὶ τῆς ἐντεῦθεν ἡσυχίας
the of-the solitary life to-obtain and of-the thence quiet
ἐν πείρᾳ γενέσθαι ἢ κἂν προσφιλῶς διακεῖσθαι τοῖς
in experience to-become or at-least affectionately to-be-disposed to-the(-ones)
οὕτως ἔχουσιν. ὁ δὲ ἀδελφὸς Δημήτριος ἐξ ἐναντίας εἶχε
so being the but brother Demetrios from opposite had

τοῦ τρόπου. μειρακίοις γὰρ ἀβελτέροις ὡμίλει καὶ τούτοις
of-the way with-youths for silly consorted and with-these
τὰ πλεῖστα συνῄσθετο, καὶ τοῖς ἀφροδισίοις ἠσέλγαινε καὶ
the most was-pleased and in-the aphrodisian(-things) was-licentious and
παρὰ ταῖς ὑπὸ ζυγὸν ἐφοίτα, ὥστε ποτὲ καὶ σύμπτωμα
to the(-women) under yoke went so-that once also mishap
συνέβη τούτῳ δεινόν. ἐκ γὰρ θυρίδος τοῦ ἀνδρὸς
happened to-this(-man) terrible from for window the husband
τῆς μοιχευομένης ἀθρόον ἐπεισελθόντος βουληθεὶς
of-the(-woman) being-seduced suddenly having-come-in having-wished
ἀποδρᾶσαι, ὡς ἐξ ὑπερυψήλου τοῦ τόπου πεσών, τὸν
to-run-away as from very-high the place having-fallen the
γλουτὸν ἐπλήγη· ἱκανὰς δὲ ἡμέρας νοσηλευθεὶς ἰάθη
buttock was-struck sufficient and days having-been-nursed was-healed
μέν, ὑπέσκαζε δὲ τῶν ποδῶν θάτερον καὶ οὐκ ἐβημάτιζεν
indeed limped and of-the feet on-the-one and not walked
ὁμαλῶς. ἀλλ᾽ οὗτος οὐκ εἰς μακρὰν ἀπώνατο τῆς
evenly but this(-man) not for long enjoyed the
ἀρχῆς. ὁ γὰρ βασιλεὺς Ἰωάννης ἀδείας δραξάμενος τῷ
rule the for emperor John (the)-license having-grasped at-the
τότε καιροῦ, ἐπείπερ, ὡς ἔφημεν, τὸ τῶν Ταχαρίων
then(-time) of-time since as we-said the of-the Tachars
γένος ἐνησχολεῖτο ἑτέροις ἔθνεσι, καταλιπὸν τὴν πρὸς τοῦ
race was-occupied with-other nations having-left the against the
σουλτὰν τοῦ Ἰκονίου μάχην — τῷ γὰρ Βαβυλωνίῳ καὶ
sultan — of-Iconium battle with-the for Babylonian and
τοῖς πέριξ τούτου τὰ τῆς μάχης ἐπῆγεν, ὃν
the(-ones) around him the(-things) of-the battle he-was-bringing whom
Χαλιφᾶν εἰώθασι καλεῖν τὰ τῶν Μουσουλμάνων φῦλα —
Caliph are-wont to-call the of-the Muslims tribes

θέρους ὥρας γενομένης διαπεραιοῦται τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον,
of-summer season having-come crosses — Hellespont
καταλιπὼν εἰς τὴν ἕω τὸν υἱὸν αὐτοῦ Θεόδωρον.
having-left in the east the son his Theodore
Ἔτυχε μὲν πρὸ καιροῦ τὸν πατριάρχην Γερμανὸν τὰ
it-happened indeed before time the patriarch Germanos the(-things)
τῇδε καταλιπόντα πρὸς τὰς θείας ἀπᾶραι σκηνάς, καλῶς καὶ
here having-left to the divine to-depart tents well and
ὁσίως βιώσαντα καὶ καλῶς τὴν αὐτοῦ ποιμάναντα ποίμνην·
holily having-lived and well the his having-shepherded flock
ἐγένετο δὲ μετ᾽ αὐτὸν Μεθόδιός τις καλούμενος μοναχός,
became and after him Methodios a-certain called monk
ἡγούμενος τῆς κατὰ Νίκαιαν Ὑακίνθου μονῆς, ἀνὴρ αὐχῶν
abbot of-the in Nicaea of-Hyakinthos monastery man boasting
μὲν εἰδέναι πολλά, ὀλίγων δὲ ἴδρις ὤν. ἀλλ᾽ οὗτος τρεῖς
indeed to-know many(-things) of-few but skilled being but this(-man) three
καὶ μόνους μῆνας ἐπαπολαύσας τοῦ θρόνου τετελεύτηκεν.
and only months having-enjoyed the throne died
ἐστέρετο γοῦν ἀρχιερέως ἡ ἐκκλησία. ὁ γὰρ βασιλεὺς
was-bereft then of-high-priest the church the for emperor
Ἰωάννης ἐν τοῖς τοιούτοις μὴ πρόχειρος ὢν οὐκ εὐχερῶς
John in the such(-matters) not ready being not easily
εἶχεν ἐκ τοῦ προχείρου τὸν ἄξιον ἐφευρεῖν, ἢ μᾶλλον τὸν
was-able from the readiness the worthy to-find-out or rather the(-one)
ἐκείνῳ ἀρέσοντα· μάλιστα γὰρ οἱ κρατοῦντες τοὺς
to-that(-man) to-be-pleasing especially for the(-ones) ruling the(-ones)
πρὸς ἀρέσκειαν ἐν τούτοις προσίενται, ὡς ἂν μή τινας
toward pleasing in these admit so-that — not any
ἔχοιεν ἀντερίζοντας τοῖς βουλήμασι. παρερρύη γοῦν
they-might-have contending with-the wishes flowed-past then
χρόνος συχνός, καὶ οὐκ ἦν ὁ διεξάγων τὸ ποίμνιον.
time long and not was the(-one) conducting the flock

VIII · THESSALONICA TAKEN

On news of the boy Kaliman's death John takes Serres and Melenikon, whose people come over, and wins the Bulgarian towns of Macedonia without a battle. Demetrios, Theodore's son, rules Thessalonica foolishly; his nobles plot with John, and the city is opened. John takes Tzouroulos and Bizye, and recovers Rhodes from the Genoese.

Ὁ μὲν οὖν βασιλεὺς Ἰωάννης, ὡς ἔφημεν, εἰς τὴν 43
the indeed then emperor John as we-said to the
ἀντιπέραν καὶ δυτικὴν ἐποιεῖτο τὸν βάδον χάριν τοῦ
opposite and western was-making the march for-the-sake of-the
τὰς ἐκεῖσε χώρας καὶ τὰ ἐν αὐτοῖς κατοπτεύσασθαι ἄστη·
the there lands and the in them to-survey towns
καὶ μέχρι γὰρ τοῦ οὕτω πως ὀνομαζομένου ἄστεος
and up-to for the thus somehow named town
Ζίχνα, ἐγγύς που ὄντος Σερρῶν, ἁπάντων ἐδέσποζεν.
Zichna near somewhere being Serres of-all he-was-master
ἦρχε μὲν τότε Βουλγάρων ὁ τοῦ Ἀσὰν υἱὸς Καλιμᾶνος,
ruled indeed then Bulgarians the — of-Asan son Kaliman
δωδεκέτης ὤν. ἐπεὶ γοῦν περὶ τὰ μέρη τοῦ Κισσοῦ ὁ
twelve-years-old being when then about the parts — of-Kissos the
βασιλεὺς γένοιτο κἀκεῖσε διημερεύσας τὴν ἐπαύριον τῆς
emperor came and-there having-spent-the-day the next-day the
πορείας εἴχετο, ἐπεφθάκει δὲ περὶ τὸν ποταμὸν Ἔβρον,
march held-to had-arrived and about the river Hebros
πλησίον τῆς μονῆς τοῦ Βηρὸς ὀνομαζομένης ποιούμενον
near the monastery — of-Bera named making
τὰς ῥοάς, Μαρίτζαν δὲ καλούμενον χωριτικῇ διαλέκτῳ.
the streams Maritza and called in-the-rustic dialect
κατὰ δὲ τὸ μέσον τοῦ ποταμοῦ γενομένου τοῦ βασιλέως
in and the middle of-the river having-come the emperor

— ποσὶ γὰρ ἵππων ὑπῆρχε βατός, ἐπείπερ θέρους
by-feet for of-horses it-was fordable since of-summer
τέλος ἐτύγχανε· φθίνοντος γὰρ τρίτη ἢ καὶ τετάρτη
end it-happened waning for third or also fourth
Σεπτεβρίου ἦν — μήνυμα διακεκόμισται σεσημασμένον
of-September was message has-been-brought signified
γραφῇ σταλείσῃ παρὰ τοῦ τὴν δημόσιον τῆς
by-writing sent by the(-one) the public of-the(-region)
Ἀχριδῶν κρατοῦντος ἀρχήν, ὡς ὁ Καλιμᾶνος ὁ τῶν
of-Achridos holding office that — Kaliman the of-the
Βουλγάρων ἄρχων τὸν βίοτον ἐξεμέτρησεν, ὥς τινες
Bulgarians ruler the life measured-out as some
μὲν ἔφασκον, φυσικῇ νόσῳ τοῦτο παθών, οἱ δ'
indeed said by-natural illness this having-suffered the(-others) and
ἄλλως ἔλεγον, ὡς ἐναντιόφροσι τούτῳ πόματι κρύφα
otherwise said that by-contrary-minded to-him drink secretly
ἐσκευασμένῳ πρὸς μόρον διέφθαρται. ἀλλ' οὗτος μὲν
prepared for death he-was-destroyed but this(-man) indeed
εἴθ' οὕτως εἴτ' ἄλλως ἐξ ἀνθρώπων ἐγένετο, καὶ ἦν
whether so or otherwise from men became and was
ὁ λόγος ἀληθείας ἐχόμενος· συνεχέσι γὰρ διεβεβαιοῦτο
the report of-truth holding by-continual for it-was-confirmed
μηνύμασιν.
messages
Ὁ μὲν οὖν βασιλεὺς ταῦτα μαθὼν τοῦ πρόσω
the indeed then emperor these-things having-learned the forward
εἶχετο, καὶ τάχος φθάνει τὴν Φιλίππους, παραμείψας
held-to and quickly reaches — Philippi having-passed
Χριστούπολιν. κἀκεῖσε σκέψιν ἐποιεῖτο μετὰ τῶν
Christoupolis and-there deliberation made with the
αὐτοῦ λογάδων, εἰ δεῖ προσβαλεῖν τοῖς τῶν
his select-men whether it-is-necessary to-attack the(-places) of-the

Βουλγάρων καὶ χειρώσασθαί τινα τῶν παρ᾽ αὐτοῖς
Bulgarians and to-subdue some of-the(-places) by them
κρατουμένων, καὶ εἰ εὐχερές ἐστιν ἁλῶναι ἡμῖν τὸ
held and whether easy it-is to-be-taken by-us the
τῶν Σερρῶν ἄστυ. τινὲς μὲν ἀπηγόρευον τῷ βασιλεῖ τὴν
— of-Serres town some indeed dissuaded the emperor the
κατὰ τῶν Βουλγάρων μάχην· οὐ γὰρ ἀξιόμαχον ἔλεγον
against the Bulgarians battle not for fit-for-battle they-said
ἄγειν στρατόν, ἐπεὶ μηδὲ πρὸς μάχην ηὐτρέπιστο, ἀλλὰ
to-lead army since not-even for battle he-had-been-prepared but
κατὰ μόνην θέαν τῶν αὐτοῦ ἐποιεῖτο τὴν κίνησιν.
for only viewing of-the(-places) his he-made the movement
τὸ δὲ τῶν Σερρῶν ἄστυ, ᾧ πρώτως προσβαλεῖν
the and — of-Serres town which first to-attack
ἔδει, ἄμαχον μέν ἐστιν ἐκ τοῦ ὑπερκεῖσθαι τῆς
it-was-necessary unassailable indeed is from the to-lie-above the
γῆς, κυκλωθῆναι δὲ τοσούτῳ στρατεύματι οὐκέτι ῥᾳόν
ground to-be-encircled and by-so-great army no-longer easier
ἐστιν· ἑλεπόλεις δὲ στῆσαι κατ᾽ αὐτοῦ τῶν ἀμηχάνων
is siege-engines and to-set-up against it of-the impossible(-things)
καθέστηκε. προσβαλεῖν δὲ καὶ μετὰ πεῖραν ἀποκρουσθῆναι
stands to-attack and also after trial to-be-repulsed
αἰδὼς μὲν ὑπάρχει τῷ κράτει τῆς τῶν Ῥωμαίων
shame indeed is to-the might of-the of-the Romans
ἀρχῆς — φήμη γὰρ αὐτοῖς ἐπὶ τοῖς τοιούτοις πάνυ
rule fame for to-them for the such(-things) very
πολλὴ — καὶ τὸ πρὸς μάχην παροτρῦναι Βουλγάρους
much and the to battle to-rouse Bulgarians
ἐφησυχάζοντας οὐκέτι συμφέρει. ταῦτα συνεβούλευον
keeping-quiet no-longer is-expedient these-things advised
οἱ τὸν βασιλέα τῆς ἐγχειρήσεως ἀποτρέποντες.
the(-ones) the emperor from-the undertaking turning-away

ὁ δὲ Παλαιολόγος Ἀνδρόνικος, ὃν μέγαν δομέστικον
— *and Palaiologos Andronikos whom great domestic*
ὁ λόγος μοι προϊστόρησε, τὰ ἐναντία μᾶλλον
the account to-me told-before the(-things) opposite rather
τῷ βασιλεῖ συνεβούλευε· ‘καὶ ἀποπειρᾶσθαι χρὴ
the emperor advised also to-make-trial it-is-necessary
τοῦ ἄστεος τῶν Σερρῶν· καὶ εἰ μὲν κρατήσαιμεν
of-the town — of-Serres and if indeed we-should-master
τούτου, κέρδος ἐσχήκαμεν οὐ μικρόν, καὶ μᾶλλον τὰ
it gain we-have not small and rather the(-affairs)
τῶν Βουλγάρων ταπεινωθήσονται καὶ τὴν τῆς ἀγάπης
of-the Bulgarians will-be-humbled and the of-the love
πρεσβείαν εὐχερέστερον δέξαιντο, ἐπεὶ καὶ ἐκποδὼν
embassy more-easily they-would-receive since also out-of-the-way
αὐτῶν ὁ δεσπότης, μέλλει δὲ καὶ ἄλλο βρέφος ἄρξαι τῶν
their the master is-about and also another babe to-rule the
Βουλγάρων, ὁ ἐκ τῆς Εἰρήνης τῆς τοῦ Ἀγγέλου Θεοδώρου
Bulgarians the from — Irene the — of-Angelos Theodore
τῷ Ἀσὰν γεννηθεὶς Μιχαήλ. εἰ δὲ μὴ περιγενέσθαι ἡμᾶς
— to-Asan born Michael if and not to-overcome us
συμβαίη τοῦ ἄστεος, τί τὸ ζημίαν ἐπάγον τῇ
it-should-happen the town what the(-thing) loss bringing to-the
τῶν Ῥωμαίων ἀρχῇ; λαβόντες γὰρ διάπειραν ἠρεμήσομεν
of-the Romans rule having-taken for trial we-will-be-quiet
καὶ πάλιν διαπρεσβεύσομεν πρὸς Βουλγάρους, κἀκεῖνοι
and again we-will-send-embassy to Bulgarians and-they
ἀσμένως τὴν πρεσβείαν δέξαιντο ὑπὸ βρέφους ἀρχόμενοι,
gladly the embassy would-receive by a-babe being-ruled
ὅ τι τὰ πρὸς μάχην οὐκ οἶδεν. ἕκαστος δὲ τὰ
who at-all the(-things) for battle not knows each and the(-things)
τῆς εἰρήνης φιλεῖ, τῆς ἀναπαύσεως στοχαζόμενος.’
of-the peace loves the rest aiming-at

ἜΕδοξε τῷ βασιλεῖ ἄριστα βεβουλεῦσθαι τὸν μέγαν
it-seemed to-the emperor best to-have-counseled the great
δομέστικον, καὶ δὴ τῆς πρὸς τὰς Σέρρας φερούσης
domestic and indeed the(-road) to — Serres leading
ὡς εἶχεν ἥψατο, σχεδόν τ᾽ ἐκείνων γενόμενος ἐπήξατό
as he-was he-took near both those(-places) having-come pitched
τε τὰς σκηνὰς καὶ κατ᾽ αὐτῶν ἐστρατοπεδεύσατο,
both the tents and against them encamped
οὔκουν μὲν δι᾽ ἀξιομάχου στρατοῦ, οὐ γὰρ ηὐμοίρει
not-then indeed through fit-for-battle army not for was-well-off
τότε τοσούτων, καθὼς εἰρήκαμεν, στρατηγίᾳ δὲ καὶ
then with-so-many as we-have-said by-generalship but and
μεθοδεύμασιν ἀπεπειρᾶτο τοῦ ἄστεος. ἐπεὶ δ᾽ αἱ Σέρραι
by-methods made-trial-of the town since and — Serres
πάλαι μὲν ὑπῆρχε πόλις μεγίστη, ὁ δὲ Βούλγαρος
long-ago indeed were city very-great the but Bulgarian
Ἰωάννης μετὰ τῶν λοιπῶν Μακεδονικῶν πόλεων καὶ
John with the other Macedonian cities also
ταύτην πολιορκῆσας κατήρειψεν, ὡς κώμη τότε ἐτύγχανε,
this having-besieged demolished as village then it-happened
τῆς ἀκροπόλεως μόνης περιτετειχισμένης καὶ ηὐτρεπισμένης
the citadel alone walled-around and prepared
δέξασθαι πόλεμον· ἧς φύλαξ ἦν ἀνὴρ Βούλγαρος
to-receive war of-which guard was man Bulgarian
Δραγωτᾶς τὴν κλῆσιν, ἐς Μελενίκον τὰς οἰκήσεις
Dragotas the name at Melenikon the dwellings
ποιούμενος. ἐπεὶ γοῦν ἡ κάτω πόλις Σερρῶν ἀτείχιστος
making when then the lower city of-Serres unwalled
ἦν — λίθοις γὰρ καὶ μόνοις ἀσβέστου δίχα καὶ μὴ
was with-stones for and only of-lime without and not
ἀνηγμένοις εἰς ὕψος τὰ τεθραυσμένα τάχα περιεφράγνυτο
raised to height the broken(-parts) supposedly was-fenced

— τοὺς ἐπὶ μισθῷ τοῖς στρατιώταις δουλεύοντας,
the(-ones) for pay to-the soldiers serving
οὓς καὶ Τζουλούκωνας ἡ χυδαία γλῶττα κατονομάζει,
whom also Tzouloukones the vulgar tongue names
συναθροίσας ὁ βασιλεὺς κρατῆσαι ταύτης ἠρέθιζεν,
having-gathered the emperor to-master it urged
ἐπεὶ καὶ τῶν ἀναγκαίων ἐσπάνιζον· οἳ καὶ οἴκοθεν
since also of-the necessities they-lacked who also from-home
ἐκινοῦντο πρὸς τὸ εὐπορῆσαι τῶν χρειωδῶν. ὁρῶντες δὲ
were-moved toward the to-be-supplied of-the needful(-things) seeing and
καὶ τὴν χώραν εὐεπίβατον, τὰ τόξα λαβόντες, ἔτι δὲ
also the place easy-to-attack the bows having-taken still and
καὶ τὰς σπάθας, καί τινας σανίδας ἐξαυτοσχεδιάσαντες
also the swords and some planks having-improvised
ὡς ἀσπίδας καὶ ταύτας προβεβλημένοι, τὸ ἀρεϊκὸν
as shields and these having-held-before the warlike
ἀλαλάξαντες χωροῦσι κατὰ τῆς χώρας αὐτοβοεί, καὶ
having-raised-the-war-cry go against the place at-the-first-shout and
ἐν οὐ πολλαῖς ὥραις ἐντὸς ἐγένοντο. σκυλεύουσι γοῦν
in not many hours within were they-despoil then
τὰ παρευρεθέντα. οἱ δέ γε ἐντός, ὅσοι
the(-things) found the(-ones) and at-least within as-many-as
μὴ ἐπεφθάκεισαν εἰς τὴν ἀκρόπολιν ἀναδραμεῖν, ἱκέται
not had-managed to the citadel to-run-up suppliants
πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα ἐξήεσαν. ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁ κρατῶν τοῦ
to the emperor went-out when and the holding the
ἄστεος Δραγωτᾶς τὴν κάτω χώραν εἶδεν ἁλοῦσαν,
town Dragotas the lower place saw taken
ἀνὴρ Βούλγαρος καὶ ἥκιστα πεπαιδευμένος ἄστυ χρονίως
man Bulgarian and least educated town long
διαφυλάττειν, μαθὼν δὲ καὶ τὸν τοῦ δεσπότου αὐτοῦ
to-guard having-learned and also the of-the master his

θάνατον, τύχῃ ἀγαθῇ οὐ διὰ μακροῦ καρτερήσας
death by-fortune good not for long having-held-out
διαπρεσβεύεται πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα. καὶ τὸ μὲν ἄστυ εὐθὺς
sends-embassy to the emperor and the indeed town at-once
τὸν βασιλέα ἐφήμιζεν, ἁλουργὸν δὲ χλαῖναν ὁ Δραγωτᾶς
the emperor acclaimed purple and cloak — Dragotas
χρυσίῳ συνυφασμένην ἐνεδέδυτο καὶ στατήρων πλῆθος
with-gold interwoven put-on and of-staters multitude
χρυσῶν ἐδέδεκτο. ὑποσχέσεις γοῦν ὑπὲρ τοῦ Μελενίκου
golden received promises then about — Melenikon
λαμπρὰς πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα ἐποιεῖτο, μᾶλλον καὶ ὑπεράγαν
splendid to the emperor made rather and exceedingly
ἀληθεῖς.
true
Πάντα γοῦν ταῦτα πρὸς τοῦ βασιλέως λαβὼν ὁ 44
all then these-things from the emperor having-received —
Δραγωτᾶς καὶ ὡς δέλεαρ ὑποβεβλημένος ἀπῄει. ἐπεὶ
Dragotas and as bait having-been-laid went-off when
δὲ φθάσοι ἐς Μελενίκον, πάντα προῦπτα τοῖς ἐποίκοις
and he-reached to Melenikon all clear to-the inhabitants
ποιεῖται καὶ σφᾶς αὐτοὺς διεγείρει προδοῦναι τὸ ἄστυ τῷ
makes and them themselves rouses to-betray the town to-the
βασιλεῖ, ἐν τῷ φανερῷ μὲν οὐ ταῦτα λέγων, κρύφα
emperor in the open indeed not these-things saying secretly
δὲ τοῖς πλείστοις περὶ τούτου κοινολογούμενος. ἐπεὶ
but with-the most about this conferring when
δὲ ὁ τὴν ἡγεμονίαν διέπων τοῦ ἄστεος ὁ Λιτοβόης
and the the command managing of-the town — Litoboes
Νικόλαος κατάνοσος ἦν καὶ τῇ κλίνῃ ταῖς τῶν ποδῶν
Nikolaos very-ill was and to-the bed by-the of-the feet
ἀλγηδόσι προσπεπατταλευμένος, ἐλευθέρως εἶχον οἱ πάντες
pains nailed freely were-able the all

διαπράττεσθαι σφίσι τὰ βουληθά. ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ ὁ
to-accomplish for-themselves the(-things) wished when and also —
Μαγκλαβίτης Νικόλαος εἷς ἦν τῶν ἐπιφανεστέρων ἐν
Manglabites Nikolaos one was of-the more-conspicuous among
τοῖς τοῦ Μελενίκου οἰκήτορσιν, ἀνὴρ δραστήριος καὶ δεινὸς
the — of-Melenikon inhabitants man energetic and clever
καιρικαῖς περιπετείαις συμμεταβάλλεσθαι, τὰ τοῦ
with-timely reversals to-change-along the(-plans) —
Δραγωτᾶ φωράσας καὶ γνούς, ὡς δυνηθείη ἂν τὰ
of-Dragotas having-detected and having-known that he-could — the(-things)
ὑπεσχημένα τῷ βασιλεῖ διαπράξασθαι, τοῦ πλήθους τὸ
promised to-the emperor to-accomplish of-the multitude the
πλεῖον ὑπαγαγών, τοῦ κρύφα λέγειν ἀποστὰς ἐς
greater-part having-won-over from-the secretly to-speak having-left-off to
τὸ φανερὸν τοῖς πᾶσιν ὑπέθετο τὰ συνοίσοντα,
the open to-the all proposed the(-things) to-be-of-advantage
εἰρηκὼς ὡς ‘ἡμῖν μὲν ἐγένετο προσταλαιπωρῆσαι τῇ
having-said that to-us indeed it-happened to-endure-hardship-for the
τοῦ παιδὸς τοῦ Καλιμάνου ἀρχῇ, καὶ ἦν πρὸς ἐλπίδος
of-the boy — of-Kaliman rule and it-was within hope
ἀνδρωθῆναί τε τοῦτον καὶ πρὸς αὐτοῦ τὰς ἀμοιβὰς
to-come-to-manhood both him and from him the rewards
τῆς κακοπαθείας ἀντιλαβεῖν εἰς ἡλικίαν ἐλθόντος, ὅτε
of-the hardship to-receive-in-return to age having-come when
διακρῖναι δύναιτ’ ἄν τις ἀπὸ φαύλου ἄνδρα καλόν.
to-distinguish could — one from worthless man good
ἐπεὶ δὲ τούτου κακούργῳ τύχῃ ἡμάρτομεν, πρόκειται
since and of-this by-wicked fortune we-missed lies-before
δὲ ἡμῖν βρεφύλλιον ἄλλο εἰς τὴν τῶν Βουλγάρων
and us babe another to the of-the Bulgarians
ἀρχήν, παντὸς ἂν ἀνοηταίνοντος χείρους φανείημεν,
rule than-every-one — being-foolish worse we-would-appear

εἰ πάλιν πρὸς δυσπραγίας ἄλλας αὐτοὺς ἐπιδοίημεν,
if again to misfortunes other ourselves we-should-give-over
ἀδέσποτοι τὸν πάντα βίον διατελεῖν αἱρούμενοι, ὑφ' οὗ
masterless the all life to-continue choosing by which
πολλά τε καὶ μείζω τὰ δεινὰ φύεται. ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ
many both and greater the terrible(-things) grow but since
βασιλεὺς ἡμῖν ὁ τῶν Ῥωμαίων προσήγγισε, δεῖ
emperor to-us the of-the Romans has-drawn-near it-is-necessary
αὐτῷ ἑαυτοὺς ἐγχειρίσασθαι, δεσπότῃ πιστῷ καὶ εἰδότι
to-him ourselves to-hand-over master faithful and knowing
ἄνδρα ἠδὲ κακὸν ἠδὲ καὶ ἐσθλόν, καὶ δίκαιον ἐν
man both bad and also noble and just among
ἡμῖν ἔκπαλαι σχόντι. ὅ τε γὰρ ἡμέτερος χῶρος τῇ
us of-old having-had the both for our region to-the
τῶν Ῥωμαίων προσήκει ἀρχῇ — πλεονεκτικώτερον
of-the Romans belongs rule more-greedily
γὰρ οἱ Βούλγαροι τοῖς πράγμασι χρησάμενοι καὶ τοῦ
for the Bulgarians the affairs having-handled also —
Μελενίκου γεγένηνται ἐγκρατεῖς — ἡμεῖς δὲ πάντες
of-Melenikon have-become masters we and all
καὶ ἐκ Φιλιππουπόλεως ὁρμώμεθα, καθαροὶ τὸ γένος
also from Philippopolis set-out pure the race
Ῥωμαῖοι. ἄλλως τε καὶ ὁ τῶν Ῥωμαίων βασιλεὺς
Romans otherwise both and the of-the Romans emperor
ἀληθῶς καὶ ἐν ἡμῖν δικαιοῦται, καὶ εἰ Βουλγάροις
truly also among us is-justified even if to-Bulgarians
προσήκοιμεν· ὁ γὰρ υἱὸς τούτου καὶ βασιλεὺς Θεόδωρος
we-belonged the for son his and emperor Theodore
τῷ βασιλεῖ τῶν Βουλγάρων τῷ Ἀσὰν κεκήδευτο, καὶ
to-the emperor of-the Bulgarians — to-Asan was-married-into and
νῦν ἡ τοῦ βασιλέως τοῦ Ἀσὰν θυγάτηρ ἡ σύζυγος τοῦ
now the of-the emperor — of-Asan daughter the wife of-the

τοιούτου βασιλέως δέσποινα Ῥωμαίων ὀνομάζεταί τε καὶ
such emperor lady of-Romans is-named both and
ἐστί. τούτων οὖν ἁπάντων χάριν τὰ πολλὰ τῶν
is of-these then all for-the-sake the much of-the(-things)
λεγομένων καταλιπόντας ἐπ᾽ αὐτῷ χρὴ ἰέναι καὶ
said having-left to him it-is-necessary to-go and
τοὺς αὐχένας ὑποκλῖναι τῷ τῆς δουλείας ζυγῷ· χρηστὸς
the necks to-bow to-the of-the slavery yoke kind
γὰρ ὁ ζυγὸς τῶν φρονίμων βασιλέων καὶ γηραιῶν,
for the yoke of-the wise emperors and old
καὶ πολλῷ κουφότερος τῶν ἔτι διατελούντων ἐν
and by-much lighter than-the(-ones) still continuing among
μείραξι.᾽
youths
Ταῦτ᾽ εἰρηκὼς πέπεικε πάντας ἀπονητὶ καὶ πολλῶν ἄτερ
these-things having-said persuaded all without-toil and many without
πραγμάτων γενέσθαι τοῦ βασιλέως. καὶ δὴ πρέσβεις
troubles to-become the emperor's and indeed envoys
τινὰς τῶν συνεποίκων στείλαντες, τάχα μὲν κρύφα,
some of-the fellow-inhabitants having-sent perhaps indeed secretly
μᾶλλον δὲ γινωσκομένους τοῖς πλείοσι, συμβιβάσεις μετὰ
rather but known to-the more agreements with
τοῦ βασιλέως πεποίηνται. χρυσόβουλλος γοῦν τῷ βασιλεῖ
the emperor made golden-bull then by-the emperor
τῶν ᾐτημένων σφίσι περιληπτικὸς γεγενημένος καὶ
of-the(-things) asked by-them comprehensive having-been-made and
δεδομένος τοῖς πρέσβεσι τοῖς τοῦ Μελενίκου ἀποσταλῆναι
given to-the envoys to-the — of-Melenikon to-be-sent
προσετάχθη οἰκήτορσι. καὶ οἳ μετ᾽ οὐ πολὺ ὁμοθυμαδὸν
was-ordered inhabitants and who after not much with-one-mind
πάντες συνειλεγμένοι, ὅσοι τε τῶν προυχόντων,
all gathered as-many-as both of-the leading-men

ὅσοι τῶν ἐν στρατείᾳ κατειλεγμένων καὶ ὅσοι
as-many-as of-the(-ones) in military-service enrolled and as-many-as
κρείττους ἄλλως τῶν οἰκητόρων, πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα
better otherwise of-the inhabitants to the emperor
ἀφίκοντο, σκηνούμενον περὶ τόπον Βαλαβίσδαν οὕτω πως
arrived encamping about place Balabisda thus somehow
ἐπονομαζόμενον, ἄνδρες εὐσταλεῖς τε καὶ ἔντιμοι κἀκ
named men well-dressed both and honored and-from
μόνης θέας αἰδοῦς καὶ τιμῆς ἄξιοι, ὑπὲρ πεντακοσίους
only sight of-respect and of-honor worthy over five-hundred
τυγχάνοντες· οὓς αὐτὸς εἰρήκειν ἰδών· ‘ποία ὁπλομαχία
being whom I-myself I-had-said having-seen what fighting-in-arms
ἡμῖν αὐτοὺς παρεστήσατο; ἢ πόσαι φάλαγγες ἱππέων
for-us them presented or how-many phalanxes of-horsemen
τῶν τοσούτων περιεγένοντο; ἀλλ’ ἐν τῷ κρείττονι ῥᾷστα
of-the so-many overcame but in the better(-power) easiest
καὶ τὰ μικροῦ δεῖν ἀνεπιχείρητα, κἀντεῦθεν δῆλον
also the(-things) of-little to-lack unattemptable and-hence clear
ὡς ἀληθές ἐστι τὸ τῷ ἀποστόλῳ Παύλῳ εἰρημένον,
that true is the(-thing) by-the apostle Paul said
‘οὐ τοῦ τρέχοντος οὐδὲ τοῦ διώκοντος, ἀλλὰ τοῦ
not of-the(-one) running nor of-the(-one) pursuing but of-the
εὐδοκοῦντος θεοῦ.’ τῷ τοι καὶ τὸν στρατηγὸν οὐ
being-well-pleased God therefore indeed also the general not
δεῖ πάμπαν ἐπαινεῖν οὔτε μὴν ψέγειν. πολλὰ
it-is-necessary wholly to-praise nor indeed to-blame many(-things)
γάρ τινες διαγωνισάμενοι σπουδαίως τε καὶ συντόνως,
for some having-contended earnestly both and vigorously
δραστικώτερον τοῖς παροῦσι χρησάμενοι, μικρὸν ἢ οὐδὲν
more-effectively the present(-means) having-used little or nothing
κατωρθώσαντο, ἔνιοι δὲ καὶ ἐσφάλλοντο πλεῖστα· ἕτεροι
achieved some and also failed in-most(-things) others

δὲ δεξιᾶς ἠὐμοιρηκότες τύχης, ἀμελετήτως περὶ τὰ ἔργα
and of-right having-had-a-share fortune without-practice about the deeds
χωροῦντες μεγάλων τροπαίων ἐγένοντο αὐτουργοί, οἷόν
going of-great trophies became authors such-as
τι ξυνέβη τῷ τότε καὶ τῷ βασιλεῖ Ἰωάννῃ.
something happened at-the then(-time) also to-the emperor John
πολλῶν γὰρ ἄστεων καὶ χώρων πολλῶν ἐγεγόνει
of-many for towns and lands many had-become
δεσπότης ἐν ἀκαρεῖ, μή τινος πολέμου γεγενημένου
master in an-instant not any war having-happened
μηδέ τινος πεσόντος ἐν μάχῃ μηδὲ χυθέντος αἵματος
nor any having-fallen in battle nor shed blood
μηδὲ ξίφους κατορχησαμένου σώματος· ἀλλ' ἡμέρως
nor sword having-danced-over body but gently
καὶ γαληνῶς ὥσπερ τινὸς κλήρου πατρόθεν τούτῳ
and calmly as-if of-some inheritance from-father to-him
προσήκοντος ἀνιδιτὶ τῶν τοιούτων ἁπάντων κατῆρξε.
belonging without-sweat of-the such all he-took-control
Στενίμαχος γὰρ καὶ Τζέπαινα, καὶ ὅσα ἦν τῷ
Stenimachos for and Tzepaina and as-many-as were to-the
τῆς Ῥοδόπης ὄρει παρακείμενα πολίχνιά τε καὶ
— *of-Rhodope mountain lying-beside small-towns both and*
κωμοπόλεις, ὑπόφορα τούτῳ γεγένηνται, καὶ ὅρος αὐτῷ
market-towns tributary to-him became and boundary for-him
τε καὶ τοῖς Βουλγάροις Ἔβρος ἦν ποταμός. ἐκ δὲ
both and for-the Bulgarians Hebros was river from and
τοῦ πρὸς βορρᾶν μέρους Στούμπιόν τε καὶ Χοτοβὸς
the toward north part Stoumpion both and Chotobos
ὀχυρὰ ἄττα φρούρια καὶ χῶρος ὁ Βελεβουσδίου ὑπὸ
strong some fortresses and region the of-Belebousdion under
τοῦ βασιλέως ἦν, Σκόπιά τε καὶ Βελεσός· καὶ μέχρι
the emperor was Skopia both and Belesos and as-far-as

Πριλάπου καὶ τῶν Πελαγονίας χωρίων, Νευστάπολίς
Prilapos and the of-Pelagonia places Neustapolis
τε καὶ Πρόσακος, τὰ πάντα ὑπῆρξε τῷ βασιλεῖ
both and Prosakos the all were to-the emperor
ὑποχείρια. καὶ σπονδαὶ ἐπὶ τούτοις τῶν Βουλγάρων
subject and treaties upon these of-the Bulgarians
τῷ βασιλεῖ ἐγεγόνεισαν, τοῖς τοιούτοις καὶ μόνοις
with-the emperor had-been-made with-the such and only
ἀρκεῖσθαι τοῦτον καὶ μὴ περαιτέρω κατεπεμβαίνειν.
to-be-content him and not further to-trespass
καὶ ταῦτα μὲν οὕτως ἔσχον τὸν τρόπον, ἐγὼ δὲ
and these-things indeed so had the manner I and
αὐτὸς ἐν τοῖς ἐπιστολιμαίοις τῶν λόγων ὑπούργουν,
myself in the epistolary of-the letters served
ἑκάστῳ τῶν ἁλισκομένων ἄστεών τε καὶ χωρῶν καὶ
for-each of-the being-taken towns both and lands and
γραφὴν ἐγχαράττων βασιλικήν· ἔθος γὰρ τοῦτο παλαιὸν
writing engraving imperial custom for this old
τοῖς βασιλεῦσι Ῥωμαίων, δῆλα τοῖς μακρόθεν διὰ
for-the emperors of-Romans clear to-the(-ones) far-off through
γραμμάτων ποιεῖν τὰ σφῶν αὐτῶν κατορθώματα καὶ
letters to-make the of-themselves themselves successes and
πρὸς ἡδονὴν ἐπεγείρειν, ἧς δὴ καὶ οὗτοι διὰ τῶν
to joy to-rouse in-which indeed also these through the
ἔργων μεταλαγχάνουσιν.
deeds share
Ἐπεὶ γοῦν οὕτω ταῦτα διεπράχθη τῷ βασιλεῖ, πολλῆς 45
when then thus these-things were-accomplished for-the emperor of-much
μὲν ἡδονῆς αἴτια τούτῳ γεγενημένα, οὐχ ἧττον δὲ καὶ
indeed pleasure causes to-him having-become not less and also
πᾶσι Ῥωμαίοις αὔξησίν τινα κατιδοῦσι τοῦ κράτους καὶ
to-all Romans increase some having-seen of-the might and

πλατυσμὸν τῆς ἀρχῆς, ἦν μὲν πρὸς βουλήσεως
broadening of-the rule it-was indeed according-to wish
τῷ βασιλεῖ μνήσασθαι νόστου καὶ πρὸς τὴν ἕω
for-the emperor to-be-mindful of-return and to the east
ἐπαναζεῦξαι — καὶ γὰρ καὶ ὁ καιρὸς τοῦτο ἀπῄτει·
to-march-back also for also the season this demanded
μὴν γὰρ παρερρύη Ὀκτώβριος, καὶ περί που τὰ
month for had-flowed-past October and about somewhere the
μέσα τούτου διήρχετο ὁ Νοέμβριος — ἀλλά τις λόγος
middle of-it was-passing — November but some account
χρηστὸς καὶ πάνυ ὠφέλιμος ἐνεπόδιζε τὴν ὁρμήν. ἡ
good and very useful hindered the impulse —
γὰρ Θεσσαλονίκη, καθώσπερ προϊστορήσαμεν, τὸν τοῦ
for Thessalonica as we-told-before the —
Θεοδώρου υἱὸν τὸν Δημήτριον ἐγνώριζέ τε δεσπότην
of-Theodore son — Demetrios recognized both as-despot
καὶ κατωνόμαζε· δεσπότης γὰρ ἦν καὶ πρὸς τοῦ
and named despot for he-was also by the
βασιλέως τετιμημένος. ἐπεὶ δέ, ὡς προπεφθάκαμεν περὶ
emperor honored since and as we-anticipated about
τούτου ἐρεῖν, ἀτάσθαλον ἦν τὸ μειράκιον καὶ παιδιαῖς
this to-say reckless was the youth and with-games
ἐνσχολάζειν προσῆκον καὶ μειρακίων ἀθύρμασι, μή τοι
to-be-occupied fitting and of-youths with-toys not surely
γε ἀνδρῶν προϊστασθαι συνετῶν καὶ πολιτείας κατάρχειν
at-least men to-lead sensible and polity to-govern
καὶ νομίμως ἐπιστατεῖν, ἐπιβουλὴν κατ᾽ αὐτοῦ τινες
and lawfully to-preside plot against him some
ἐξαρτύουσιν, ὧν οἱ ὀνομαστοί τε καὶ γνώριμοι
contrive of-whom the(-ones) named both and known
Σπαρτηνὸς ἦσαν καὶ Καμπανός, ὁ Ἰατρόπουλός τε
Spartenos were and Kampanos — Iatropoulos both

καὶ ὁ Κουτζουλάτος, οἱ δὲ τῶν ἐπισήμων ὅ τε
and — Koutzoulatos the(-ones) and of-the distinguished — both
Μιχαὴλ ὁ Λάσκαρις καὶ ὁ Τζυρίθων, ὃν καὶ μέγαν
Michael the Laskaris and — Tzyrithon whom also great
χαρτουλάριον ὁ βασιλεὺς Ἰωάννης τετίμηκεν. ἄλλοι δὲ οἱ
chartoularios the emperor John honored others and the
τοῦ σκέμματος κοινωνοὶ οὔπω δῆλοι, ὡς αὐτοὶ σφίσι
of-the scheme sharers not-yet clear as themselves for-themselves
τοῦ πράγματος σὺν τῷ πλήθει γεγόνασιν, ἀλλ᾽ ἔμειναν
of-the matter with the multitude became but remained
ἀκατάγνωστοι τοῖς πλείοσιν. ἕνα γοῦν τούτων τῶν
unsuspected by-the most one then of-these the(-ones)
εἰρημένων, τὸν Καμπανόν, οἱ πάντες συσκευασάμενοι εἰς
said — Kampanos the all having-prepared to
τὸν αὐτοκράτορα Ἰωάννην ἐκπέμπουσι πραγματείας μὲν
the autocrat John send-out of-business indeed
προφάσεως χάριν, τῇ δ᾽ ἀληθείᾳ κοινοῦ χρυσοβούλλου
pretext for-the-sake in-the but truth common golden-bull
ἐπευμοιρῆσαι, τῶν ἀνέκαθεν προσαρμοσάντων Θεσσαλονίκῃ
to-obtain of-the from-of-old having-belonged to-Thessalonica
ἐθίμων τε καὶ δικαίων περιεκτικοῦ καὶ τῆς σφῶν
customs both and rights comprehensive and of-the their
ἐλευθερίας παρεκτικοῦ. ὁ μὲν οὖν βασιλεὺς πάντα
freedom granting the indeed then emperor all(-things)
τε τούτοις κατὰ σκοπὸν ἐπεπράχει καὶ δωρεῶν
both for-these according-to aim had-done and of-gifts
ὑποσχέσεις τοῖς ὑπηρετήσουσι τῇ πράξει καὶ ἐγγράφους
promises to-the(-ones) about-to-serve the deed also in-writing
τίθησι.
sets

Ταῦτα δὴ ἐς τὸ ἀσφαλὲς οἰκονομήσας ὁ βασιλεὺς
these-things indeed to the safe having-arranged the emperor
ἀπάρας τῶν Μελενίκου χωρίων περὶ τὴν Θεσσαλονίκην
having-set-out from-the of-Melenikon places about — Thessalonica
ἐφέρετο, πρότερον ἐξαποστείλας πρέσβεις εἰς τὸν Δημήτριον,
was-borne before having-sent-out envoys to — Demetrios
ὡς ἂν κατὰ τὰς αὐτοῦ ὑποθήκας ἀφίκοιτο εἰς αὐτὸν
that — according-to the his counsels he-should-come to him
καὶ ἀφοσιώσοι τὸ ὄφλημα· οὕτω γὰρ συνέθετο καὶ
and should-discharge the debt so for he-had-agreed and
κατώμοσεν. ὁ δὲ — οὐδὲ γὰρ εἶχε νοεῖν οἴκοθεν —
sworn he but not-even for he-could to-think from-himself
τοῖς ἐπιβούλοις συμβούλοις χρώμενος οἴκοι καταμένειν
the plotting counselors using at-home to-remain
ἐπείθετο· σκευωρίαν γὰρ ἔφασκον εἶναι κατ᾽ αὐτοῦ
was-persuaded plot for they-said to-be against him
τὴν τοῦ βασιλέως μετάκλησιν. κοῦφος δὲ ὢν οὗτος
the of-the emperor summons light and being this(-man)
τὰς φρένας τοῖς αὐτῶν λόγοις συνεφέρετο, ὅποι καὶ
the wits with-the their words was-carried-along wherever also
νεύοιεν. ξυνέβη δὲ κἀν τούτοις, ὅπερ ὡς ἥδυσμά
they-should-incline it-happened and also-in these which as relish
τι παραθήσω τοῖς λόγοις. τὸν Καμπανὸν — ἕνα
something I-will-set-beside the accounts — Kampanos one
δὲ τοῦτον τῶν συνιστόρων τοῦ δόλου προείπομεν εἶναι
and this(-man) of-the accomplices of-the guile we-said-before to-be
— τὰ οὐχ ὑπὲρ Δημητρίου φρονοῦντα ἀπήγγειλάν
the(-things) not for Demetrios thinking reported
τινες, ἐπεὶ καὶ ἐκ βασιλέως ἐπανέζευξε. καὶ ὃς παρέστη
some since also from emperor he-returned and who stood-by
τῷ Δημητρίῳ καὶ κατηγορεῖτο πρὸς τῶν ἀληθῆ
— Demetrios and was-accused by the(-ones) true(-things)

κατ᾽ αὐτοῦ φασκόντων, ὡς ‘ῥαδιουργῶν κρύφα καὶ
against him saying that intriguing secretly also
ἀποπειρᾶται τοῦ λαοῦ καὶ γραφαὶ πρὸς αὐτοῦ τῷ
he-tests the people and writings from him to-the
βασιλεῖ πέμπονται καὶ λόγοι μυστηριώδεις διαμηνύονται.’
emperor are-sent and words secret are-communicated
καὶ ἦν πρὸς τῇ τοιαύτῃ ἐξετάσει ὁ Καμπανός. ὁ γοῦν
and was at the such examination — Kampanos — then
Σπαρτηνός, συμμύστης ὢν τῶν πραττομένων, περὶ
Spartenos fellow-initiate being of-the(-things) being-done about
τῶν τοιούτων μεμαθηκὼς τάχος ἐκεῖσε φέρεται, καὶ ὡς
the such(-things) having-learned quickly there is-borne and as
εἶχεν ἄσθματος καὶ σπουδῆς ‘τί φησι ‘περὶ τοῦδε τοῦ
he-had of-panting and of-haste what says about this the
ἀλιτηρίου κατηγοροῦσί τινες, δέσποτα, ὃς εἰ ἁλῴη
wretch accuse some master who if he-should-be-caught
τοιοῦτος, πολλῶν θανάτων κριθείη ἂν ἄξιος;’ καὶ ὁ
such of-many deaths would-be-judged — worthy and —
Δημήτριος — ἐθάρρει γὰρ μάλα τούτῳ ὡς πιστῷ καὶ
Demetrios trusted for very this(-man) as faithful and
πάνυ τοῦτον εὐνούστατον κατὰ τὸν κωμικὸν ὄντα εἰ
very him most-loyal according-to the comic(-poet) being if
καὶ μὴ κλεπτίστατον ἤγητο — ‘προδότην τοῦτον,
even not most-thievish had-considered traitor this(-man)
Σπαρτηνέ, φασὶν εἶναι οἱ τοῦτον διώκοντες.’ ὁ δὲ
Spartenos they-say to-be the(-ones) him prosecuting he and
παίει τὸν Καμπανὸν κατὰ τῆς σιαγόνος τῷ καρπῷ,
strikes — Kampanos on the jaw with-the wrist
σφόδρα χρησάμενος τῇ βολῇ, καὶ λαβόμενος τούτου τῆς
violently having-used the blow and having-seized his the
γένυος ‘ἐγὼ αὐτόν’ φησιν ‘ἐν τοῖς οἴκοι ἀπαγαγών,
beard I him says in the(-rooms) at-home having-led-away

δέσποτα, ἐτασμοῖς ἐκπνεύσας τὸ πρῶτον, πάντα τοῦτον
master by-torments breathing-out the first all this(-man)
καταναγκάσω ἔκφορα ποιῆσαι τὰ κρύβδην τούτῳ
I-will-compel manifest to-make the(-things) secretly by-him
ῥᾳδιουργούμενα.' ταῦτ' εἶπε, καὶ ὡς εἶχε τάχους ἐς τὴν
being-intrigued these-things he-said and as he-had of-speed to the
οἰκίαν ἀπῄει.
house went-off
Τὸν μὲν οὖν Καμπανὸν τὸ ἀπὸ τοῦδε κλίνη εἶχε
— indeed then Kampanos the from this(-time) bed had
καὶ στιβὰς ὑψηλὴ πρὸς ἀνάπαυσιν καὶ τὰ εἰς
and mattress high for rest and the(-things) for
τρυφὴν μᾶλλον ἐφευρημένα, οἷς καὶ μᾶλλον χαίρουσιν
luxury rather devised in-which also rather rejoice
ἄνθρωποι οἱ τοιαῦτα μεμελετηκότες διαπράττεσθαι
men the(-ones) such having-practiced to-accomplish
πράγματα. ὡς δὲ καί τινες ἔφασαν, ἀσκὸν διαφυσῆσας
affairs as and also some said wineskin having-blown-up
ὁ Σπαρτηνὸς καὶ πληρώσας τοῦ πνεύματος, εἶτα
— Spartenos and having-filled with-the breath then
δεσμεύσας ὡς ἐντὸς ἅπαν ἐναποληφθῆναι πνεῦμα μή
having-tied so-that within all to-be-shut-in breath not
τινος οὔσης τούτῳ τῆς ἐκροῆς, ἀπαιωρήσας ἔτυπτε
any being for-it of-the outflow having-hung-up beat
ῥάβδοις τάχα τὸν Καμπανόν, ἐτάζων ἀποκαλύψαι τὰ
with-rods supposedly — Kampanos questioning to-reveal the
κρύφα. ἀσκὸς δὲ ἦν, οὐ Καμπανός, ὁ τυπτόμενος.
secret(-things) wineskin and was not Kampanos the(-one) being-beaten
ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡ ἀρκοῦσα ὥρα παρήει ἡ καὶ ἄξιον ἐτασμὸν
when and the sufficient hour passed the(-one) also worthy questioning
δεδυνημένη ποιήσασθαι καὶ ἔκπυστον θεῖναι καὶ τὸ ἐν
having-been-able to-make and disclosed to-set also the in

μυχοῖς βαθυτάτοις ἐγκείμενον ἄρρητον, ὡς εἶχε ποδῶν ὁ
recesses deepest lying unspeakable as he-had of-feet —
Σπαρτηνὸς ἀφίκετο πρὸς τὸν Δημήτριον καί οἱ φησι·
Spartenos came to — Demetrios and to-him says
‘δέσποτα, ὅρκῳ σε πιστώσω τὸ πρᾶγμα· μὰ τὸν σὸν καὶ
master by-oath you I-will-assure the matter by the your and
ἡμῶν ἁπάντων Δημήτριον, τὸν κηδεμόνα τῆς Θεσσαλονίκης
of-us all Demetrios the guardian — of-Thessalonica
καὶ πολιοῦχον’ — οὗτος δὲ ὁ ὅρκος παρὰ Θεσσαλονικεῦσι
and city-protector this and the oath among Thessalonians
πλέον τῶν ἄλλων ἰσχύει ὅρκων — ‘τοιοῦτός ἐστιν
more than-the other prevails oaths such is
ὁ Καμπανὸς ὁποῖός ἐστιν ὁ Σπαρτηνός, καὶ οὕτω
— Kampanos as is — Spartenos and so
διάκειται περί σε καθά γε δὴ καὶ ὁ Σπαρτηνός, ὃν
is-disposed toward you as at-least indeed also — Spartenos whom
ἁπάντων ἀνθρώπων πλέον σε φιλοῦντα ἐπέγνωκας.’ οὕτως
of-all men more you loving you-have-recognized thus
ὁ Σπαρτηνὸς τὴν μέλλουσαν φωραθῆναι ῥᾳδιουργίαν
— Spartenos the about-to be-detected intrigue
οἰκονομικῶς διεσκέδασεν.
managingly scattered
Ὁ μὲν οὖν βασιλεὺς Ἰωάννης ἀπάρας τὰ στρατεύματα
the indeed then emperor John having-set-out the armies
ἐπὶ τὴν Θεσσαλονίκην ἐξ ὀρθοῦ χωρεῖ καὶ περὶ ταύτην
to — Thessalonica from straight goes and about it
ἐστρατοπεδεύσατο. πολιορκῆσαι μὲν γὰρ οὐκ ἦν αὐτῷ
encamped to-besiege indeed for not was for-him
— οὐ γὰρ ἀρκούσας εἶχε τὰς ἐπὶ τούτῳ δυνάμεις
not for sufficient he-had the for this forces
— πρεσβείας δὲ ἐποίει καὶ ἐζήτει ἐξελθεῖν πρὸς αὐτὸν
embassies but he-made and asked to-come-out to him

τὸν Δημήτριον, καθὼς ἦν ὀμωμοσμένον αὐτῷ, ἔτι δὲ
— *Demetrios as it-was sworn to-him still and*
ποιῆσαι καὶ ἀγορὰν ἔξω τῆς Θεσσαλονίκης, ὡς ἂν
to-make also market outside — Thessalonica so-that —
ἔχοιεν ὠνεῖσθαι τὰ χρειώδη τὰ στρατεύματα. ὁ δὲ
might-be-able to-buy the necessities the armies he but
τοῖς ἐπιβούλοις συμβούλοις χρώμενος οὐδέν τι τῶν
with-the plotting counselors dealing nothing at-all of-the
τοιούτων ποιῆσαι παρεχωρεῖτο. πάνυ δὲ ὀλίγων ἡμερῶν
such(-things) to-do conceded very and few days
παραδραμουσῶν, ὀλίγου τινὸς στρατεύματος πλησίον
having-run-past small some army near
ἱσταμένου τῆς μικρᾶς πύλης τῆς παρὰ τῇ θαλάσσῃ
standing the small gate the(-one) by the sea
ἐπονομαζομένης διὰ τὸ μὴ ἀπροόπτως ἐξελθεῖν τινας
named because-of the not without-warning to-come-out some
τῶν τῆς πόλεως καί τινας λυμαίνεσθαι τῶν ἐκ
of-the(-ones) of-the city and some to-harm of-the(-ones) from
τοῦ στρατοῦ, ἐξαπίνης ἐκ ταύτης ἐγεγόνει βοή, ὡς
the army suddenly from this arose shout that
ἤνοικται ἡ πύλη παρά τινων τῶν ἐντός. καὶ τῇ
has-been-opened the gate by some of-the(-ones) within and the
βοῇ συνείπετο ἡ παραφυλάττουσα δύναμις, καὶ σύμπαν
shout followed the guarding force and whole
τε τὸ στράτευμα ὁπλισθὲν μετὰ τοῦ κρατοῦντος ἐφοίτα
both the army armed with the ruling(-one) went
καὶ ἐν ἀκαρεῖ πάντας εἶχεν ἡ Θεσσαλονίκη τοὺς
and in an-instant all had — Thessalonica the(-men)
τοῦ βασιλέως ἐντός. ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς ἔστη παρὰ τὴν
of-the emperor within the and emperor stood by the
πρὸς ἀνατολὰς βλέπουσαν πύλην τῆς πόλεως. καὶ ἡ
toward east looking gate of-the city and the

τοῦ Δημητρίου ἀδελφὴ Εἰρήνη, τοῦ Βουλγάρων Ἀσὰν
— *of-Demetrios sister Irene — of-Bulgarians of-Asan*
γαμετή, παρέστη γονυπετοῦσα καὶ ποτνιωμένη, μὴ παθεῖν
wife stood-by kneeling and imploring not to-suffer
τὸν ἀδελφὸν αὐτῆς τῶν ὀφθαλμῶν στέρησιν. ὁ δὲ
the brother her of-the eyes deprivation — and
Δημήτριος ἔφθη εἰς τὴν ἀκρόπολιν ἀναβάς. ἐγγύας
Demetrios had-anticipated to the citadel having-gone-up pledges
δὲ ἐνωμότους πρὸς τοῦ βασιλέως λαβοῦσα, ὡς οὐκ
and sworn from the emperor having-received that not
ἀπολέσει οὗτος τοὺς ὀφθαλμούς, ἀπῄει τε παρὰ τὸν
will-lose he the eyes she-went-off both to the
ἀδελφὸν καὶ πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα τοῦτον ἐξήγαγεν. ἦν
brother and to the emperor him brought-out was
δὲ φέρων οὗτος τὴν ἡλικίαν τοῦ μείρακος, προσεχῶς
and bearing this(-man) the age of-the youth closely
εἰς αὐτὴν παραγγείλας καὶ μήπω χνοάζων τὸ γένειον,
into it having-entered and not-yet downy the chin
ὡραῖος δὲ τὸ εἶδος καὶ τὴν φυήν. τετίμηκε δὲ ταύτην
handsome and the form and the stature honored and her
ὁ βασιλεύς, οἷα ἐκείνης σχηματιζόμενος τὴν ταπείνωσιν.
the emperor as of-that(-lady) assuming the humility
ὡς γὰρ ἀπέβη αὕτη τοῦ ἵππου, τηνικαῦτα καὶ ὁ
as for dismounted she from-the horse then also the
βασιλεὺς τοῦ οἰκείου ὀχήματος ἀποβὰς πεζὸς ἕστηκε
emperor from-the own vehicle having-dismounted on-foot stood
σὺν αὐτῇ. ἡ μὲν οὖν πόλις Θεσσαλονίκη οὕτως ὑπὸ
with her the indeed then city Thessalonica thus under
τὸν βασιλέα γέγονεν Ἰωάννην, μᾶλλον δὲ ὑπὸ Ῥωμαίους·
the emperor became John rather and under Romans

οἱ γὰρ αὐτὴν κρατοῦντες ἐναντιόφρονες Ῥωμαίοις
the(-ones) for it holding contrary-minded to-Romans
ἐτέλουν.
were

46 Ὀλίγας δὲ πάνυ ἡμέρας ἐν τῇ Θεσσαλονίκῃ προσκαρτερήσας
few and very days in — Thessalonica having-stayed
ὁ βασιλεύς — κατήπειγε γὰρ αὐτὸν ὁ τοῦ χειμῶνος
the emperor was-pressing for him the of-the winter
καιρός· Δεκέβριος γὰρ ἐτύγχανε μήν — ἀφεὶς ἐν
season December for happened month having-left in
αὐτῇ τὸν μέγαν δομέστικον τὸν Κομνηνὸν Ἀνδρόνικον
it the great domestic — Komnenos Andronikos
τὸν Παλαιολόγον, οὗ πολλάκις ἐμνήσθημεν, τὰ πρῶτα
the Palaiologos whom often we-have-mentioned the first(-places)
φέροντα τῶν ἐν στρατηγίαις τεταγμένων, ἄνδρα
bearing of-the(-ones) in generalships ranked man
συνετώτατον καὶ πραότατον καὶ εὖ εἰδότα καὶ μάχῃ
most-intelligent and most-gentle and well knowing both for-battle
ὁπλίσαι καὶ διευθῦναι λαὸν καὶ ἐν πολεμικοῖς καὶ εἰρηνικοῖς
to-arm and to-direct people and in warlike and peaceful
τοῖς καιροῖς, νικητὴς ἐπανέζευξεν εἰς τὴν ἕω, θαυμαζόμενος
the times victor marched-back to the east being-admired
ὑπὸ πάντων καὶ κλεϊζόμενος τῆς ταχινῆς οὕτω καὶ
by all and being-celebrated for-the swift so and
μεγίστης νίκης, οὐχ ὑπὸ τῶν οἰκείων μόνων ἀλλὰ καὶ
very-great victory not by the own only but also
ὑπὸ τῶν ἀλλοτρίων· ὑπὲρ φυσικὴν γὰρ τάξιν ἔδοξε τὸ
by the strangers above natural for order seemed the
κατόρθωμα καὶ τῶν τροπαίων τὸ ἀλλεπάλληλον, καὶ
success and of-the trophies the one-after-another and
θεοῦ μᾶλλον προνοίᾳ ἢ στρατηγικαῖς μεθόδοις ταυτὶ
of-God rather by-providence than by-strategic methods these-things

διαπράξασθαι. καταλέλοιπε δὲ καὶ εἷς τε τοῦ Μελενίκου
to-accomplish he-left and also for both — of-Melenikon
καὶ τῶν Σερρῶν καὶ τῶν περὶ αὐτὰς φυλακὴν
and — of-Serres and of-the(-places) around them guard
τὸν τοῦ εἰρημένου μεγάλου δομεστίκου πρῶτον υἱὸν τὸν
the of-the said great domestic first son —
Κομνηνὸν Μιχαήλ, ὃν μετὰ χρόνους τινὰς ἡ τῶν
Komnenos Michael whom after years some the of-the
Ῥωμαίων βασιλεία πεπλούτηκεν εἰς εὐτυχίαν ταύτης καὶ
Romans empire has-gained-as-wealth for good-fortune its and
εὐδοξίαν, ἄλλον τε ἀλλαχοῦ ἐπαφῆκεν εἰς ἀσφάλειαν τῶν
good-repute another both elsewhere he-sent for safety of-the
χωρῶν τε καὶ πόλεων, ἐπάνω δὲ πάντων τὸν μέγαν
lands both and cities above and all the great
δομέστικον, ὡς ἂν ὑπείκοιντο πάντες αὐτοῦ τοῖς
domestic so-that — might-yield all him to-the(-things)
ὑπ᾽ αὐτοῦ λεγομένοις τε καὶ προσταττομένοις. ὁ μὲν
by him said both and ordered the indeed
οὖν βασιλεὺς εἰς τὰ τῆς ἕω μέρη διαπεράσας διῆγε, καὶ
then emperor to the of-the east parts having-crossed spent-time and
τὸν Δημήτριον, ὃν τῆς Θεσσαλονικέων ἀρχῆς καθεῖλεν,
— Demetrios whom from-the of-Thessalonians rule he-had-deposed
ἐν τῷ φρουρίῳ καθείρξας τῶν Λεντιανῶν ἐτήρει. ὁ δὲ
in the fortress having-shut-up — of-Lentiana guarded the and
μέγας δομέστικος ὀλίγον ἐπιβιοὺς χρόνον καὶ καλῶς
great domestic little having-survived time and well
διαπρέψας ἐν τῇ τούτου ἀρχῇ, νοσήσας καὶ
having-distinguished-himself in the his rule having-fallen-ill and
τὴν τρίχα ἀποκαρεὶς τὸ βιοῦν ἐξεμέτρησεν· ἀπεστάλη
the hair having-been-shorn the living measured-out was-sent
δὲ ἀντ᾽ αὐτοῦ Θεόδωρος ὁ Φιλῆς διέπειν τὰ τῆς
and instead of-him Theodore the Philes to-manage the(-affairs) of-the

ἀρχῆς. ἐπεὶ δὲ ὑπὸ τὸν βασιλέα ἐγεγόνει Θεσσαλονίκη
rule when and under the emperor had-come Thessalonica
καὶ Βέρροια, τὰ ἐκεῖθεν αὐτῶν καὶ πρὸς δυσμὰς
and Berrhoia the(-places) beyond them and to west
ἀπὸ τοῦ Πλαταμῶνος ἀρχόμενα ὑπὸ τὸν δεσπότην
from — Platamon beginning under the despot
Μιχαὴλ ἐτέλουν, ἔτι τε τὰ περὶ Πελαγονίαν καὶ
Michael were still both the(-places) about Pelagonia and
Ἀχρίδα καὶ Πρίλαπον· τοὺς δὲ Βοδηνοὺς καὶ Σταρίδολα,
Ochrid and Prilapos the and Bodena and Staridola
Στροβόν τε καὶ τὰ περὶ ταῦτα ὁ τοῦ Δημητρίου
Strobos both and the(-places) around these the — of-Demetrios
πατήρ, τοῦ Μιχαὴλ δὲ θεῖος, ὁ Ἄγγελος κατεῖχε
father — of-Michael and uncle — Angelos held
Θεόδωρος.
Theodore

47 Ὁ μὲν οὖν βασιλεὺς ἐν τοῖς τοῦ Νυμφαίου παραχειμάσας,
the indeed then emperor in the(-parts) — of-Nymphaion having-wintered
ἦρος φανέντος, ὥσπερ εἰώθει, ἐξῄει ἐκεῖθεν. ἐκεχειρίαν
spring having-appeared as he-was-wont went-out thence truce
δὲ ἔχων ἐξ ἁπάντων, τοῖς πλησιάζουσιν ἄστεσι τῇ
and having from all with-the neighboring towns to-the
Κωνσταντίνου καὶ παρὰ Λατίνων κεκρατημένοις, τῇ
of-Constantine and by Latins held —
Τζουρουλῷ φημι καὶ τῇ Βιζύῃ, ἐπιθέσθαι τεθέληκεν·
Tzouroulos I-mean and — Bizye to-attack wished
ἑώρα καὶ γὰρ πάνυ τὰ τῶν Λατίνων ἠσθενημένα.
he-saw also for very the(-affairs) of-the Latins weakened
διαπεραιωθεὶς γοῦν τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον ἐν τῇ Τζουρουλῷ
having-crossed then — Hellespont at — Tzouroulos
τὸ πρῶτον ἀφίκετο. ἦν δὲ ἐντὸς τοῦ ἄστεος ἡ τοῦ
the first arrived was and within the town the of-the

βασιλέως γυναικαδέλφη Εὐδοκία, ἣν ὁ Ἀσὲλ δε Κάε
emperor sister-in-law Eudokia whom — Ansel de Cayeux
εἰς γυναῖκα ἠγάγετο τῆς ἀδελφῆς αὐτῆς τῆς βασιλίδος
as wife took of-the sister her the empress
Εἰρήνης καὶ τοῦ γαμβροῦ καὶ βασιλέως θελήματι. ὁ μὲν
Irene and of-the brother-in-law and emperor by-will — indeed
οὖν Ἀσὲλ δε Κάε οὐκ ἐκαρτέρησεν ἐν τῷ ἄστει· τὴν γὰρ
then Ansel de Cayeux not held-out in the town the for
τοῦ βασιλέως ἐπεγνωκὼς ἔφοδον ἐκεῖνος μὲν ἐξῄει, τὴν
of-the emperor having-recognized attack he indeed went-out the
δὲ σύζυγον αὐτοῦ Εὐδοκίαν εἴασεν ἐν τῷ ἄστει, φυλακὴν
but wife his Eudokia let(-stay) in the town guard
ἱκανὴν συνεπιστήσας αὐτῇ· ἔδοξε γὰρ αὐτῷ, ὡς διὰ
sufficient having-set-over-with her it-seemed for to-him that because-of
τὴν αὐτοῦ γυναικαδέλφην οὐκ ἂν βουληθείη ὁ βασιλεὺς
the his sister-in-law not — would-wish the emperor
πορθῆσαι τὸ ἄστυ. ἐκεῖνος δὲ τὰ πολλὰ παρορῶν τῶν
to-sack the town he but the much overlooking of-the
τοιούτων, παρεκάθισε τῷ ἄστει καὶ ἑλεπόλεις ἔστησε
such(-things) sat-down-before the town and siege-engines set-up
καὶ μηχανήματα καταβλητικὰ τῶν ἐπάλξεων, καὶ διὰ
and engines for-throwing-down of-the battlements and in
μετρίων πάνυ τῶν ἡμερῶν ἐχειρώσατο· καὶ τὴν μὲν αὐτοῦ
moderate very the days subdued and the indeed his
γυναικαδέλφην εἰς τὴν Κωνσταντινούπολιν ἐξαπέστειλεν,
sister-in-law to — Constantinople sent-off
ἕνα ἵππον αὐτῇ δοὺς ἵν' ἐποχῆται, πάντας δὲ
one horse to-her having-given that she-might-ride all and
τοὺς εἰς φυλακὴν τοῦ ἄστεος ὄντας πεζοὺς ἀπέλυσεν.
the(-ones) on guard of-the town being on-foot released
ἀλλὰ καὶ τὸ τῆς Βιζύης ἄστυ στρατιὰν ἐκπέμψας διὰ
but also the — of-Bizye town army having-sent-out in

βραχέος κεχείρωκε, καὶ συνήγαγε καὶ τοῦτο τῇ τούτου
short(-time) subdued and joined also this to-the his
ἐπικρατείᾳ.
dominion

48 Κατὰ τοὺς καιροὺς τούτους ἑάλω καὶ τὸ ἄστυ τῆς νήσου
at the times these was-taken also the town of-the island
Ῥόδου ὑπὸ Γενουϊτῶν νυκτὸς κλοπῇ. ὁ γὰρ κρατῶν
Rhodes by Genoese by-night by-theft the for holding
αὐτὸ Ἰωάννης ὁ Γαβαλᾶς, ὁ τοῦ καίσαρος Λέοντος τοῦ
it John the Gabalas the of-the caesar Leo the
Γαβαλᾶ ἀδελφός, ὁ καὶ μετὰ θάνατον τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ
Gabalas brother the(-one) also after death of-the brother
αὐτοῦ τῆς νήσου δεσπόζων, ἀποδεδημήκει, μετὰ τοῦ
his of-the island being-master had-gone-abroad with the
βασιλέως κατὰ τῶν ἐν Κωνσταντινουπόλει ὡρμημένος
emperor against the in Constantinople having-set-out
Λατίνων περὶ τὰ μέρη τῆς Νικομηδείας διάγοντος.
Latins about the parts — of-Nicomedia staying
εὐθὺς οὖν βασιλικῇ προσταγῇ στέλλεται ὁ ἐπὶ τοῦ
at-once then by-imperial order is-sent the(-one) over the
κεράσματος Ἰωάννης ὁ Καντακουζηνός· οὗτος γὰρ ἔτυχε
mixing-cup John the Kantakouzenos this(-man) for happened
τῷ τότε τὴν δουκικὴν τῶν Θρακησίων ἀνεζωσμένος
at-the then(-time) the ducal — of-Thrakesioi having-girded-on
ἀρχήν. καὶ εἰσῆλθεν ἐντὸς τῆς νήσου μετὰ μετρίων
office and entered within the island with moderate
τινῶν δυναμένων ὅπλα κινεῖν, καὶ φθάνει κατασχεῖν
some able arms to-move and manages to-seize
τὸ ἐν αὐτῇ φρούριον τὸ ἐπονομαζόμενον Φιλέρημον.
the in it fortress the(-one) named Phileremos
ἐμάχετο οὖν ὡς εἶχε δυνάμεως τοῖς Γενουΐταις. ἐπεὶ
fought then as he-had of-power with-the Genoese when

δὲ ἀξιόμαχος ἀπεστάλη τούτῳ στρατός, ἐγγύς που
and fit-for-battle was-sent to-him army near somewhere
τοῦ ἄστεος πηξάμενος τὰς σκηνὰς ἐπολιόρκει τοὺς
the town having-pitched the tents besieged the
ἐντὸς Γενουΐτας, οὐ κατέβλαπτε δὲ αὐτούς, τροφῶν
within Genoese not harmed but them of-provisions
γὰρ ηὐπόρουν διαρκῶν· τὰς γὰρ τῶν Ῥοδίων οἰκίας
for they-were-supplied sufficient the for of-the Rhodians houses
πλήρεις εὑρόντες τῶν ζωαρκῶν οὐδενὸς τῶν ἀναγκαίων
full having-found of-the necessities-of-life of-nothing of-the necessary(-things)
ἐσπάνιζον. συνεκοιτάζοντο δὲ καὶ ταῖς τούτων γυναιξίν,
lacked slept-with and also the their wives
εἰ μή τινα ἔξωρον οὖσαν ἢ τὸ εἶδος οὐκ ἀγαθὴν
if not some out-of-season being or the form not good
ἀπήλασαν ἔξω. καὶ τάχος μὲν ἂν τὸ τῆς Ῥόδου ἄστυ
they-drove-away outside and quickly indeed — the — of-Rhodes town
ὑπὸ Ῥωμαίους ἐγένετο τῇ συνεχεῖ πολιορκίᾳ τοῦ
under Romans would-have-come by-the continual siege —
Καντακουζηνοῦ καὶ ταῖς εὐμηχάνοις τούτου ὁπλομαχίαις,
of-Kantakouzenos and by-the resourceful his fighting-in-arms
εἰ μή τι ξυνέβη τοιοῦτον. ὡς γὰρ ὁ τῆς Ἀχαΐας
if not something happened such as for the — of-Achaia
πρίγκιψ Βιλαρδουὶν εἰς τὴν Συρίαν ἀνήγετο, συμμαχίαν
prince Villehardouin to — Syria was-putting-to-sea alliance
ἐπάγων τοῖς εἰς Συρίαν ἀφικομένοις Φράγγοις, κἀν ταῖς
bringing to-the to Syria having-arrived Franks and-in the
τριήρεσιν αὐτοῦ ὁπλίτας εἶχεν ἱππότας, προσώκειλε δὲ
triremes his armed-men he-had knights put-in and
τῇ νήσῳ Ῥόδῳ, συνθήκην μετὰ τῶν ἐν αὐτῇ Γενουϊτῶν
at-the island Rhodes agreement with the in it Genoese
ἐποιήσατο, καὶ καταλέλοιπε παρ᾽ αὐτοῖς ἄνδρας εὐγενεῖς
made and left with them men noble

καὶ ἀγαθοὺς ἱππεῖς ἐγγύς που τῶν ἑκατόν. τοῦτο
and good horsemen near somewhere the hundred this
τοὺς Ῥωμαίους ὑποχωρῆσαι τῆς πολιορκίας τοῦ ἄστεος
the Romans to-withdraw from-the siege of-the town
κατηνάγκασε καὶ εἰς τὴν Φιλέρημον ἐμφιλοχωρεῖν. οἱ
compelled and in — Phileremos to-linger the
μὲν οὖν καταλελειμμένοι παρὰ τοῦ πρίγκιπος ἱππεῖς,
indeed then left-behind by the prince horsemen
καταλιμπάνοντες τοὺς πεζοὺς Γενουΐτας περὶ τῷ ἄστει,
leaving-behind the foot Genoese at the town
ἐξήρχοντο καὶ τὴν πᾶσαν χώραν ἐλήιζον. τὰ μὲν οὖν
went-out and the whole land plundered the indeed then
χρειώδη ἑαυτοῖς περιεποιοῦντο, σπάνιν δὲ τῶν ἀναγκαίων
necessities for-themselves they-procured scarcity and of-the necessary(-things)
τοῖς Ῥωμαίοις ἐκ τούτου συνέβη γίνεσθαι, ἐφ' ᾧ
for-the Romans from this happened to-come on which
τυγχάνειν δρόμωνας καὶ ἕτερα ξύλα τοῖς Γενουΐταις
to-happen fast-ships and other vessels for-the Genoese
πειρατικά.
piratical

Ὁ μὲν οὖν βασιλεὺς Ἰωάννης τὸ Νύμφαιον καταλαβὼν
the indeed then emperor John — Nymphaion having-reached
καὶ στόλον συσκευασάμενος ἀξιόμαχον ἐν τῇ Σμύρνῃ,
and fleet having-equipped fit-for-battle in — Smyrna
ἱππαγωγούς τε τριήρεις οἰκονομήσας ὡς μέχρι καὶ
horse-transport both triremes having-arranged so-that up-to also
τῶν τριακοσίων ἵππων ἐπιφέρεσθαι, καὶ εἰς στρατηγὸν
the three-hundred horses to-carry and as general
αὐτοῖς ἀποτάξας τὸν Κοντοστέφανον Θεόδωρον τὴν
for-them having-appointed — Kontostephanos Theodore the
τοῦ πρωτοσεβαστοῦ ἀξίαν διέποντα, καὶ ὅπως μέλλει
of-the protosebastos dignity holding and how he-is-to

τὰ τῆς μάχης καταρτίσαι τε καὶ συντάξαι ποῦ
the(-affairs) of-the battle to-equip both and to-arrange where
τε καὶ ὅτε, ἐγγράφως αὐτῷ παραδούς, ἐξαπέστειλεν,
both and when in-writing to-him having-handed-over sent-off
ἐπευξάμενος τούτῳ τε καὶ τοῖς μετὰ τούτου τὰ
having-prayed for-him both and for-the(-ones) with him the
λῴονα. ὁ μὲν οὖν πρωτοσεβαστὸς Θεόδωρος, ταῖς
better(-things) the indeed then protosebastos Theodore in-the
τριήρεσιν ἀναχθεὶς καὶ εἰς τὴν νῆσον ἀφιγμένος Ῥόδον,
triremes having-put-to-sea and to the island having-arrived Rhodes
πάντα τε ὡς ὁ βασιλεὺς προσέταξε διαπραξάμενος,
all both as the emperor ordered having-accomplished
τοὺς Λατίνους κατετροπώσατο· ἔξω γὰρ ληϊζομένοις
the Latins routed outside for plundering
ἐντυχόντες τοῖς Λατίνοις οἱ τοῦ βασιλέως ἄρδην
having-met the Latins the(-men) of-the emperor utterly
πάντας σπάθης ἔργον πεποίηνται, τοῦ ἐπὶ τοῦ κεράσματος
all of-sword work made the over the mixing-cup
Ἰωάννου τοῦ Καντακουζηνοῦ ἐπισκηψαμένου μηδενὸς
John the Kantakouzenos having-enjoined none
αὐτῶν φείσασθαι. οἱ μὲν οὖν Φράγγοι οἱ ἱππεῖς
of-them to-spare the indeed then Franks the horsemen
βασιλικῇ εὐβουλίᾳ οὕτως ἀπώλοντο, οἱ πεζοὶ δὲ
by-imperial good-counsel thus perished the foot but
Γενουῖται ἐναπολειφθέντες τῷ ἄστει τῆς Ῥόδου κατεῖχον
Genoese left-behind in-the town — of-Rhodes held
αὐτὸ τοῖς ἔξω μαχόμενοι. ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐ δυνάμεως
it with-the(-ones) outside fighting when and not of-power
εἶχον εἰς μακρὸν ἀντέχειν, εἰς ξυμβιβάσεις συνῆλθον·
they-had for long to-hold-out to agreements came
καὶ παρέδωκαν μὲν τὸ ἄστυ τοῖς Ῥωμαίοις, αὐτοὶ
and handed-over indeed the town to-the Romans themselves

δὲ πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα ἀφίκοντο καὶ κατὰ τὰς
and to the emperor arrived and according-to the
γεγονυίας τούτοις συνθήκας τῆς βασιλικῆς εὐμενείας
made for-them agreements of-the imperial goodwill
ἀπήλαυσαν. καὶ οὕτω δὴ καὶ αὖθις ἡ νῆσος Ῥόδος
enjoyed and so indeed also again the island Rhodes
ὑπὸ Ῥωμαίους ἐγένετο· καὶ ταῦτα μὲν ξυμβέβηκεν
under Romans came and these-things indeed happened
οὕτως.
so

IX · MICHAEL OF EPIRUS AND THE TRIAL

John betroths his granddaughter to Michael of Epirus' son Nikephoros; Michael breaks faith, and John's campaign wins Kastoria and a treaty. Michael Palaiologos is accused of plotting and offered the ordeal of hot iron, which he refuses as barbarian; he is acquitted. John dies at Nymphaion after a long illness, and his son Theodore II succeeds.

49 Ὁ μὲν οὖν βασιλεὺς Ἰωάννης μετὰ τοῦ δεσπότου Μιχαὴλ
the indeed then emperor John with the despot Michael
συνθήκας πεποίηκε καὶ εἰς κήδους κοινωνίαν συνῆλθε·
agreements made and into of-marriage-alliance partnership came
τὸν γὰρ τοῦ Μιχαὴλ υἱὸν Νικηφόρον ἐπὶ τὴν θυγατέρα τοῦ
the for — of-Michael son Nikephoros to the daughter of-the
υἱοῦ αὐτοῦ τοῦ βασιλέως Θεοδώρου τὴν Μαρίαν γαμβρὸν
son his the emperor Theodore — Maria as-son-in-law
ἠγάγετο. καὶ ἡ τούτου γαμετὴ Θεοδώρα τὸν Νικηφόρον
took and the his wife Theodora — Nikephoros
μεθ' ἑαυτῆς λαβοῦσα εἰς τὴν ἕω διαπεραιοῦται καὶ περὶ τὰ
with herself having-taken to the east crosses and about the

μέρη τῶν Πηγῶν τῷ βασιλεῖ διάγοντι ἐντυγχάνει, καὶ ἡ
parts — of-Pegai the emperor staying meets and the
τῶν παίδων μνηστεία γεγένηται. καὶ ἡ Θεοδώρα αὖθις τὸν
of-the children betrothal was-made and — Theodora again the
υἱὸν αὐτῆς λαβοῦσα οἴκαδε ὑπεχώρησε παρὰ τὸν αὐτῆς
son her having-taken homeward withdrew to the her
σύζυγον Μιχαήλ, προσηκόντως φιλοφρονηθέντες παρὰ τοῦ
husband Michael fittingly having-been-welcomed by the
βασιλέως. ἀλλὰ τὸ τῆς παροιμίας κἀπὶ τῷ Μιχαὴλ
emperor but the(-saying) of-the proverb also-in — Michael
ἐπαληθεύειν ἐφαίνετο· τὸ στρεβλὸν ξύλον οὐδέποτ᾽ ὀρθόν,
to-come-true appeared the crooked wood never straight
καὶ ὁ Αἰθίοψ οὐκ οἶδε λευκαίνεσθαι. εἰς ἀποστασίαν γὰρ
and the Ethiopian not knows to-be-whitened to revolt for
τοῦ βασιλέως ἐφώρμησε, συμβούλῳ περὶ τὴν σκῆψιν
from-the emperor he-set-out as-counselor about the pretext
τῷ θείῳ αὐτοῦ τῷ Ἀγγέλῳ Θεοδώρῳ χρησάμενος. ὁ
the uncle his — Angelos Theodore having-used the
γοῦν βασιλεὺς Ἰωάννης ταῦτα γνοὺς καὶ τὴν αὐτῶν
then emperor John these-things having-known and the their
συνωμοσίαν μεμαθηκώς, οὐκ ἄλλους οἰόμενος εἶναι ἐναντίους
conspiracy having-learned not others thinking to-be opposed
τῇ τῶν Ῥωμαίων ἀρχῇ μετὰ τὴν τῆς Κωνσταντίνου
to-the of-the Romans rule after the of-the of-Constantine
ἅλωσιν ἀλλ᾽ ἢ τούτους, ἐπειδὴ καὶ ἐκεχειρίαν ἦγεν ἀπὸ
capture but than these since also truce he-kept from
τοῦ μέρους τῶν Μουσουλμάνων, ἠρέμουν δὲ καὶ τὰ
the part of-the Muslims were-quiet and also the(-affairs)
τῶν Βουλγάρων, ἀξιομάχως καὶ ὡς εἰπεῖν βασιλικῶς
of-the Bulgarians fit-for-battle and as to-say imperially
παρασκευασάμενος καὶ τὰς δυνάμεις ἁπάσας ὡς ἔδει
having-prepared and the forces all as it-was-necessary

συντάξας, διαπεραιοῦται τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον, πολλοὺς μὲν
having-arranged crosses — Hellespont many indeed
καὶ ἄλλους ἔχων στρατηγούς, τὸν δὲ Ταρχανειώτην
also other having generals — and Tarchaneiotes
Νικηφόρον τὸν ἐπὶ τῆς τραπέζης αὐτοῦ οἷον τὰ
Nikephoros the(-one) over the table his as-if the(-duties)
τοῦ μεγάλου δομεστίκου διεκπληροῦντα· ἐπανεπαύετο γὰρ
of-the great domestic fulfilling he-rested for
αὐτοῦ τοῖς ἤθεσι καὶ εὔνουν αὐτὸν ἐλογίζετο κἀν ταῖς
on-his the character and well-disposed him reckoned and-in the
στρατηγίαις, ὡς ἡ πεῖρα μεμαρτύρηκε, δεξιώτατον.
generalships as the trial has-witnessed most-skillful
Καταλαβὼν γοῦν τὴν Θεσσαλονίκην κἀκεῖθεν τὰς δυνάμεις
having-reached then — Thessalonica and-thence the forces
ἀπάρας ἐν τοῖς Βοδηνοῖς ἐστρατοπεδεύσατο. πέφθακε δὲ
having-set-out in — Bodena encamped had-managed and
ὁ Ἄγγελος ἐξ αὐτῶν ἀποδρᾶσαι καὶ εἰς τὸν ἀνεψιὸν
— Angelos from them to-run-away and to the nephew
αὐτοῦ τὸν δεσπότην Μιχαὴλ ἀπελθεῖν. ὁ μὲν οὖν βασιλεὺς
his the despot Michael to-go-off the indeed then emperor
εἰς πολιορκίαν τῶν Βοδηνῶν καταστὰς ἐν οὐ πολλῷ χρόνῳ
to siege — of-Bodena having-settled in not much time
τὸ τῶν Βοδηνῶν παρεστήσατο ἄστυ, κἀκεῖθεν ἀπάρας ἔν
the — of-Bodena brought-over town and-thence having-set-out in
τινι τόπῳ τῇ τοῦ Ὀστροβοῦ ἐγγίζοντι λίμνῃ ἐπήξατο τὰς
some place to-the — of-Ostrobos near lake pitched the
σκηνάς. καὶ ἐξαποστέλλει στρατηγοὺς κατὰ τῶν χώρων
tents and sends-out generals against the lands
τοῦ δεσπότου Μιχαὴλ τόν τε Στρατηγόπουλον Ἀλέξιον,
of-the despot Michael — both Strategopoulos Alexios
τὸν Παλαιολόγον Μιχαὴλ τὸν τοῦ μεγάλου δομεστίκου
— Palaiologos Michael the of-the great domestic

υἱόν, τὸν Μακρηνὸν Ἰωάννην, τὸν Τύραννον Γουδέλλην
son — Makrenos John — Tyrannos Goudelles
καὶ ἑτέρους, ἵνα τε ληΐζοιντο τὰ πέριξ καί που
and others that both they-might-plunder the(-places) around and somewhere
εἰ τύχοιεν καὶ στρατεύματος αὐτοῦ εἰς μάχην
if they-should-happen-on also army his to battle
χωρήσαιεν κατ᾽ αὐτοῦ, καὶ εἴπερ εὐχέρειαν σχοῖεν,
they-might-go against him and if-indeed opportunity they-should-have
καὶ ἄστυ πορθήσαιεν. καὶ οὕτω μὲν ἐκεῖνοι ἐποίουν καὶ
also town they-might-sack and so indeed they did and
προῆγον τῆς τοῦ βασιλέως σκηνῆς ἔμπροσθεν. ὁ δὲ
went-ahead of-the of-the emperor tent in-front the and
βασιλεὺς προσεκαρτέρει τοῖς τοῦ Ὀστροβοῦ τόποις καὶ
emperor persisted in-the — of-Ostrobos places and
ἐβαρυθύμει ἐφ᾽ ᾧ μὴ πέφθακεν ἄξιόν τι ἐργάσασθαι.
was-vexed for which not he-had-managed worthy anything to-accomplish
ἠγανάκτει δὲ καὶ τὸ στράτευμα· ὁ καιρὸς γὰρ ἦν
was-indignant and also the army the season for was
χειμέριος, ἐσπάνιζον δὲ καὶ τῶν χρειωδῶν. ἀλλ᾽ ὁ βασιλεὺς
wintry they-lacked and also of-the necessities but the emperor
τὸ τοιοῦτον τεθεράπευκεν· ἀπὸ Βερροίας γὰρ ἡμιόνοις καὶ
the such(-trouble) cured from Berrhoia for with-mules and
καμήλοις τὰ χρειώδη διεκόμιζεν ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ. οὑτωσὶ
camels the necessities he-conveyed into the camp thus
δὲ διατεθειμένου τοῦ βασιλέως παρ᾽ ἐλπίδας ἐπιφοιτᾷ τῷ
and being-disposed the emperor beyond hopes comes to-the
βασιλεῖ πρόσφυξ ὁ ἀπὸ Καστορίας Γλαβᾶς καὶ συνεχῶς ὁ
emperor as-refugee the from Kastoria Glabas and continuously —
Πετραλίφας Θεόδωρος ὁ ἐπὶ θυγατρὶ γαμβρὸς τοῦ Τορνίκη
Petraliphas Theodore the by daughter son-in-law — of-Tornikes
Δημητρίου τοῦ Κομνηνοῦ, ὃς τὰ κοινὰ συνδιέπων
Demetrios the Komnenos who the common(-affairs) co-managing

ἦν τῷ βασιλεῖ Ἰωάννῃ, πάνυ παρ᾽ αὐτοῦ φιλούμενος
was for-the emperor John very by him loved
καὶ τιμώμενος· ἀδελφὸν γὰρ αὐτὸν ἐν τοῖς γράμμασιν
and honored brother for him in the letters
ἀπεκάλει. ἐξ ἀνθρώπων δὲ πρὸ καιροῦ γέγονεν. οἰκονόμος
called from men and before time became steward
οὖν τῶν κοινῶν οὐκ ἦν ἐν τιμῇ καὶ ὀφφικίου ὀνόματι
then of-the common(-affairs) not was in honor and of-office by-name
γνωριζόμενος, τοῖς τυχοῦσι δὲ ἐχρῆτο εἰς ὑπηρεσίαν
known with-the(-ones) chancing and used for service
ὁ βασιλεὺς καὶ γραμματικοῖς ἀνωνύμοις, τῷ Μεσοποταμίτῃ
the emperor and with-secretaries nameless — Mesopotamites
Ἰωσὴφ καὶ τῷ ἐξυπηρετήσαντι αὐτῷ Νικηφόρῳ τῷ
Joseph and the having-served him Nikephoros the
Ἀλυάτῃ, ἐν δὲ τοῖς ἑλλογιμωτέροις γράμμασι καὶ ἀξίοις
Alyates in and the more-learned letters and worthy
σπουδῆς τῷ Μακρωτῷ Ἰωάννῃ καὶ ἐμοί.
of-earnestness — Makrotos John and me
Ὁ μὲν οὖν ῥηθεὶς Πετραλίφας τοῦ Μιχαὴλ γυναικάδελφος
the indeed then said Petraliphas — of-Michael brother-in-law
ὢν, ἐπεὶ προσέλθοι τῷ βασιλεῖ, πολλῆς εὐθυμίας αὐτόν
being when he-came to-the emperor of-much good-cheer him
τε τὸν βασιλέα καὶ τὰ στρατεύματα ἔπλησεν· εὐθὺς γὰρ
both the emperor and the armies filled at-once for
ἡ Καστορία καὶ ἡ περὶ αὐτὴν ἅπασα χώρα προσερρύη
— Kastoria and the about it all land flowed-over
τῷ βασιλεῖ, καὶ αἱ Δεαβόλεις δέ, ἥ τε μικρὰ καὶ μεγάλη,
to-the emperor and — Deabolis too the both small and great
τοῦ βασιλέως ἐγένοντο. καὶ ὁ ἀπὸ τοῦ Ἀλβάνου δὲ
of-the emperor became and the from — Albanon too
Γουλάμος, ἐπεὶ πρὸς τὰ τῆς Καστορίας συνδιῆγε μετὰ τοῦ
Goulamos when toward the — of-Kastoria was-staying with the

ἐξ Ἀλβάνου στρατοῦ μέρη, σύζυγον ἔχων τῆς βασιλίδος
from Albanon army parts wife having of-the empress
Εἰρήνης αὐτανεψιὰν πρωτεξαδέλφης αὐτῆς θυγατέρα, λόγοις
Irene first-cousin of-first-cousin her daughter by-words
μειλιχίοις καὶ γράμμασιν ὑποσχέσεων τῶν ὑπὸ τοῦ
soothing and by-letters of-promises of-the(-ones) by the
βασιλέως θελχθεὶς προσῄει τῷ βασιλεῖ. φιλοφρόνως γοῦν
emperor charmed came to-the emperor in-friendly-fashion then
τοὺς τοιούτους πάντας ὁ βασιλεὺς δεξάμενος πρεπόντως
the such all the emperor having-received fittingly
ἐφιλοτιμήσατο. ταῦτα γνοὺς Μιχαὴλ ὁ δεσπότης καὶ
honored these-things having-known Michael the despot and
ἐν στενῷ κομιδῇ βλέπων τὰ περὶ αὐτὸν τυγχάνοντα
in strait utterly seeing the about him being
πράγματα, κατὰ ῥοῦν δὲ χωροῦντα τῷ βασιλεῖ, πρεσβείαν
affairs with stream and going for-the emperor embassy
πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα ἐστείλατο διά τε τοῦ μητροπολίτου
to the emperor sent through both the metropolitan
Ναυπάκτου τοῦ Ξηροῦ καὶ τοῦ ἐπ᾽ ἀδελφῇ γαμβροῦ
of-Naupaktos the Xeros and the by sister son-in-law
αὐτοῦ τοῦ Μαλιασηνοῦ καὶ τοῦ Λαμπέτη, οἳ καὶ εἰς
his — Maliasenos and — Lampetes who also to
λόγους συνελθόντες τῷ βασιλεῖ ξυμβιβάσεις πεποίηνται.
words having-come with-the emperor agreements made
καὶ ἀπέλυσε μὲν πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα ὁ Μιχαὴλ τὸ ἄστυ
and released indeed to the emperor — Michael the town
τὸν Πρίλαπον καὶ τὸν Βελεσσὸν καὶ τὸ ἐν τῷ Ἀλβάνῳ
— Prilapos and — Belessos and the in — Albanon
φρούριον τὰς Κρόας, καὶ προέβησαν πρὸς τοῦ βασιλέως
fortress — Kroai and proceeded from the emperor
ἔγγραφοι ὅρκοι, καὶ ἀπεστάλησαν πρὸς αὐτὸν καὶ πρέσβεις,
written oaths and were-sent to him also envoys

ὅ τε Φιλαδελφείας Φωκᾶς καὶ ὁ τῆς αὐλῆς πριμμικήριος
the both of-Philadelphia Phokas and the of-the court primmikerios
Ἰσαάκιος ὁ Δούκας, ὃν καὶ Μούρτζουφλον ἀπεκάλουν,
Isaac the Doukas whom also Mourtzouphlos they-called
καὶ ὁ Ὑαλέας Μιχαὴλ καὶ αὐτὸς ἐγώ. ἀπῄειμεν οὖν
and — Hyaleas Michael and myself I we-went-off then
πρὸς τὸν Μιχαήλ, καὶ εὕρομεν τοῦτον ἐν τῇ Λαρίσσῃ, καὶ
to — Michael and we-found him in — Larissa and
πεπληρώκαμεν τὰς σπονδάς. καὶ λαβόντες τὸν υἱὸν αὐτοῦ
we-fulfilled the treaties and having-taken the son his
Νικηφόρον, ὃν καὶ δεσπότην ὁ βασιλεὺς διὰ τὴν
Nikephoros whom also despot the emperor because-of the
αὐτοῦ ἐγγόνην τετίμηκεν, ἀλλὰ μὴν καὶ τὸν τοῦ Μιχαὴλ
his granddaughter honored but indeed also the — of-Michael
θεῖον τὸν Ἄγγελον Θεόδωρον δεσμώτην, πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα
uncle — Angelos Theodore as-prisoner to the emperor
ἐπανεξεύξαμεν ἐν τοῖς Βοδηνοῖς σκηνούμενον. καὶ οὕτω
we-marched-back in — Bodena encamping and so
μὲν ἐγεγόνει ταῦτα, καὶ εἰς τοιοῦτον τέλος κατηντήκει
indeed had-happened these-things and to such end had-arrived
τὰ πράγματα. παραχειμάσας οὖν ἐν τοῖς Βοδηνοῖς ὁ
the affairs having-wintered then in — Bodena the
βασιλεὺς ἦρος ὥρᾳ, ἐπεὶ καὶ τὴν ἀναστάσιμον ἑωρτάκει
emperor of-spring in-season when also the resurrection he-had-feasted
ἡμέραν, τὰ στρατόπεδα αὐτοῦ που καταλελοιπὼς καὶ
day the camps his somewhere having-left and
εἰς ἡγεμόνας αὐτῶν τάξας τόν τε πρωτοβεστιάριον
as commanders of-them having-appointed the both protovestiarios
Ἀλέξιον τὸν Ῥαούλ, γαμβρὸν ὄντα ἐπ᾽ ἀδελφόπαιδι τοῦ
Alexios the Raoul son-in-law being by niece of-the
βασιλέως, καὶ τὸν Κομνηνὸν Μιχαὴλ τὸν Παλαιολόγον,
emperor and — Komnenos Michael the Palaiologos

μετὰ μετρίου στρατεύματος εἰς θέαν τῶν προσφάτως
with moderate army for viewing of-the recently
ἐπιγεγενημένων τούτῳ χώρων ἀφίκετο. καὶ ἀπῆλθε μὲν
added to-him lands arrived and went-off indeed
εἰς Ἀχρίδα, ἐπιδεδημήκει δὲ εἰς Δεάβολιν κἀκεῖθεν εἰς
to Ochrid had-visited and to Deabolis and-thence to
Καστορίαν. καὶ τῇ τῆς ὀπώρας ὥρᾳ συσκευασάμενος
Kastoria and in-the of-the autumn season having-prepared
τὰ στρατεύματα τῆς εἰς ἕω φερούσης ἐφήψατο.
the armies the(-road) to east leading took-hold-of
Παραμείψας γοῦν τὴν Θεσσαλονίκην καὶ τὴν Βισαλτίαν 50
having-passed then — Thessalonica and — Bisaltia
διαβάς, ἐς Φιλίππους ἐπήξατο τὴν σκηνὴν λόγου πέρι,
having-crossed at Philippi pitched the tent an-account about
ὡς ἐδόκει τούτῳ, οὐχὶ σμικροῦ. ὁ γὰρ ἐκ τοῦ Μελενίκου
as seemed to-him not small the for from — Melenikon
Μαγκλαβίτης Νικόλαος κατεῖπε πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα τοῦ
Manglabites Nikolaos denounced to the emperor —
Παλαιολόγου Μιχαὴλ τοῦ προρρηθέντος υἱοῦ τοῦ μεγάλου
of-Palaiologos Michael the aforesaid son of-the great
δομεστίκου, ὅτε ἦν ἐν τοῖς Βοδηνοῖς· ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐκ ἦν
domestic when he-was in — Bodena since and not was
καιρὸς τοιούτων πραγμάτων ἐρεύνης ἀλλ᾽ ἐκστρατείας καὶ
season of-such affairs of-inquiry but of-campaign and
μάχης, ἐταμιεύετο τῷ βασιλεῖ τὰ τῆς ὑποθέσεως ἐς
of-battle was-reserved by-the emperor the(-affairs) of-the case for
ὥραν εὔθετον. τότε γοῦν εἰς ἐξέτασιν τῶν τοιούτων
season convenient then at-any-rate to examination of-the such(-things)
ἐγεγόνει ὁ βασιλεύς, καὶ δικαστήριον ἔστησε καὶ κριτὰς
came the emperor and court set-up and judges
ἐκάθισε καὶ λαμπρὸν κριτήριον συνεκρότησεν. ἡ δ᾽ ὑπόθεσις
seated and brilliant tribunal assembled the and case

ἦν τοιαύτη. ἐπεὶ ἐτελεύτησεν ὁ Τορνίκης Δημήτριος,
was such when died — Tornikes Demetrios
ἔτι δὲ περιῆν ἐν Θεσσαλονίκῃ ὁ μέγας δομέστικος,
still and was-alive in Thessalonica the great domestic
ὁ δὲ τούτου υἱὸς Μιχαὴλ ἐς Μελενίκον καὶ Σέρρας,
the and his son Michael at Melenikon and Serres
ὃς καὶ μαθὼν τὸν τοῦ Τορνίκη θάνατον ἐδυσφόρησε
who also having-learned the — of-Tornikes death was-distressed
καὶ σκυθρωπὸς τοῖς ἐντυγχάνουσιν ἐπεφαίνετο· ἦν
and gloomy to-the(-ones) meeting appeared was
γὰρ ὁ Τορνίκης σύζυγον ἔχων τοῦ μεγάλου δομεστίκου
for — Tornikes wife having of-the great domestic
πρωτεξαδέλφην. οἷα γοῦν φιλεῖ ἐπὶ τοῖς τοιούτοις γίνεσθαι,
first-cousin as then is-wont at the such(-things) to-happen
ἠρωτήκει τις τῶν ἐκ Μελενίκου θάτερόν τινα,
asked some-one of-the(-ones) from Melenikon the-other someone
ὅτου χάριν σκυθρωπάζει ὁ Κομνηνὸς Μιχαήλ. ὁ δέ
for-what for-the-sake is-gloomy — Komnenos Michael he and
— καὶ γὰρ ἠπίστατο τὴν αἰτίαν — ‘ὁ Τορνίκης’ ἔφη
also for he-knew the cause — Tornikes said
‘Δημήτριος τέθνηκεν· ἦν δὲ προσγενὴς αὐτοῦ καὶ οἰκονόμος
Demetrios has-died was and kinsman his and steward
τῶν κοινῶν· καὶ τούτου γοῦν χάριν κἀκείνου
of-the common(-affairs) and of-this then for-the-sake also-for-that(-man)
λελύπηται.’ ὁ δὲ ‘οὔ μοι δοκεῖ’ φησιν· ‘οὐδὲ γὰρ διὰ
he-has-grieved he and not to-me it-seems says not-even for because-of
Τορνίκην οὕτως ἂν ἠδημόνει καὶ ἤσχαλλεν· ἀλλ’ ὡς
Tornikes so — he-would-be-troubled and vexed but as
ἔοικεν ἐπὶ τῷ κρείττονι ἐκείνου τοῦτο συμβέβηκε. καὶ
it-seems at the better(-one) of-that(-man) this has-happened and
εἰ τοῦτο, φεῦ ἡμῖν· ἐν γὰρ ταραχαῖς καὶ ὀχλήσεσιν αὖθις
if this alas to-us in for troubles and disturbances again

γενήσονται τὰ ἡμέτερα, κατεστορεσμένα νῦν καλῶς καὶ
will-be the our(-affairs) settled now well and
εἰς ἀταραξίαν ἐληλυθότα.’ εἶθ’ οὗτος ‘ἀλλ’ ὦ φίλος,
into calm having-come then this(-man) but O friend
καὶ εἰ τοιοῦτόν τι ξυνέβη, καὶ οὕτω δὴ οὐ κακῶς
even if such something happened even so indeed not badly
τὰ καθ’ ἡμᾶς ἕξουσι. καὶ γὰρ ὁ μέγας δομέστικος
the(-affairs) concerning us will-be also for the great domestic
ἐν Θεσσαλονίκῃ διάγει ἡγεμονεύων αὐτῆς, καὶ οὑτοσὶ δὲ
in Thessalonica stays governing it and this-here too
ὁ Κομνηνὸς Μιχαὴλ ὁ τούτου υἱὸς τὴν τῶν ἡμετέρων
— Komnenos Michael the his son the of-the our
χώρων διεξάγει κηδεμονίαν. ὑπὸ τοιούτων γοῦν μεγίστων
lands conducts guardianship by such then very-great
ἀνδρῶν κυβερνώμενοι οὐκ ἄν ποτε κοσμικὸν κλυδώνιον
men being-steered not — ever worldly billow
ἴδοιμεν· ἄλλως τε καὶ ἡ τοῦ βουλγαράρχου Καλιμάνου
we-might-see otherwise both and the of-the Bulgarian-ruler Kaliman
ἀδελφὴ Θάμαρ, ἄζυξ ἔτι τελοῦσα, εἰς γάμου κοινωνίαν
sister Thamar unmarried still being into of-marriage partnership
συνέλθῃ τῷ Κομνηνῷ Μιχαήλ, καὶ γενήσονται σπονδαὶ
would-come — with-Komnenos Michael and will-be treaties
μέσον ἡμῶν καὶ Βουλγάρων.’ ταῦτα δὴ λελάληνται
between us and Bulgarians these-things indeed were-said
παρ’ αὐτῶν μηδὲν εἰδότος τοῦ Κομνηνοῦ Μιχαήλ.
by them nothing knowing — of-Komnenos Michael
Θάτερος οὖν τοῖν δυοῖν ἀπελθὼν πρὸς τὸν εἰρημένον
the-other then of-the two having-gone-off to the said
Μαγκλαβίτην ἀνήγγειλεν αὐτῷ τὰ τοιαῦτα, ὁ δὲ ἀνήνεγκε
Manglabites reported to-him the such(-things) he and referred
τῷ βασιλεῖ. κατασχεθέντες οὖν καὶ ἄμφω ἠρώτηνται περὶ
to-the emperor having-been-detained then also both were-asked about

τῶν λελεγμένων. ὁ μὲν οὖν κατηγόρει, θάτερος
the(-things) said the(-one) indeed then accused the-other
δὲ ὑπεραπελογεῖτο. ἔφησεν οὖν ὡς ‘ἀληθῶς μὲν οὑτοσὶ
but defended said then that truly indeed this(-man)
εἰρήκει, παρ’ ἐμοῦ γὰρ ἀκήκοεν· ἀλλ’ οὐκ εἰδήσει
had-said from me for he-heard but not with-knowledge
μοι εἴρηται τοῦ Κομνηνοῦ, ἀλλ’ ἐξ ἑαυτοῦ τοὺς λόγους
by-me it-was-said — of-Komnenos but from myself the words
τούτους προήνεγκα.’ ἠναγκάζετο γοῦν περὶ τούτου, ὁ δὲ
these I-brought-forward was-pressed then about this he and
ἠρνεῖτο καθάπαξ μὴ εἰδέναι τι περὶ τούτου τὸ σύνολον
denied once-for-all not to-know anything about this the whole
τὸν Κομνηνὸν Μιχαήλ· ὁ δὲ κατηγορῶν ἔφασκε συνειδέναι
— Komnenos Michael the and accusing said to-be-privy-to
ταῦτα τὸν Κομνηνὸν Μιχαήλ. ἐντεῦθεν ἠὐτρέπιστο
these-things — Komnenos Michael hence had-been-prepared
τούτοις στρατιωτική τις ἀπόδειξις, ἐπεὶ μὴ ὑπῆρχον οἱ
for-them military some proof since not there-were the(-ones)
μαρτυροῦντες, ἡ διὰ μάχης διάπειρα. ὡπλίσθησαν οὖν
witnessing the through battle trial were-armed then
καὶ ἄμφω, εἰσῆλθον εἰς τὸ στάδιον, ξυνέβαλον ἀλλήλοις,
also both entered into the arena engaged each-other
καὶ νενίκηται ὁ κατηγορούμενος ἀπερρίφη τε τοῦ ἵππου,
and was-conquered the accused was-thrown both from-the horse
καὶ τὴν νικῶσαν ὁ κατήγορος ἔσχηκε. συλληφθεὶς οὖν
and the victory the accuser had having-been-seized then
ζωός — οὐδὲ γὰρ καιρίαν τέτρωται — καὶ αὖθις
alive not-even for mortally he-had-been-wounded and again
ἠρώτηται, ὡς ἂν καθομολογήσειε τὴν ἀλήθειαν. ὁ δὲ τοῦ
was-asked so-that — he-might-confess the truth he but of-the
προτέρου λόγου ἀντείχετο καὶ μηδ’ ὅλως εἰδέναι τι τὸν
former account held-to and not at-all to-know anything —

Κομνηνὸν διεμαρτύρετο Μιχαήλ. ἐπεὶ δὲ διὰ πλείονος
Komnenos protested Michael when and through more
βασάνου ἔδοξεν ἐπιγνῶναι τὸν βασιλέα τὸ ἀληθές, οἷος
torture it-seemed to-learn the emperor the truth as
ἐκεῖνος τὰς ἐξετάσεις ἀκριβεστέρας ποιούμενος, τὸν διὰ
that(-man) the examinations more-exact making the through
θανάτου ἐπήγαγε τῷ ἀνδρὶ ἔλεγχον. ἐδέδεντο γοῦν αἱ
death applied to-the man test were-bound then the
χεῖρες ὄπισθεν τοῦ καταδικασθέντος ξίφους ἔργον γενέσθαι,
hands behind of-the condemned of-sword work to-become
οἱ δ' ὀφθαλμοὶ λινῷ ὑφάσματι ἐκαλύφθησαν· οὕτω
the and eyes with-linen cloth were-covered thus
γὰρ εἴωθε τοὺς κατακρίτους διασκευάζεσθαι καὶ τὴν
for it-is-customary the condemned to-be-arranged and the
πληγὴν λαμβάνειν τῆς ἀναιρέσεως. ὡς γοῦν καὶ ταῦτα
blow to-receive of-the execution as then also these-things
οὑτωσὶ γένοιτο καὶ ὁ δεσμώτης κλῖναι τὸν αὐχένα
thus had-happened and the prisoner to-bend the neck
προστέτακται, ἵνα δέξηται τῆς κάρας τὴν ἐκτομήν,
was-ordered that he-might-receive of-the head the cutting-off
καὶ πάλιν περὶ τῶν ζητουμένων ἠρώτηται. ὁ δὲ μεθ'
and again about the(-things) sought was-asked he and with
ὅρκων φρικωδεστάτων διεβεβαιώσατο μηδέν τι ὅλως
oaths most-awful affirmed nothing at-all wholly
συνειδέναι ἐπὶ τούτοις τὸν Κομνηνὸν Μιχαήλ. ἐκεῖνος μὲν
to-be-privy-to in these — Komnenos Michael he indeed
οὖν τὴν πρὸς θάνατον εἰάθη ὁδεῦσαι, τὴν δὲ πρὸς
then the(-road) to death was-let-off to-travel the(-road) but to
εἱρκτὴν ἐβάδισε, καὶ εἶχον αὐτὸν κλοιοὶ καὶ κάθειρξις· ἡ
prison went and held him collars and confinement the
ἐξέτασις δὲ πᾶσα πρὸς τὸν Κομνηνὸν κατήντηκε Μιχαήλ.
examination and all to — Komnenos came Michael

Καὶ δὴ ἔφασκον αὐτῷ οἵ τάχα κρίνειν τοῦτον
and indeed said to-him the(-ones) supposedly to-judge him
λαχόντες ὡς ‘ἐπεὶ περὶ σοῦ ἀπειρημένοι τινὲς λελάληνται
having-been-allotted that since about you forbidden some have-been-spoken
λόγοι, δεῖ σὲ διά τινος θαυματοποιίας τούτους
words it-is-necessary you through some wonder-working them
ἀποσκευάσασθαι.’ τὸ δὲ ἦν ἡ διὰ μύδρου ἀπόδειξις.
to-clear-away the(-thing) and was the through red-hot-iron proof
ὁ δὲ — καὶ γὰρ εἶχε βοηθοῦσαν αὐτῷ τὴν ἀλήθειαν
he and also for he-had helping him the truth
— ‘εἰ μέν τις ἦν’ ἔλεγεν ‘ὁ κατ’ ἐμοῦ τι
if indeed some-one were he-said the(-one) against me something
κατηγορῶν, πρὸς ἐκεῖνον ἂν ἐμαχεσάμην καὶ ἀπέδειξα
accusing with that(-man) — I-would-have-fought and I-would-have-shown
ψεύδεσθαι· κατηγόρου δὲ μὴ παρόντος ὑπὲρ τίνος κρίνομαι;
to-lie accuser but not being-present for what am-I-judged
εἰ δὲ θαυματουργῆσαί με θέλετε, ἀλλ’ ἐγὼ οὐκ εἰμὶ
if and to-work-wonders me you-wish but I not am
τοιοῦτος ὥστε καὶ τερατοποιίας ἐργάζεσθαι. σίδηρος δὲ
such so-as also prodigies to-work iron and
πεπυρακτωμένος, εἰ ἐν χειρὶ ἀνθρώπου ζωοῦ ὄντος ἐμπέσοι,
red-hot if in hand of-man living being should-fall
οὐκ οἶδα πῶς ἂν οὐ καύσειεν αὐτήν, εἰ μή πού τις
not I-know how — not it-would-burn it if not somehow some-one
ἔξεσται τῷ Φειδίᾳ ἐκ λίθου ἢ τῷ Πραξιτέλει ἢ καὶ ἀπὸ
has-been-carved — by-Pheidias from stone or — by-Praxiteles or also from
χαλκοῦ εἴργασται.’ ταῦτ’ ἔλεγε καὶ μάλα νὴ τὴν Θέμιν
bronze has-been-made these-things he-said and very by — Themis
δικαίως. ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ ὁ τῆς Φιλαδελφέων μητροπολίτης
justly when and also the of-the(-city) of-Philadelphians metropolitan
Φωκᾶς συμπαρῆν τοῖς γινομένοις, φιλούμενος πρὸς
Phokas was-present-at the(-things) happening being-loved by

τοῦ βασιλέως καὶ πάνυ φιλοφρονούμενος — πέπονθε
the emperor and very being-courted had-experienced
δὲ τοῦτο οὐκ ἐξ ἀρετῆς ἀλλ᾽ ἐξ ἀναιδείας· καὶ γάρ
and this not from virtue but from shamelessness also for
ποτε τοῦ βασιλέως πυθομένου περί τινος τῶν κοινῶν
once the emperor having-asked about some of-the common
πραγμάτων ἐπαρρησιάσατο καὶ ‘ὦ βασιλεῦ,’ ἔφη, ‘τίνος
affairs spoke-boldly and O emperor he-said for-what
χάριν ἀρτίως ἡμᾶς ἐρωτᾷς, αὐτὸς ἀεὶ ἐξ ἑαυτοῦ
for-the-sake just-now us do-you-ask yourself always from yourself
τὰ δοκοῦντά σοι διαπραττόμενος;’ ταῦτ᾽ εἶπε,
the(-things) seeming to-you accomplishing these-things he-said
καὶ τότε μὲν ὁ βασιλεὺς ἐσχετλίασε καί γε εἰρήκει
and then indeed the emperor was-indignant and at-least said
πρὸς τοὺς συμπαρισταμένους· ‘τί οὕτω θρασύτερον ὁ
to the(-ones) standing-by why so more-boldly the
μητροπολίτης εἴρηκεν, ὑμεῖς δὲ ἠνέσχεσθε;’ μετὰ βραχὺ
metropolitan has-spoken you and endured after short(-while)
δὲ φιλοφρόνως τοῦτον ἐδεξιώσατο καὶ ἐτίμα καὶ σύμβουλον
but in-friendly-fashion him welcomed and honored and counselor
εἶχεν ἐν ταῖς κοσμικαῖς ὑποθέσεσιν. ὑποδρηστῆρι οὖν καὶ
had in the worldly matters as-assistant then also
τότε ἐχρήσατο τούτῳ ὁ βασιλεύς. καί γε καταμόνας
then used him the emperor and at-least alone
τὸν Κομνηνὸν παραλαβὼν Μιχαήλ, κἀμοῦ τῶν λόγων
— Komnenos having-taken-aside Michael and-me the words
ἀκροωμένου, ταῦτ᾽ εἶπεν ὡς ‘εὐγενὴς μὲν ἀνὴρ σὺ καὶ
hearing these-things said that noble indeed man you and
ἐξ εὐγενῶν γεγέννησαι. δεῖ οὖν σε τὸ δέον
from noble(-parents) have-been-born it-is-necessary then you the(-thing) needful
ὑπὲρ τῆς σῆς ὑπολήψεώς τε καὶ πίστεως καὶ παντός
for the your repute both and good-faith and of-all

σοι τοῦ γένους καὶ νοῆσαι καὶ διαπράξασθαι. ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐκ
to-you the family both to-think and to-accomplish since and not
ἔλεγχος παρὰ μαρτύρων ἐν σοί, δεῖ σε τῷ μύδρῳ
proof from witnesses in you it-is-necessary you by-the red-hot-iron
τὴν ἀλήθειαν παραστήσασθαι.' καὶ ὃς μάλα γενναίως καὶ
the truth to-establish and he very nobly and
ἀνδρικῶς, καὶ ὡς ἂν τινα οἱ γραφεῖς ἐν μάχῃ ἄτρεστον
manfully and as — someone the painters in battle fearless
διαγράψαιεν, 'οὐκ οἶδ' ὅπως τὸ τοιοῦτον κέκληται ἅγιον,
might-depict not I-know how the such(-thing) has-been-called holy
ὦ δέσποτα' ἔφη· 'ἀλλ' ἐγὼ μὲν ἁμαρτωλός εἰμι ἄνθρωπος
O master he-said but I indeed sinful am man
καὶ τερατουργεῖν τοιαῦτα οὐ δύναμαι.
and to-work-prodigies such not I-can
εἰ δέ μοι συμβουλεύῃ μητροπολίτης ὢν καὶ θεοῦ ἄνθρωπος
if but me you-advise metropolitan being and of-God man
τουτὶ διαπράξασθαι, ἔνδυσαι μὲν αὐτὸς τὴν ἱεράν σου
this to-accomplish put-on indeed yourself the sacred your
πᾶσαν στολήν, καθὼς εἴωθας ἐν τῷ θείῳ εἰσέρχεσθαι
all vestment as you-are-wont into the divine to-enter
βήματι καὶ ἐντυγχάνειν θεῷ· εἶτα δὴ ταῖς σαῖς χερσὶν
sanctuary and to-meet God then indeed with-the your hands
ἐκπύρωσόν μοι τὸν σίδηρον, αἷς τοῦ θείου ἐφάπτῃ
heat-red-hot for-me the iron with-which the divine you-touch
θύματος, τοῦ σώματος τοῦ κυρίου ἡμῶν Ἰησοῦ Χριστοῦ
sacrifice of-the body of-the Lord our Jesus Christ
τοῦ ὑπὲρ παντὸς τοῦ κόσμου τεθυμένου καὶ ἀεὶ θυομένου
the(-one) for all the world sacrificed and always being-sacrificed
παρ' ὑμῶν τῶν ἱερέων τε καὶ ἱεραρχῶν, καὶ ταύταις δὴ
by you the priests both and hierarchs and with-these indeed
ταῖς ἱεραῖς σου χερσὶν ἐπίθες τῇ χειρί μου τὸν σίδηρον,
the sacred your hands lay on-the hand my the iron

καὶ τεθάρρηκα εἰς τὸν δεσπότην Χριστόν, ὡς πᾶσαν
and I-have-trusted in the master Christ that all
μὲν οὗτος ἁμαρτίαν μου παροράσεται, θαυματουργήσειε
indeed he sin my will-overlook would-work-wonders
δὲ τὴν ἀλήθειαν.' καὶ ὁ μὲν Κομνηνὸς Μιχαὴλ οὕτως
but the truth and — indeed Komnenos Michael thus
εἴρηκεν, ὁ δὲ μητροπολίτης 'ὦ καλὲ νεανία,' ἔφη, 'τοῦτο
spoke the and metropolitan O fair young-man he-said this
οὐκ ἔστι τῆς ἡμετέρας καὶ Ῥωμαϊκῆς καταστάσεως, ἀλλ'
not is of-the our and Roman constitution but
οὔτε τῆς ἐκκλησιαστικῆς παραδόσεως, οὔτε μὴν ἐκ τῶν
neither of-the ecclesiastical tradition nor indeed from the
νόμων οὔτε δὴ πρότερον ἐκ τῶν ἱερῶν καὶ θείων
laws nor indeed before from the sacred and divine
κανόνων παρείληπται. βαρβαρικὸς δὲ ὁ τρόπος καὶ
canons has-been-received barbarian and the way and
ἀγνὼς ἐν ἡμῖν, προσταγῇ δὲ μόνον ἐνεργεῖται βασιλικῇ.'
unknown among us by-order and only it-is-effected imperial
καὶ ὃς 'ὦ μέγιστε ἱεράρχα θεοῦ, εἰ μὲν καὶ αὐτὸς
and he O greatest hierarch of-God if indeed also I-myself
ἐκ βαρβάρων γεγέννημαι καὶ βαρβαρικοῖς τοῖς ἤθεσιν
from barbarians have-been-born and in-barbarian the customs
ἀνατέθραμμαι ἢ καὶ νόμοις τουτοισὶν ἐκπεπαίδευμαι, καὶ
have-been-reared or also in-laws these have-been-educated also
βαρβαρικῶς ἐκτισαίμην τὴν δίκην μου· εἰ δὲ Ῥωμαῖος καὶ
barbarously I-would-pay the penalty my if but Roman and
ἐκ Ῥωμαίων, κατὰ νόμους Ῥωμαϊκοὺς καὶ παραδόσεις
from Romans according-to laws Roman and traditions
ἐγγράφους ἡ κρίσις τερματωθήτω μοι.'
written the judgment let-be-ended for-me

Ἐκεῖνος μὲν οὖν τοῖς λόγοις οἷον τοῦ νεανίου
he indeed then at-the words as of-the young-man
ἐκπεπληγμένος — εἰκοστὸν γὰρ καὶ ἕβδομον διήνυεν
having-been-astounded twentieth for and seventh was-completing
ἔτος ὁ Κομνηνὸς Μιχαὴλ — καὶ τῷ μὴ ἐν συμφοραῖς
year — Komnenos Michael and at-the not in misfortunes
τούτου ὄντος τὸ εὐγενὲς τοῦ φρονήματος καταπίπτειν
his being the nobility of-the spirit to-fall-down
μηδὲ τὸ τῶν νοημάτων ὑποχαλᾶν εὐεπήβολον, πρὸς τὸν
nor the of-the thoughts to-slacken aptness to the
βασιλέα ἐλθὼν ὅσα μὲν οὖν εἶπεν ἐκεῖνος αὐτὸς
emperor having-come as-much-as indeed then said he I-myself
μὲν οὐκ οἶδα, πάντως δὲ ταῦτ' ἔμελλε λέξαι ὅσα
indeed not know surely but these-things was-about to-say as-much
τε καὶ οἷα ἤκουσεν. ὁ μὲν οὖν βασιλεὺς διάπειραν
both and such-as he-heard the indeed then emperor trial
πολλὴν πεποιηκὼς οὐχ εὗρε κατά τι τὸν Κομνηνὸν
much having-made not found in anything — Komnenos
Μιχαὴλ ὑπαίτιον ὄντα, καὶ ταῦτα καὶ τὸν ἀναίτιον εἰς
Michael guilty being and these-things also the guiltless into
αἰτίαν ἄγων τῇ βίᾳ ἢ τῶν λόγων ἢ τῶν μαστίγων.
charge leading by-the force either of-the words or of-the whips
πάντες γὰρ ἀπεφαίνοντο οἵ τε τῶν Λατίνων οἵ τε τῶν
all for declared the both of-the Latins the both of-the
Ῥωμαίων, καὶ μάλιστα τῶν Λατίνων, ἐπεί γε οὗτοι
Romans and especially of-the Latins since at-least these
ἐλευθερωτέρᾳ χρῶνται πρὸς τοὺς δεσπότας τῇ γλώττῃ,
freer use toward the masters the tongue
ἀθῷον εἶναι ἐπὶ πᾶσι τὸν Κομνηνὸν Μιχαήλ· ἤκουσα
innocent to-be in all — Komnenos Michael I-heard
δὲ καὶ αὐτὸς ἐπὶ τῇ κρίσει παρών, καὶ σὺν ἐμοὶ ὁ
and also myself at the trial being-present and with me —

Μακρωτὸς Ἰωάννης, τάχα καὶ ἡμεῖς συναριθμούμενοι
Makrotos John supposedly also we counted-with
τοῖς κρίνουσι πρὸς τοῦ βασιλέως, ὡς ξύλων ἄν τινες
the(-ones) judging by the emperor as of-timbers — some
μηδὲν διαφέροντες ἐνταῦθ' ἵστανται. ἐβούλετο γὰρ πάντας
nothing differing there stand he-wished for all
κατ' αὐτοῦ συμψηφίζεσθαι, ἡμῖν δὲ οὐκ ἦν λόγος, ἄνευ
against him to-vote-together for-us but not was word without
λόγου τοῦ Κομνηνοῦ Μιχαὴλ κρινομένου. ἐφιλεῖτο γὰρ —
reason — of-Komnenos Michael being-judged was-loved for
φίλη γε ἡ ἀλήθεια — οὐ πρὸς ἡμῶν καὶ μόνον, ἀλλὰ
dear at-least the truth not by us and only but
καὶ πρὸς παντὸς τῶν τε ἐν τέλει τῶν τε στρατηγῶν
also by everyone of-the(-ones) both in office of-the both generals
τῶν τε στρατιωτῶν καὶ αὐτῶν τῶν τῆς ξύγκλυδος·
of-the both soldiers and of-the-very the(-ones) of-the rabble
τοῖς τε γὰρ νεάζουσιν ἡδὺς ἦν καὶ προσηνὴς ὁμιλῶν
to-the both for youthful pleasant he-was and gentle conversing
καὶ χαρίεις ἐν λόγοις καὶ ἐν ἐπιτηδεύμασι δεξιώτατος, τοῖς
and graceful in words and in pursuits most-skillful to-the
τε γέρουσι γηραιὸς ἐδόκει τὸν λόγον τε καὶ τὴν σύνεσιν,
both old(-men) old he-seemed the speech both and the understanding
καὶ ἀσπάσιος αὐτοῖς ἐνομίζετο. καὶ ταῦτ' οὖν, ὡς οἶμαι,
and welcome to-them was-reckoned and these-things then as I-think
γέγονεν ἐπ' αὐτῷ δοκιμασίᾳ τοῦ κρείττονος· ἐπεὶ γὰρ εἰς
happened for him by-trial of-the better since for to
τὴν βασίλειαν ἔμελλε θεὸς ἀναβιβάσαι τοῦτον περιωπήν,
the imperial was-about God to-raise him lookout
τῷ τῶν βασάνων πυρὶ καὶ τῷ διὰ πείρας χωνευτηρίῳ
by-the of-the tortures fire and by-the through experience crucible
δεδοκίμακεν, ἵνα μὴ εἰς τὸν βασίλειον ἀναβὰς θρόνον
he-tested that not to the imperial having-gone-up throne

ῥᾷον ἔχῃ πιστεύειν διαβολαῖς καὶ συκοφαντίαις
more-easily he-might-be-able to-trust slanders and calumnies
μήτε θᾶττον τὰς ἀποφάσεις ποιεῖν ἐπ᾽ ἐξουσίᾳ τοῦ
nor more-quickly the sentences to-make in power of-the
πράττειν τὰ βουλητέα γεγενημένος. οὐ μὴν ἀλλὰ
to-do the(-things) wished having-become not however but
καὶ ἐν ἄλλοις πολλοῖς κατεξήτασεν, ὡς προϊὼν ὁ τῆς
also in other many(-things) he-examined as proceeding the of-the
ἱστορίας λόγος δηλώσειεν. ἐπὶ δὲ τέλει τῆς ὑποθέσεως
history account may-show at and end of-the case
ταυτησὶν ἦν ὁ βασιλεὺς εἰρηκώς, κἀμοῦ τῶν λόγων
this was the emperor having-said and-me the words
ἀκροωμένου· ‘αἶ ἐλεεινὸν οἵας δόξης ἐξέπεσες.’ τὸ
hearing ah pitiable(-one) from-what glory you-have-fallen the(-thing)
δὲ ἦν ὅτιπερ πρὸς βουλήσεως ἦν τῷ βασιλεῖ τὴν
and was that-indeed according-to wish it-was for-the emperor the
ἐγγόνην αὐτοῦ, τὴν πρώτην θυγατέρα τοῦ υἱοῦ αὐτοῦ τοῦ
granddaughter his the first daughter of-the son his the
βασιλέως Θεοδώρου τὴν Εἰρήνην, ἐπιδοῦναι τῷ Κομνηνῷ
emperor Theodore — Irene to-give — to-Komnenos
Μιχαὴλ εἰς ὁμόκοιτιν. ἦν δὲ αὕτη πρὸς τὸν Μιχαὴλ
Michael as bedfellow was and she to — Michael
ἀνεψιά, δευτερεξαδέλφου θυγάτηρ· ἀλλὰ τοῦτο καὶ ἐπὶ τῷ
niece of-second-cousin daughter but this also with the
βασιλεῖ Ἰωάννῃ ἐγένετο καὶ ἐν πλείοσιν ἄλλοις, καὶ εἴωθε
emperor John happened and in more others and is-wont
τὰ τοιαῦτα οὕτω πως ξυμβαίνειν· κἂν γὰρ τῇ
the(-things) such thus somehow to-happen even-if for by-the
ἐκκλησίᾳ κεκώλυται, ἀλλὰ τοῖς βασιλεῦσιν ἐφεῖται
church it-has-been-forbidden but to-the emperors it-is-permitted
τῆς κοινῆς προμηθείας χάριν καὶ τοῦ συμφέροντος.
of-the common forethought for-the-sake and of-the advantage

Ὁ μὲν οὖν βασιλεὺς οὑτωσὶ τὰ τῆς ὑποθέσεως 51
the indeed then emperor thus the(-affairs) of-the case
διαλύσας εἰς τὴν ἕω ἀπῄει, ὁ δὲ Κομνηνὸς Μιχαήλ, ὡς
having-dissolved to the east went-off — but Komnenos Michael as
εἰρήκειν, ὑπεβλέπετο. ἐπεὶ δὲ τὸ τοῦ γένους περιφανὲς
I-had-said was-looked-at-askance since and the of-the family distinction
καὶ τὸ πρὸς αὐτὸν συγγενές, ἔτι γε μὴν τὸ πρὸς
and the to him kinship still at-least however the toward
τοὺς μεγάλους γνήσιον τούτου οὐκ εἴα τὸν βασιλέα ἐν
the great(-ones) loyalty of-him not allowed the emperor in
περιφρονήσει φέρειν τὰ κατ᾽ αὐτόν, τί δὴ ποιεῖ;
contempt to-hold the(-affairs) concerning him what indeed does
στέλλει τοῦτον πρὸς τὸν πατριάρχην. ὁ Μανουὴλ ἦν τότε
sends him to the patriarch — Manuel was then
τὰ τῆς πατριαρχίας διαθύνων πηδάλια, ἀνὴρ εὐλαβοῦς καὶ
the of-the patriarchate steering rudders man of-pious both
βίου καὶ πολιτείας σεμνῆς, εἰ καὶ γυναικὶ συνεζύγη, ἄλλως
life and conduct dignified if even to-a-wife he-was-yoked otherwise
δὲ οὐ πεπειραμένος γραμμάτων οὐδὲ ὧν ἀνεγίνωσκεν
but not experienced in-letters nor of-what he-read
ἀνελίττων τὴν ἔννοιαν. καὶ γράφει πρὸς τοῦτον ὁ
unrolling the sense and writes to him the
βασιλεὺς ἐπιτιμίῳ καθυποβαλεῖν τὸν Κομνηνὸν Μιχαὴλ
emperor to-a-penance to-subject — Komnenos Michael
καὶ ὅρκοις αὐτὸν ἐμπεδῶσαι, μὴ ἄν ποτε βουληθῆναι
and with-oaths him to-bind not — ever to-wish
ἀπιστίαν κατὰ τοῦ βασιλέως μελετῆσαι, φυλάττειν δὲ
faithlessness against the emperor to-practice to-keep but
καθαρὰν αὐτοῦ τὴν πρὸς τὸν κρατοῦντα διάθεσιν. γέγονε
pure his the toward the ruling(-one) disposition happened
ταῦτα, καὶ ὁ βασιλεὺς τὸν Κομνηνὸν ἀνεδέξατο Μιχαὴλ
these-things and the emperor — Komnenos received Michael

καὶ συζεύγνυσιν αὐτῷ εἰς γυναῖκα τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ αὐτοῦ
and yokes to-him as wife of-the brother his
τοῦ σεβαστοκράτορος Ἰσαακίου τοῦ Δούκα ἐγγόνην τὴν
the sebastokrator Isaac the Doukas granddaughter —
Θεοδώραν, ἣν μόνην ὁ πατὴρ αὐτῆς καταλελοιπὼς ὁ
Theodora whom alone the father her having-left the
τοῦ σεβαστοκράτορος υἱὸς Ἰωάννης ἔτι ἐν μείραξιν
of-the sebastokrator son John still among youths
ὢν τὸ χρεὼν ἐξεμέτρησε, χήραν μὲν τὴν αὐτοῦ γαμετὴν
being the debt measured-out as-widow indeed the his wife
Εὐδοκίαν ἀφείς, τὴν τοῦ Ἀγγέλου Ἰωάννου θυγατέρα,
Eudokia having-left the — of-Angelos John daughter
ὀρφανὴν δὲ τὴν θυγατέρα αὐτοῦ Θεοδώραν, ἥτις εὐτυχῶς
orphan and the daughter his Theodora who fortunately
τῷ Κομνηνῷ τότε συνέζευκτο Μιχαήλ· ἡ γὰρ μήτηρ αὐτῆς
— to-Komnenos then was-yoked Michael the for mother her
Εὐδοκία καίτοι γε νέα οὖσα πάνυ τὴν χηρείαν φέρειν
Eudokia although at-least young being very the widowhood to-bear
ἠσπάσατο, ἀρετὴν δὲ ἐφίλει καὶ τὸ καθάπαξ προσανέχειν
embraced virtue and loved and the once-for-all to-attend
θεῷ. διὰ ταῦτα καὶ ἀντιμισθίαν ἀντιλαμβάνει πρὸς
to-God because-of these-things also as-recompense receives from
θεοῦ τὸ κῆδος. καὶ ταῦτα μὲν ἔσχεν οὕτω.
God the marriage-alliance and these-things indeed had so
52 Ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς τὰ τῆς ἕω μέρη κατειληφὼς καὶ τοῦ
the and emperor the of-the east parts having-reached and of-the
ἐνιαυτοῦ ἐκείνου παρῳχηκότος αὖθις περὶ τὴν προκαθημένην
year that having-passed again about the leading
τῶν Βιθυνῶν πόλιν ἀφίκετο Νίκαιαν. καιρὸς ἦν περὶ τὰ τοῦ
of-the Bithynians city arrived Nicaea time was about the of-the
χειμῶνος τέλη, καὶ φθίνων ἐτύγχανε Φεβρουάριος. καὶ ὁ
winter ends and waning happened February and the

βασιλεὺς ἐπὶ τῆς κλίνης ἑσπέρας καθήμενος — παρέδραμε
emperor on the bed of-evening sitting had-run-past
δὲ καὶ μέρος τι τῆς νυκτός — αἴφνης γεγονὼς ἄφωνος,
and also part some of-the night suddenly having-become speechless
πρηνὴς ἐπὶ τῆς κλίνης πεσὼν ἦν τὸ ἀπὸ τοῦδε ἄναυδος
headlong on the bed having-fallen was the from this(-time) voiceless
τὸ καθόλου. χεῖρες δὲ ἰατρῶν ὑπούργουν ἐν τούτῳ καὶ
the at-all hands and of-physicians served in this and
ἀμυχὰς ἐν τοῖς ποσὶν ἐποίουν καὶ ἐφόλβιον ταῖς ἀμυχαῖς
scarifications in the feet they-made and euphorbium to-the scarifications
ἐνέβαλλον καὶ ἀλλ᾽ ἄττα ἔπραττον, ὁπόσα ἡ τέχνη
applied and other some(-things) did as-many-as the art
ἐδίδασκεν. ἀλλ᾽ ὁ βασιλεὺς ὅλην τε ταύτην τὴν νύκτα καὶ
taught but the emperor whole both this the night and
τὴν ἐπιοῦσαν ἡμέραν καὶ αὖθις τὴν ἑτέραν νύκτα ἀκίνητος
the following day and again the other night motionless
ἔκειτο· ἀποπληξία γὰρ ἦν ἡ νόσος καὶ οὕτω βαρεῖα, ὥστε
lay apoplexy for was the illness and so heavy so-as
διαρκέσαι τοσοῦτον εἰς ἀκινησίαν καὶ ἀφωνίαν. μόγις οὖν
to-last so-long in immobility and speechlessness hardly then
ἀνέπνευσε καὶ εἰς ἑαυτὸν ἦλθεν, ἦν δὲ ἠλλοιωμένος τὸ
he-breathed-again and to himself came was but changed the
χρῶμα. ἔσπευσε γοῦν καταλαβεῖν τὸ Νύμφαιον φθάσαι τε
color hastened then to-reach — Nymphaion to-arrive both
πρὸ τῆς βαϊοφόρου κυριακῆς, καθ᾽ ἣν εἴωθε θριαμβεύειν ὁ
before the palm-bearing Sunday on which is-wont to-triumph the
βασιλεύς. ἐπιτείνας οὖν τὴν ὁδὸν ἀφίκετο εἰς τὸ Νύμφαιον,
emperor having-pressed then the road arrived at — Nymphaion
κἀκεῖσε τὸν κατὰ τὴν βαϊοφόρον θρίαμβον ἐξετέλεσε καὶ
and-there the at the palm-bearing triumph completed and
τὴν ἀναστάσιμον ἑωρτάκει ἡμέραν. καὶ τὸ ἀπὸ τοῦδε τοῖς
the resurrection had-feasted day and the from this(-time) in-the

τοιούτοις ἐπεχωρίαζε μέρεσι, τῇ κατασχούσῃ τοῦτον νόσῳ
such stayed parts by-the having-seized him illness
κατὰ διαστήματα ἡμερῶν τρυχόμενός τε καὶ πιεζόμενος.
at intervals of-days being-worn both and being-pressed
ποτὲ μὲν γὰρ ἐν τῷ παλατίῳ διάγων εὐθὺς ἐπὶ κλίνης
at-times indeed for in the palace staying at-once on bed
ἔπιπτεν ἄφωνος, ποτὲ δὲ ἐφ' ἵππου βαίνων καὶ ὁδὸν
fell speechless at-times and on horse mounting and road
βαδίζων ὑπὸ τῆς νόσου ἐγίνετο κάτοχος, καὶ οἱ
traveling by the illness became seized and the(-ones)
συμπαρόντες κατεῖχόν τε καὶ πρὸς ὥραν παρεφύλαττον,
present held both and for an-hour guarded
ὥστε μὴ γνωρίζεσθαι τοῖς πολλοῖς· ἐπὰν δὲ εἰς λογισμὸν
so-as not to-be-known to-the many when and to reason
ἐπανῆκε, σχολῇ πρὸς τὰ βασίλεια ἐπανέστρεφεν· ἐνίοτε
he-returned slowly to the palace returned sometimes
δὲ καὶ φοράδην ἐπὶ θρόνου ἐν τοῖς ἀνακτόροις ὑπὸ τῶν
and also carried on throne in the palace by the
οἰκείων ἤγετο. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡ νόσος ἐπηύξανε, τὸ σῶμα
household was-brought when and the illness increased the body
τοῦ βασιλέως κατέπιπτε· συνεχέστερον γὰρ ἤρξατο πάνυ
of-the emperor fell-away more-continuously for began very
τούτῳ ἐγγίνεσθαι. σύντηξις γοῦν ἦν αὐτῷ τῶν σαρκῶν,
to-him to-come-on wasting then was to-him of-the flesh
καὶ τὸ δεινότερον, ἡ ἀτροφία τοῦτον ἐπίεζεν.
and the more-terrible the atrophy him pressed
Ἐπεὶ οὖν χεῖρες ἰατρῶν εἰς τὴν νόσον ἀπέκαμον,
when then hands of-physicians at the illness grew-weary
παραμυθίαν βουλόμενος μικρὰν ἐφευρεῖν ἠθέλησεν εἰς τὴν
consolation wishing small to-find-out he-wished to —
Σμύρνην ἀπελθεῖν, ὅπως τῷ ἐκεῖσε προσκυνήσῃ Χριστῷ
Smyrna to-go-off so-that to-the there he-might-worship Christ

παράκλησίν τε ποιήσῃ καὶ ἵλεων αὐτὸν ἀπεργάσοιτο.
supplication both might-make and propitious him might-render
ἀφικόμενος οὖν ταῦτα μὲν διεπράξατο, ἀνακωχὴν δὲ
having-arrived then these-things indeed he-accomplished respite but
τοῦ πάθους οὐχ εὗρεν, ἀλλ' ἐν τοῖς Περικλύστροις Τόποις
of-the affliction not found but in — Periklystra Places
σκηνούμενος — τόπος δέ ἐστιν οὗτος ἐγγύς που τῆς
encamping place and is this near somewhere —
Σμύρνης, διὰ τὸ πολλοῖς τοῖς ὕδασι περικλύζεσθαι οὕτω
Smyrna because-of the by-many the waters to-be-washed-around thus
πως κατονομαζόμενος — μείζονος ἢ μᾶλλον χείρονος τοῦ
somehow named greater or rather worse of-the
πάθους ἐπῄσθετο. ἐκεῖθεν οὖν ἀπάρας πονήρως λίαν ἔχων
affliction perceived thence then having-set-out badly very being
τοῦ σώματος καταλαμβάνει τὸ Νύμφαιον. καὶ ἐν μὲν
in-the body reaches — Nymphaion and in indeed
τοῖς βασιλικοῖς οὐκ ἀπῆλθεν οἰκήμασιν, ἐν δὲ τοῖς ἐγγύς
the imperial not went-away dwellings in but the near
που τῆς χώρας βασιλείοις κήποις τὰς ἀνακτορικὰς
somewhere of-the land imperial gardens the palace
σκηνὰς ἐνιδρύσατο. ἔνθα καὶ τῷ χρεὼν ἐλειτούργησε τρίτῃ
tents set-up where also to-the debt paid-service third
καλανδῶν Νοεμβρίου, ἑξήκοντα καὶ δύο, ὡς οἱ τὰ
of-the-calends of-November sixty and two as the(-ones) the(-things)
περὶ αὐτοῦ ἀκριβέστερον εἰδότες ἔφασαν, ἔτη βιώσας, ἐξ
about him more-exactly knowing said years having-lived of
ὧν τριάκοντα καὶ τρία βεβασίλευκε καλῶς τε καὶ ἀγαθῶς.
which thirty and three he-reigned well both and nobly
πρᾶος γὰρ ἦν καὶ πρὸς τὸ φιλανθρωπότερον ἀεὶ
gentle for he-was and toward the more-humane always
ἀπονεύων· δωρεαῖς μὲν πρὸς τοὺς αὐτοῦ ἧττον ἐχρᾶτο,
inclining with-gifts indeed toward the(-ones) his-own less he-dealt

πρὸς δὲ τοὺς ξένους καὶ μᾶλλον τοὺς ὡς πρέσβεις
toward but the foreigners and rather the(-ones) as envoys
ἀφικομένους δαψιλεστέραν τὴν χεῖρα προύτεινεν, ἵν' ὑπ'
arriving more-lavish the hand stretched-out that by
αὐτῶν ἐπαινοῖτο. ἐρώτων δὲ θηλέων ἡττᾶτο, ἐξ
them he-might-be-praised by-loves and of-women he-was-overcome from
ὅτου ἡ σύζυγος αὐτοῦ καὶ βασιλὶς Εἰρήνη ἐξ ἀνθρώπων
which(-time) the wife his and empress Irene from men
ἐγένετο· καὶ πολλαῖς μὲν καὶ ἄλλαις εἰς φανερὰν ἐχρήσατο
became and with-many indeed also others in open used
μίξιν, μάλιστα δὲ τῆς ἐξ Ἰταλίας ἐλθούσης ὡς
intercourse especially and of-the(-woman) from Italy having-come as
θεραπαινίδος μὲν τῆς ἐξ Ἀλαμανῶν συζύγου βασιλίδος
maidservant indeed of-the from Germans wife empress
Ἄννης, ἀντιζήλου δὲ αὐτῆς γεγενημένης Μαρκεσίνης τε
Anna rival but to-her having-become Markesina both
ὀνομαζομένης τοῦ ἔρωτος ἥττητο. καὶ ἐς τοσοῦτον τῆς
being-named by-the love was-overcome and to so-great of-the
ἀγάπης αὐτῆς ἐξεκρέματο, ὡς καὶ πέδιλα ὑποδεδέσθαι δοῦναι
love her hung-upon that also sandals to-wear to-give
ταύτην κοκκοβαφῆ καὶ ἐφεστρίδας τοιαύτας καὶ χαλινά,
her scarlet-dyed and saddle-cloths such and bridles
ἕπεσθαί τε αὐτῇ πλείους ἢ τῇ κυρίως δεσποίνῃ, ἄλλα
to-follow both her more than the properly mistress other(-things)
τε πολλὰ ἐποίει ταῖς ἐκείνης δουλεύων ὀρέξεσι. καρτερικὸς
both many he-did the of-her serving appetites enduring
δὲ ἦν ἐν ταῖς μάχαις οὗτος ὁ βασιλεύς. καὶ τοῖς μὲν κατὰ
and was in the battles this the emperor and in-the indeed in
συστάδην πολέμοις οὐκ ἔχαιρε, τὸ ἀλλοπρόσαλλον τοῦ
close-quarters wars not rejoiced the fickleness —
Ἄρεως δειλιῶν καὶ τὸ περὶ ταῦτα ἄδηλον ὑπολογιζόμενος·
of-Ares fearing and the about these-things uncertain reckoning

τῇ καρτερίᾳ δὲ χρώμενος καὶ ἐνεαρίζων μὲν εἰς τὴν
with-the endurance but using and spending-the-spring indeed into the
τῶν ἐναντίων γῆν καὶ τὴν θέρους ὥραν διαβιβάζων, ἔτι
of-the opponents land and the of-summer season passing still
δὲ καὶ τὴν φθίνουσαν ὀπώραν διανύων, ἐνίοτε δὲ καὶ
and also the waning autumn completing sometimes and also
παραχειμάζων, τὴν νικῶσαν ἐλάμβανεν, ἀποκαμνόντων
wintering the victory took growing-weary
τῶν ἐναντίων τῇ τοῦ βασιλέως ἐνστάσει τε καὶ ὑπομονῇ.
the opponents at-the of-the emperor persistence both and patience
Ἐτεθνήκει μὲν οὖν ὁ βασιλεὺς Ἰωάννης, τῷ υἱῷ αὐτοῦ
had-died indeed then the emperor John to-the son his
Θεοδώρῳ τὴν βασιλείαν καταλελοιπώς, τριάκοντα καὶ τρία
Theodore the empire having-left thirty and three
ἔτη διανύοντι. τοσοῦτος γὰρ ὁ χρόνος αὐτῷ ὁπόσος τῆς
years completing so-great for the time to-him as-great-as of-the
πατρικῆς βασιλείας ἐτύγχανε· σχεδὸν γὰρ τῇ πατρικῇ
paternal reign happened almost for with-the paternal
ἀναρρήσει καὶ ἡ γέννησις ἐκείνου συνέδραμεν. ἐλπὶς μὲν
proclamation also the birth his coincided hope indeed
οὖν πᾶσιν ἦν Ῥωμαίοις καὶ μάλιστα τοῖς ἐν στρατείᾳ
then to-all was Romans and especially to-the(-ones) in military-service
τελοῦσι καὶ τοῖς ἐν τοῖς βασιλείοις διάγουσι πολλῶν
being and to-the(-ones) in the palace staying of-many
ἀγαθῶν πρὸς τοῦ νέου ἐπιτεύξασθαι βασιλέως· καὶ εἴ
good(-things) from the young to-obtain emperor and if
τις ἦν πρὸς τοῦ πατρὸς ἐκείνου λελυπημένος ἢ στέρησιν
any-one was by the father his grieved or deprivation
χρημάτων πεπονθὼς ἢ καὶ κτημάτων, ἐλπίδας εἶχε λύσιν
of-money having-suffered or also of-possessions hopes had release
εὑρεῖν τῶν κακῶν. οὕτω μὲν οὖν οἱ πάντες ἤλπιζον.
to-find of-the ills so indeed then the all hoped

τό τε γὰρ νέον τῆς ἡλικίας καὶ τὸ πρὸς ἅπαντας
the both for youthfulness of-the age and the toward all
χαρίεν καὶ τὸ πράως τοῖς ξυνιοῦσι προσφέρεσθαι
charming and the gently to-the(-ones) coming-together to-behave
καὶ ἱλαρῶς τοῖς συντυγχάνουσιν ὁμιλεῖν, ἃ δὴ
and cheerfully with-the(-ones) meeting to-converse which indeed
πάντα φενάκη ἦν καὶ ὑποκριτικὸν προσωπεῖον, ταῦτα
all deceit was and hypocritical mask these-things
ἐποίουν φαντάζεσθαι. ἀλλ᾽ ἥμαρτον τοῦ σκοποῦ, καὶ
made to-imagine but they-missed the mark and
τὸ τῆς παροιμίας ἄνθρακες αὐτοῖς ἐκ θησαυρῶν
the(-saying) of-the proverb coals to-them from treasures
ἀνεφάνησαν. τοιοῦτος γὰρ πρὸς τοὺς ὑπηκόους ἐφάνη
appeared such for toward the subjects he-appeared
καὶ οὑτωσὶ τοῖς ὑπὸ χεῖρας ἐχρήσατο, ὡς πάντας τὸν
and so-thus the(-ones) under hands treated so-that all the
πατέρα μακαρίζειν καὶ βασιλέα· καὶ εἰ λίαν ὑπῆρξέ τις
father to-count-blessed and emperor and if very there-was any-one
δεινὰ παρ᾽ ἐκείνου παθών, πρὸ τῆς αὐτοῦ τελευτῆς
terrible(-things) from that(-man) having-suffered before the his death
ἐξ ἀνθρώπων γενέσθαι ἑαυτὸν ἠγάπα καὶ ηὔχετο τὴν
from men to-become himself loved and prayed the
ζωὴν καταλῦσαι καὶ συναριθμηθῆναι τοῖς πλείοσιν.
life to-end and to-be-counted-with the majority

53 Οὕτω μὲν οὖν ὁ βασιλεὺς Θεόδωρος τῶν βασιλείων
so indeed then the emperor Theodore of-the imperial
ἐπείληπτο θρόνων. τὴν νενομισμένην γοῦν ὁσίαν ἀποδοὺς
had-taken-hold-of thrones the customary then holy-rite having-rendered
τῷ βασιλεῖ καὶ πατρὶ καὶ καθεσθεὶς ἐπ᾽ ἀσπίδος ὡς ἔθος
to-the emperor and father and having-been-seated on shield as custom
καὶ ὑπὸ πάντων φημισθεὶς αὐτοκράτωρ, τοῦ Νυμφαίου
and by all acclaimed autocrat — from-Nymphaion

ἀπάρας ἐπὶ τὴν Φιλαδέλφειαν ἀφίκετο. μεγίστη δὲ αὕτη
having-set-out to — Philadelphia arrived very-great and this
πόλις καὶ πολυάνθρωπος καὶ ὁπλίζεσθαι δεδυνημένους
city and populous and to-be-armed able
οἰκήτορας ἔχουσα καὶ μάλιστα τοξείαν ἀσκοῦντας·
inhabitants having and especially archery practicing
ἀγχιτερμονοῦσα δὲ τοῖς Περσικοῖς ὁρίοις ἀεὶ διαμάχεσθαι
bordering and on-the Persian borders always to-fight-it-out
τοῖς ὑπεναντίοις τούτους ποιεῖ καὶ ἐθάδας πολέμων
with-the opponents them makes and accustomed of-wars
ἐργάζεται. ἐκεῖσε οὖν διακαρτερήσας μικρὸν καὶ ὅσον
renders there then having-stayed a-little and as-long-as
πρεσβείαν στεῖλαι πρὸς τὸν σουλτάν, περὶ τὰ Βιθυνῶν
embassy to-send to the sultan to the of-Bithynians
κεχώρηκε μέρη καὶ τὴν τῆς χώρας ταύτης προκαθημένην
went parts and the of-the land this leading
πόλιν τὴν Νίκαιαν. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐχήρευε τοῦ πατριαρχοῦντος ἡ
city — Nicaea when and was-widowed of-the patriarch the
ἐκκλησία — πέφθακε γὰρ ὁ πατριάρχης Μανουὴλ μικρόν
church had-managed for the patriarch Manuel little
τι τοῦ βασιλέως Ἰωάννου προτελευτῆσαι — ἔδει δὲ
some the emperor John to-die-before it-was-necessary and
πρῶτον πατριάρχην προβληθῆναι, ἵν' ἐπὶ τῷ βασιλεῖ τὴν
first patriarch to-be-put-forward that on the emperor the
στεφηφορίαν ἐν τῷ ἱερῷ τελεσιουργήσῃ τεμένει, ἐζητεῖτο
coronation in the sacred he-might-perform precinct was-sought
μὲν ὁ ἄξιος τοῦ τοιούτου θρόνου, ἡ δόξα δὲ τοῖς
indeed the worthy of-the such throne the opinion and of-the
πολλοῖς ἐπὶ τῷ Βλεμμύδῃ ἐτύγχανε Νικηφόρῳ, τῷ ἐμῷ
many on — Blemmydes happened Nikephoros the my
διδασκάλῳ τῶν τῆς φιλοσοφίας λόγων τε καὶ δογμάτων,
teacher of-the of-the philosophy words both and doctrines

ἀνδρὶ ἐκ νεότητος τὸν ζυγὸν ἀραμένῳ τοῦ μονήρους
man from youth the yoke having-taken-up of-the solitary
βίου καὶ περιβοήτῳ τυγχάνοντι καὶ περὶ λόγον καὶ ἀρετήν,
life and renowned being both about letters and virtue
κἂν ἐνίων ὁ φθόνος καὶ μάλιστα τῶν προυχόντων οὐ
even-if of-some the envy and especially of-the leading-men not
μόνον οὐκ ἐκφανῆ τούτῳ τὰ τῆς ἀρετῆς ἐποίει, ἀλλὰ
only not conspicuous to-him the(-things) of-the virtue made but
καὶ κακίας τινὰς αὐτῷ προσεκόλλα. οὗτος οὖν πρὸς τὸν
also vices some to-him glued this(-man) then toward the
βασιλέα Θεόδωρον φιλίως διέκειτο καὶ παρ᾽ αὐτοῦ ἐφιλεῖτο·
emperor Theodore friendly was-disposed and by him was-loved
τῶν γὰρ λόγων, ἐν οἷς τὰ πολλὰ ἐβρενθύετο, διδάσκαλον
of-the for letters in which the most he-prided teacher
καὶ αὐτὸν ἐπεγράφετο. ὁ δὲ πρὸς τὸ ἦθος τοῦ βασιλέως
also him he-inscribed he and toward the character of-the emperor
ὁρῶν ὀκνηρότερος περὶ τὸ πρᾶγμα ἐτύγχανεν. οὐ μὴν
looking more-hesitant about the matter happened not however
ἀλλὰ καὶ ὁ βασιλεὺς αὐτὸς μαλακώτερον αὐτοῦ ἐπειρᾶτο·
but also the emperor himself more-softly of-him made-trial
μᾶλλον γὰρ πρὸς βουλήσεως ἦν αὐτῷ τὴν προστασίαν
rather for according-to wish was to-him the presidency
μὴ καταδέξασθαι. ταπεινοτέρους γὰρ καὶ μετρίους εἶναι τὸ
not to-accept humbler for and moderate to-be the
φρόνημα τοὺς πατριαρχεύοντας οἱ κρατοῦντες ἐθέλουσι
spirit the patriarchs the(-ones) ruling wish
καὶ προσπίπτειν εὐχερῶς τοῖς σφῶν αὐτῶν βουλήμασιν
and to-fall-in easily with-the of-themselves themselves wishes
ὡς προστάγμασι. τοῦτο δὲ μᾶλλον οἱ ἀγροικότεροι
as commands this and rather the more-rustic
πάσχουσιν, οὐδὲ γὰρ ἔχουσι τοῖς λόγοις θαρρεῖν· οἱ
suffer not-even for are-able in-the letters to-trust the(-ones)

δὲ περὶ λόγους ἀκαμπέστεροι φαίνονται καὶ τοῖς ἐκείνων
but about letters more-unbending appear and to-the their
ὁρισμοῖς ἀντιπίπτουσιν. ὁ γοῦν βασιλεὺς Θεόδωρος διὰ
decrees fall-against the then emperor Theodore because-of
ταῦτα μικράν τινα πεῖραν λαβὼν τοῦ ἀνδρὸς ἐφ' ἑτέρους
these-things small some trial having-taken of-the man to others
ἐτράπετο. καὶ ἐπεὶ δυσαρεστῶν ἐτύγχανεν ἐν πολλοῖς,
turned and since displeased he-was in many(-things)
μοναχόν τινα εἶναι μαθὼν ἐν τῇ τῆς Ἀπολλωνιάδος
monk some to-be having-learned in the — of-Apollonias
λίμνῃ ὀλίγων γραμμάτων πεῖραν ἔχοντα — μόνον καὶ
lake of-few letters experience having only also
γὰρ ἐφήψατο τῆς γραμματικῆς παιδείας — ἀνίερον
for he-had-touched the grammatical education unordained
τελοῦντα καὶ Ἀρσένιον ὀνομαζόμενον, ὡς εἶχε τάχους
being and Arsenios named as he-had of-speed
στέλλει τοὺς αὐτὸν ἄξοντας. καὶ ὃς ἀφίκετο. ἐπεὶ δὲ
sends the(-ones) him to-bring and he arrived when and
τὴν ἀπὸ τῆς Νικαίας ἔξοδον ἔσπευδε, διὰ τάχους τοῖς
the from — Nicaea departure he-hastened with speed to-the
ἀρχιερεῦσι προστάττει χειροτονῆσαι πατριάρχην αὐτὸν
high-priests orders to-ordain patriarch him
ὁ βασιλεύς· οἳ καὶ οὑτωσὶ διεπράξαντο, ἐν μιᾷ ἡμέρᾳ
the emperor who also so-thus accomplished in one day
διάκονον καὶ ἱερέα καὶ πατριάρχην αὐτὸν ἐκτελέσαντες.
deacon and priest and patriarch him having-made
Ἡ δ' αἰτία τοῦ ἐπισπεύδειν τὴν ἀπὸ τῆς Νικαίας ἔξοδον 54
the and cause of-the hastening the from — Nicaea departure
ἦν αὕτη. ὁ βουλγαράρχης Μιχαήλ, ὃς γυναικάδελφος τοῦ
was this the Bulgarian-ruler Michael who brother-in-law of-the
βασιλέως ἐτύγχανε Θεοδώρου, τῷ πενθερῷ αὐτοῦ Ἀσὰν
emperor happened Theodore to-the father-in-law his Asan

Ἰωάννῃ ἐκ τῆς τοῦ Ἀγγέλου Θεοδώρου θυγατρὸς γεννηθείς,
John from the — of-Angelos Theodore daughter born
τὸν τοῦ βασιλέως Ἰωάννου πυθόμενος θάνατον, ἐπεὶ
the of-the emperor John having-learned death since
τὰ δυτικὰ μέρη γυμνὰ στρατευμάτων ἑώρα Ῥωμαϊκῶν,
the western parts bare of-armies saw Roman
βουληθεὶς τὴν ἀφῃρημένην πρὸς τοῦ βασιλέως Ἰωάννου
having-wished the taken-away by the emperor John
χώραν ἐκ Βουλγάρων καὶ τὰ ἐν αὐτῇ ἄστη πρὸς
land from Bulgarians and the in it towns to
Βουλγαρικὴν τὴν ἀρχὴν καὶ αὖθις ἀνακαλέσασθαι —
Bulgarian the rule also again to-recall
τοῦτο γὰρ ἐκ μακροῦ τοῖς Βουλγάροις ὠδίνετο — καὶ
this for from long-ago to-the Bulgarians was-in-travail and
τὸν καιρόν, ὡς ἐδόκει, κατιδὼν ἐπιτήδειον, ἐξορμήσας τοῦ
the season as seemed having-seen suitable having-set-out —
Αἵμου καὶ τὸν Ἕβρον διαπεράσας ἐν οὐ πολλῷ χρόνῳ
from-Haimos and — Hebros having-crossed in not much time
πολλήν τε χώραν ὑφ᾽ ἑαυτὸν ἐποιήσατο πολλά τε
much both land under himself made many both
ἄστη σὺν οὐδενὶ παρεστήσατο πόνῳ. Βούλγαροι καὶ γὰρ
towns with no brought-over toil Bulgarians also for
τυγχάνοντες οἱ οἰκήτορες τοῖς ὁμοφύλοις προσέτρεχον,
being the inhabitants to-the kinsmen ran-over
τὸν ζυγὸν τῶν ἀλλογλώσσων ἀποσειόμενοι· τὰ δὲ ἄστη
the yoke of-the other-tongued shaking-off the and towns
μετὰ τῶν Ῥωμαϊκῶν καὶ μόνων ἀπολελειμμένα φυλάξεων,
with the Roman and only left-behind guards
οὐκ ἀξίων τοιούτοις καιροῖς ἀντιμάχεσθαι, εὐχείρωτα τοῖς
not worthy in-such times to-fight-against easy-to-subdue to-the
Βουλγάροις ὑπῆρχε, τῶν μὲν πτοίᾳ ταραττομένων
Bulgarians were of-the(-ones) indeed by-terror being-troubled

καὶ προδιδόντων τὰ ἄστη καὶ λαμβανόντων τὴν πρὸς
and betraying the towns and taking the toward
τὰ οἴκοι ἐλευθερίαν, τῶν δὲ πρὸς τὴν ἐξαπίνης
the(-places) at-home freedom of-the(-others) and toward the sudden
γεγενημένην τῶν Βουλγάρων ἔφοδον μηδὲν ἐχόντων ἐκ
having-happened of-the Bulgarians attack nothing having from
τοῦ προχείρου νοῆσαι λυσιτελοῦν ἀποδιδρασκόντων καὶ
the readiness to-think profitable running-away and
ταῦτα ἔρημα τῶν φυλαττόντων ἀπολιμπανόντων, ἄλλων
these deserted of-the guards leaving others
δὲ ἴσως καὶ χρόνῳ ἀποκαμόντων, παραταθέντος αὐτοῖς
and perhaps also by-time growing-weary having-been-extended for-them
παρὰ τὸ μέτρον τοῦ χρόνου τῆς φυλακῆς. τὰ πλείω δὲ
beyond the measure of-the time of-the guard the more and
τῶν ἄστεων καὶ ἀπεριποίητα ἦν καὶ τῶν χρειωδῶν ὅπλων
of-the towns also unprovided were and of-the needful arms
ἄμοιρα. κατεσχέθη μὲν οὖν ἐκ τοῦ παραυτίκα Στενίμαχος
without-share were-seized indeed then from the instant Stenimachos
Περιστίτζα Κρυτζιμὸς Τζέπαινα καὶ τὰ ἐν τῇ
Peristitza Krytzimos Tzepaina and the(-places) in the(-region)
Ἀχριδῶν ξύμπαντα πλὴν Μνειάκου· τοῦτο γὰρ καὶ μόνον
of-Achridos all except Mneiakos this for also alone
ὑπὸ Ῥωμαίων πεφύλακται. Οὔστρα δὲ καὶ Περπεράκιον
by Romans was-guarded Oustra and also Perperakion
καὶ Κρυβοῦς καὶ τὸ παρακείμενον τῇ τοῦ Ἀδριανοῦ
and Krybous and the(-place) lying-beside to-the — of-Hadrian
καὶ κεκλημένον Ἐφραΐμ τοῖς Βουλγάροις κεχείρωνται.
and called Ephraim by-the Bulgarians were-subdued
τούτων οὖν οὕτω γεγενημένων καὶ τῶν ἐν δυσμοῖς
these then thus having-happened and of-the in west
Ῥωμαϊκῶν κλονουμένων πραγμάτων, τῆς φήμης μέχρι
Roman being-shaken affairs the report up-to

καὶ ἐς βασιλέως ἐπιδραμούσης καὶ πλειόνων προσδοκίαν
also to emperor having-run and of-more expectation
κακῶν τῶν προσόντων φαντασίαν παρεχομένης, οἱ
ills of-the(-ones) present imagination providing the(-ones)
περὶ τὰ βασίλεια οὐ μικρῶς ἐταράχθησαν. ἠπίσταντο γὰρ
about the palace not little were-troubled they-knew for
ὡς τὰ πλείω τῶν δυτικῶν μερῶν Βουλγάροις οἰκοῦνται,
that the most of-the western parts by-Bulgarians are-inhabited
ἀποστατήσασι πάλαι Ῥωμαίων, προσφάτως δὲ χειρωθεῖσι
having-revolted long-ago from-Romans recently and subdued
τῷ βασιλεῖ Ἰωάννῃ καὶ οὔπω πῆξιν τῆς χειρώσεως
by-the emperor John and not-yet fixity of-the subjection
λαβοῦσιν, ἔχθραν δὲ ἀεὶ πρὸς Ῥωμαίους ἐνδομυχοῦσι.
having-taken enmity and always toward Romans harboring-within

X · THEODORE II'S FIRST CAMPAIGNS

Against the Bulgarians' seizure of the western towns Theodore crosses in winter, takes Beroe, and recovers the Rhodope fortresses. His generals flee before Tzepaina. Dragotas besieges Melenikon and dies in the rout at the Roupelion. Theodore takes Belesos, fails at Tzepaina, and makes the unsoldierly Laskaris and Margarites commanders, honoring his favorites at Lampsakos.

55 Διὰ ταῦτα καὶ αὐτὸς ὁ βασιλεὺς ἠδημόνει τοῖς
because-of these-things also himself the emperor was-troubled at-the
πράγμασιν, εἰ οὕτω κατ' ἀρχὰς τῆς ἐξουσίας αὐτοῦ
affairs if so at beginnings of-the power his
δυστυχῶς πράττει. συναθροίσας οὖν τοὺς ἐν τέλει καὶ
unfortunately he-fares having-gathered then the(-ones) in office and
τοὺς εἰς στρατηγοὺς τεταγμένους, σὺν οἷς καὶ οἱ
the(-ones) as generals appointed with whom also the

πρὸς πάππου αὐτοῦ τοῦ βασιλέως Θεοδώρου ὑπῆρχον
on-the-side-of grandfather his the emperor Theodore were
αὐτῷ θεῖοι, ὅ τε Μανουὴλ καὶ ὁ Μιχαήλ, ἐβουλεύσατο
to-him uncles — both Manuel and — Michael he-deliberated
τί ἂν ἔχοι εἰς τὰ γεγενημένα διαπράττεσθαι. οἱ μὲν
what — he-could for the(-things) having-happened to-accomplish the indeed
οὖν πλείους διαπερᾶσαι τὸν βασιλέα τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον
then more to-cross the emperor — Hellespont
δέον ἔλεγον εἶναι καὶ στῆσαι τὴν τῶν Βουλγάρων φοράν.
necessary said to-be and to-stop the of-the Bulgarians onrush
τοῦτο δὲ τοῖς τοῦ κρατοῦντος θείοις τοῖς προειρημένοις
this but to-the of-the ruling(-one) uncles the(-ones) aforesaid
οὐκ ἤρεσκεν, οἷς καὶ προσεῖχε μᾶλλον ὁ βασιλεὺς
not pleased to-whom also attended rather the emperor
πολλῶν ἕνεκα· ἥ τε γὰρ γνησιότης τοῦ γένους ἠνάγκαζε
of-many for-the-sake the both for genuineness of-the family compelled
καὶ τὸ τῆς ἡλικίας γηραιὸν παρεβίαζεν, οὐχ ἧττον δὲ πρὸς
and the of-the age old forced not less and toward
τοῦτο καὶ τὸ πολλῶν πραγμάτων ἴδρεις αὐτοὺς γενέσθαι
this also the of-many affairs knowing them to-have-become
παρέπειθε. φυγάδες γὰρ οὗτοι γεγονότες τῆς τοῦ βασιλέως
persuaded fugitives for these having-become from-the of-the emperor
Ἰωάννου διακρατήσεως πολλοῖς προσωμίλησαν δεσπόταις
John rule with-many consorted masters
καὶ εἰς διαφόρους περιεπλανήθησαν τόπους, κἀντεῦθεν
and to various wandered-about places and-hence
κατὰ τὴν ποίησιν εἶδον ἄστεα καὶ νόον ἔγνωσαν. καὶ
according-to the poem they-saw towns and mind knew and
ἦσαν μὲν ὡς ἀληθῶς οὗτοι νοήμονες, οὐκ ὀρθὰ δὲ
were indeed as truly these intelligent not right(-things) but
ἐφρόνουν τοῖς τῶν Ῥωμαίων πράγμασιν, αἰτίαν ἔχοντες
thought for-the of-the Romans affairs cause having

τὸ παρευδοκιμηθῆναι τὰ πρῶτα παρὰ τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ καὶ
the to-have-been-surpassed in-the first(-honors) by the brother and
βασιλέως, μηδενὸς αὐτῶν εἰς ἀξίαν ἀνηγμένου βασιλέως
emperor none of-them to dignity having-been-raised of-an-emperor
ἀδελφοῖς διαπρέπουσαν, εἶτα καὶ παρὰ τοῦ γαμβροῦ καὶ
for-brothers distinguished then also by the son-in-law and
βασιλέως· καὶ φυγαδίαι τῆς Ῥωμαίων γεγενημένοι πρὸς
emperor and exiles from-the of-Romans having-become toward
αὐτοὺς ἐδυσμέναινον. καὶ ταῦτα μὲν ἴσως ἐρεῖ τις
them were-hostile and these-things indeed perhaps will-say someone
αἴτια εἶναι, τὸ δ' ἀληθὲς τὰ τῶν ἀνθρώπων ἤθη ἀβέβαια
causes to-be the but truth the of-the men characters unstable
ὄντα καὶ ἄστατα τοιούτους τυγχάνειν ἐποίουν. καὶ ταῦτα
being and unsteady such to-be made and these-things
μὲν οὐ διελάνθανεν οὐδὲ τὸν βασιλέα Θεόδωρον· τέως
indeed not escaped not-even the emperor Theodore meanwhile
οὖν ἐξ ἀνάγκης καὶ τῷ μὴ ἔχειν κρείττοσιν ἄλλοις
then from necessity and by-the not to-have better others
βουλεύεσθαι τούτοις ἐχρᾶτο πρὸς συμβουλάς. ὑπετίθεντο
to-consult these he-used for counsels proposed
γοῦν οὗτοι ὡς οὐ χρεὼν τὸν βασιλέα διαπερᾶσαι πρὸς
then these that not it-is-right the emperor to-cross to
τὴν δυσμήν, ὅτι τε κακῶς πράττει τὰ τοιαῦτα μέρη καὶ
the west because both badly fare the such parts and
ὡς νοσεῖ σχεδὸν ἀθεράπευτα, στράτευμά τε μὴ ἔχειν τὸν
that are-sick almost incurably army both not to-have the
βασιλέα προσῆκον πράξει βασιλικῇ· ὁ γὰρ χειμὼν ἐκώλυε
emperor fitting for-deed imperial the for winter prevented
τὴν συνάθροισιν τῶν δυνάμεων. καὶ τὸ ἐπιδημῆσαι κατὰ
the gathering of-the forces and the to-visit by
χώραν τὸν βασιλέα καὶ μὴ ἄξιον τοῦ ὀνόματος αὐτοῦ καὶ
land the emperor and not worthy of-the name his and

τῆς φήμης ἐργάσασθαι οὐ τῶν ἀφηρημένων καὶ μόνων
of-the fame to-accomplish not of-the(-places) taken-away and only
βεβαίωσιν ἐν τοῖς ἐχθροῖς ποιεῖται ἀλλὰ καὶ τῶν
confirmation in the enemies makes but also of-the(-places)
περιλελειμμένων ἀφαίρεσιν αὔξην τε τῶν ὑπεναντίων πολλῷ
left-over removal increase both of-the opponents by-much
μείζονα, ὡς καὶ τῶν Ῥωμαϊκῶν πραγμάτων ἐλάττωσιν οὐ
greater as also of-the Roman affairs diminution not
σμικράν. ταῦτα μὲν ἔφασκον οὗτοι, ἄλλοι δὲ πάντες τὴν
small these-things indeed said these others but all the
βασιλικὴν περαίωσιν συνεβούλευον καὶ ταύτην κατήπειγον,
imperial crossing advised and it urged
μὴ λάθοι τὰ πάντα τῶν ἐν δυσμῇ ἢ τὰ πλείω
lest might-escape-notice the all of-the(-places) in west or the more
ταῖς τῶν ἐχθρῶν χερσὶν ἁλωθῆναι. ἡ τῶν πλειόνων γοῦν
to-the of-the enemies hands be-taken the of-the more then
ἴσχυσε βουλή, μάλιστα δὲ τοῦ βασιλέως τὸ πρόθυμον καὶ
prevailed counsel especially and of-the emperor the eagerness and
ὁ τῆς καρδίας αὐτοῦ ζῆλος, ἐκκαὴς γεγονὼς πρὸς τὴν
the of-the heart his zeal kindled having-become for the
κίνησιν. καὶ προσλαβόμενος τοὺς ὅσοι συνακολουθεῖν
movement and having-taken the(-ones) as-many-as to-follow
ἔτυχον, εἰς μέτριον ἀριθμουμένους στράτευμα, καὶ τοὺς
happened to moderate numbering army and the(-ones)
καθ' ὁδὸν ξυντυγχάνοντας καὶ τοὺς ἐγγύτερον τῆς
on road meeting and the(-ones) nearer of-the(-road)
φερούσης ὄντας καὶ δυναμένους αὐτοῖς ὅπλοις καὶ ἵπποις
leading being and able with-the-very arms and horses
ἐφέψεσθαι, διαπεραιοῦται τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον καὶ ὡς εἶχε
to-follow crosses — Hellespont and as he-had
τάχους τὴν Ἀδριανούπολιν πέφθακε.
of-speed — Adrianople reached

56 Μίαν δὲ καὶ μόνην ἡμέραν διακαρτερήσας ἐν ταύτῃ ἐξῆλθεν
one and also only day having-stayed in it he-went-out
ἐς νέωτα. καί τις τῶν ἐκ Βουλγάρων κατοπτήρων τὸν
for next-day and some-one of-the from Bulgarians scouts the
βασιλέα τεθεαμένος τῆς Ἀδριανοῦ ἐξερχόμενον δρομαῖος
emperor having-seen from-the of-Hadrian going-out running
περὶ τὸν βουλγάραρχον ἵκετο — περὶ τὸν Ἔβρον καὶ γὰρ
to the Bulgarian-ruler came at — Hebros also for
οὗτος ἐστρατοπεδεύετο — καὶ τὸ δρᾶμα διασαφεῖ καὶ
this(-man) was-encamped and the drama makes-clear and
τὴν τοῦ βασιλέως ἐξαγγέλλει κατ᾽ αὐτοῦ ταχεῖαν ἔφοδον,
the of-the emperor announces against him swift attack
καὶ ὅρκοις ἐβεβαιοῦτο ἢ μὴν ὀφθαλμοῖς τεθεᾶσθαι τὸν
and with-oaths confirmed truly indeed with-eyes to-have-seen the
βασιλέα τὴν πρὸς τῇ πόλει τυγχάνουσαν τοῦ ποταμοῦ
emperor the by the city being of-the river
Ἔβρου γέφυραν διαβαίνοντα. τοῦτο συνέχεε μὲν τοὺς
Hebros bridge crossing this confounded indeed the(-ones)
περὶ τὸν βουλγάραρχον, οὐ μὴν τοῦ τόπου καθ᾽ ὃν
about the Bulgarian-ruler not however from-the place in which
ἔλαχον στρατοπεδεύειν ἀπέστησεν, ἀλλ᾽ ἔμενον ἐκεῖσε
they-had-happened to-encamp removed but remained there
μέχρις ἂν γνοῖεν τὰ τῆς φήμης ἀκριβέστερόν
until — they-might-learn the(-things) of-the report more-exactly
τε καὶ καθαρώτερον. ἀλλ᾽ οὐδὲ τὸν βασιλέα ἡ τοῦ
both and more-clearly but not-even the emperor the of-the
βουλγαράρχου κατασκήνωσις λέληθεν, ἀλλ᾽ ἐμεμαθήκει τὸν
Bulgarian-ruler encampment escaped but he-had-learned the
τόπον, ὅπου δὴ τὸ στρατόπεδον εἶχε. ταχυτέραν γοῦν τὴν
place where indeed the camp he-had swifter then the
πορείαν ἐποιεῖτο καὶ τῶν ἵππων τὰς κινήσεις ἐπέτεινε, καὶ
march he-made and of-the horses the movements extended and

ηὔχετο τῷ Βουλγαρικῷ ξυντυχεῖν στρατεύματι. οὕτω γοῦν
prayed with-the Bulgarian to-meet army thus then
ἔχων ὁρμήματος ἔκ τινος συμβάματος ἐσφάλη τυχηρῶς
being of-impulse from some occurrence was-foiled by-chance
τοῦ βουλεύματος. οἱ γὰρ προάγοντες τῶν Ῥωμαϊκῶν
of-the plan the for leading of-the Roman
στρατευμάτων τοῖς εἰς φυλακὴν προτεταγμένοις τοῦ
armies with-the(-ones) for guard posted-before of-the
Βουλγαρικοῦ στρατοπέδου συμπεπτώκασι, καὶ πολλοὺς
Bulgarian camp fell-in and many
μὲν ξίφους ἔργον πεποίηνται, ἄλλους δὲ ζωγρίας εἷλον,
indeed of-sword work made others and alive took
σὺν αὐτοῖς δὲ καὶ τὸν τὴν ἡγεμονίαν τῆς στρατείας
with them and also the(-one) the command of-the expedition
ἔχοντα· οἱ δ' ἕτεροι φυγῇ χρησάμενοι νυκτὸς βαθείας
having the and others flight having-used by-night deep
εἰς τὸ Βουλγαρικὸν ἀπέδρασαν στράτευμα καὶ διηγοῦντο
to the Bulgarian ran-off army and narrated
πάντα καὶ τὸ πλησίον αὐτῶν ἤδη τυγχάνειν τὸν βασιλέα
all and the near them already to-be the emperor
διισχυρίζοντο. ὡς ἔτυχε γοῦν ἕκαστος τῶν Βουλγάρων καὶ
insisted as happened then each of-the Bulgarians and
αὐτὸς ὁ τούτων ἄρχων, ἐπιβὰς τοῦ ἵππου, περὶ τὰ
himself the their ruler having-mounted the horse about the
ἐνδότερα τῶν Βουλγαρικῶν ἐφέρετο χώρων. κατεδρύπτοντο
farther-in of-the Bulgarian was-borne lands were-torn
δὲ τούτων τοῖς τῶν δένδρων κλάδοις τὰ πρόσωπα,
and their by-the of-the trees branches the faces
συνηρεφέσι τούτοις ἐμπίπτοντα· ὃ δὴ καὶ αὐτὸς ὁ
overarching on-these falling which indeed also himself the
βουλγάραρχος πέπονθεν· ἔνιοι δὲ αὐτῶν καὶ γυμνοῖς
Bulgarian-ruler suffered some and of-them also bare

ἐφεστρίδων εἰς τὴν ὀχείαν τοῖς ἵπποις ἐχρήσαντο. οὕτω
of-saddle-cloths for the riding the horses used thus
γοῦν διαδράντες τὴν Ῥωμαϊκὴν ἀπέφυγον σπάθην. ἕωθεν δὲ
then having-run-away the Roman escaped sword at-dawn and
τὸν τόπον φθάσας ὁ βασιλεὺς καὶ ἔρημον στρατεύματος
the place having-reached the emperor and deserted of-army
Βουλγαρικοῦ κατιδὼν λελύπηται μέν, οὐκ εἶχε δ' ὅ τι
Bulgarian having-seen was-grieved indeed not he-had but what at-all
καὶ δράσειε. βουλὴν δὲ ποιησάμενος περὶ τὴν Βερόην χωρεῖ,
also he-might-do counsel and having-made toward — Beroe goes
κἀκεῖσε δὲ ἀφιγμένος αὐτοβοεὶ τὸ φρούριον εἷλεν. ἅπαν
and-there and having-arrived at-the-first-shout the fortress took all
γὰρ τὸ τεῖχος αὐτοῦ κατηρείπωτο καὶ διεξόδους εἶχε πολλάς,
for the wall its had-been-demolished and passages had many
καταβεβλημένον καὶ τοῦτο παρὰ τῶν Βουλγάρων σὺν τοῖς
thrown-down and this by the Bulgarians with the
λοιποῖς τῶν Ῥωμαϊκῶν ἄστεων, εἰ καὶ κάμαξι καὶ τοῖς ἐξ
other of-the Roman towns if even with-stakes and the from
ἁμαξῶν ξύλοις ἐδόκουν αὐτὸ κατοχυρώσασθαι οἱ οἰκήτορες.
wagons timbers seemed it to-fortify the inhabitants
τροφῶν γοῦν ηὐμοίρησε τὰ στρατεύματα, αὐτοί τε καὶ οἱ
of-provisions then had-plenty the armies themselves both and the
τούτων ἵπποι· ἐπέπληστο γὰρ τῶν χορτασμάτων τὸ ἄστυ.
their horses was-filled for of-the fodders the town
καὶ τάχα ἂν καὶ προσωτέρω ἐκεχωρήκει ὁ βασιλεὺς καὶ
and perhaps — also farther would-have-gone the emperor and
περὶ τὸν Αἷμον αὐτὸν καὶ τὰ ἐν αὐτῷ τυγχάνοντα φρούρια
toward — Haimos itself and the in it being fortresses
τὴν ἔφοδον ἐπεποίητο — πτοίαν γὰρ οὐ σμικρὰν τοῖς
the attack had-made terror for not small to-the
Βουλγάροις ἐνέβαλλεν — εἰ μὴ χειμὼν βαρύτατος αἴφνης
Bulgarians he-was-casting if not winter very-heavy suddenly

ἐπεισπεσὼν ἐκώλυσεν αὐτὸν τῆς ὁρμῆς· πολλὴ γὰρ χιὼν
having-fallen-upon hindered him from-the impulse much for snow
τὸ πρόσωπον τῆς γῆς ἐπηλύγασε, καὶ τὸ ἐπὶ ξένης καὶ
the face of-the earth covered and the on foreign and
πολεμίας τὰ Ῥωμαϊκὰ χρονίζειν στρατεύματα οὐ καλὸν
hostile(-ground) the Roman to-linger armies not good
ἐδόκει τοῖς ξυμβουλεύουσιν. ἡμέρας οὖν ἓξ ἐκεῖσε
seemed to-the(-ones) advising days then six there
διακαρτερήσας ὁ βασιλεύς, ἐπεὶ μὴ εἶχέ τι ἕτερον
having-stayed the emperor since not he-had anything other
δρᾶσαι, λείαν τὰ Βερόης ἅπαντα ποιησάμενος, ἄνδρας
to-do booty the(-things) of-Beroe all having-made men
γυναῖκας νήπια πρόβατα βόας καὶ σύμπαν ἄλλο κινεῖσθαι
women infants sheep oxen and all else to-be-moved
δυνάμενον, εἰς τὴν Ἀδριανοῦ τὴν ὑποστροφὴν ἐποιήσατο.
able to the of-Hadrian the return made
Ἐκεῖθεν γοῦν ἐπιλεξάμενος ἀξιόλογον στράτευμα περὶ τὰ 57
thence then having-selected considerable army to the
ἐν Ἀχριδῶν φρούρια ἐπεπόμφει τὰ πρὸ μικροῦ τοῖς
in of-Achridos fortresses had-sent the(-ones) before little by-the
Βουλγάροις κεχειρωμένα, εἴ πως καὶ αὖθις τῇ τῶν
Bulgarians subdued if somehow also again to-the of-the
Ῥωμαίων ὑπαχθεῖεν ἀρχῇ. ἐν αὐτοῖς γοῦν ἀφιγμένοι σὺν
Romans they-might-be-brought rule in them then having-arrived with
τοῖς στρατεύμασιν οἱ τῶν Ῥωμαίων ἡγήτορες μηχανήμασί
the armies the of-the Romans commanders with-engines
τε καὶ ἑλεπόλεσι ῥᾷον τῶν φρουρίων περιεγένοντο· οἱ
both and siege-engines more-easily the fortresses overcame the
Βούλγαροι καὶ γὰρ θᾶττον τῶν ἐν ἄστεσι φυλακῶν
Bulgarians also for more-quickly from-the in towns guards
ἀπαλλάττονται, εἰ πολεμίους ὁρῷεν καὶ μαχιμωτέροις
are-released if enemies they-should-see and with-more-warlike

συμπλακεῖεν τοῖς πράγμασιν. ἐν οὐ πολλῷ γοῦν τὰ πλείω
they-should-engage the affairs in not much then the more
αὐτῶν ἐχειρώσαντο. ἀλλὰ καὶ ὁ βασιλεὺς τὸν περὶ αὐτὸν
of-them subdued but also the emperor the about him
συναθροίσας στρατὸν περὶ τὰ ἐν Ῥοδόπῃ ἄστη κεχώρηκε,
having-gathered army to the in Rhodope towns went
καὶ εἶλε μὲν Περιστίτζαν τοῖς μηχανήμασι καὶ μετ' αὐτὴν
and took indeed Peristitza with-the engines and after it
τὸν Στενίμαχον καὶ ἐπὶ τούτοις τὸν Κρυτζιμόν, ὀχυρώτατα
— Stenimachos and upon these — Krytzimos strongest
ταῦτα πάντα καὶ εἰς πρόσωπον κείμενα τοῦ τῆς Ῥοδόπης
these all and in front lying of-the — of-Rhodope
ὄρους καὶ τὰ ὀπίσω πάντα φυλάττοντα. ἀφίκετο δὲ
mountain and the(-places) behind all guarding arrived and
καὶ εἰς Τζέπαιναν ἐν ἀκμῇ χειμῶνος, ἡ δὲ τοῦ τόπου
also at Tzepaina in height of-winter the and of-the place
δυσχωρία καὶ τὸ ψυχρὸν τοῦ καιροῦ οὐδὲ μικρόν τι
difficulty-of-ground and the cold of-the season not-even little at-all
εἴασεν ἐν ταύτῃ προσκαρτερῆσαι. ἐπεὶ δὲ τὸ ἔαρ ἐπέλαμψε,
allowed in it to-persist when and the spring shone-forth
προστάγματα πρὸς τὸν Στρατηγόπουλον Ἀλέξιον καὶ
orders to — Strategopoulos Alexios and
τὸν Τορνίκην Κωνσταντῖνον, ὃν μέγαν πριμμικήριον ὁ
— Tornikes Constantine whom great primmikerios the
βασιλεὺς τετίμηκεν Ἰωάννης, ἐξέπεμψεν, ἐν ταῖς Σέρραις
emperor honored John he-sent in — Serres
ὄντας καὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον ἔχοντας, ἵνα τὴν στρατιὰν πᾶσαν
being and the camp having that the army all
συναγαγόντες κατὰ τῆς Τζεπαίνης ἀφίκοιντο. τοῦτο δὴ
having-gathered against — Tzepaina they-should-come this indeed
καὶ ἐποίησαν, κακοὶ δὲ ἐφάνησαν ἐν τούτῳ τῷ ἐπιχειρήματι
also they-did bad and appeared in this the undertaking

στρατηγοί· μήτε γὰρ πολεμίων ἐγκύρσαντες στρατιαῖς μήτε
generals neither for of-enemies having-met armies nor
ἀνδράσιν ἀξίοις τούτοις μαχέσασθαι, κτύπων δὲ καὶ μόνων
men worthy with-these to-fight of-noises but and only
καὶ ψόφων ἀκηκοότες καὶ ἤχων κερατίνων ἀκροασάμενοι,
and of-sounds having-heard and of-blasts horn having-listened-to
ἀκόσμως ἐχρήσαντο τῇ φυγῇ, πᾶσαν ἀποσκευὴν καὶ
disorderly used the flight all baggage and
τοὺς πλείους τῶν ἵππων τοῖς ποιμέσι καὶ συβώταις τῶν
the more of-the horses to-the shepherds and swineherds of-the
Βουλγάρων καταλιπόντες. οὕτω μὲν οὖν ἐκεῖνοι φυγαδίαι
Bulgarians having-left so indeed then they fugitives
γεγονότες τὰς Σέρρας καὶ αὖθις κατέλαβον, ἵππων καὶ
having-become — Serres also again reached of-horses and
ὅπλων γυμνοὶ τυγχάνοντες. ὁ μὲν οὖν βασιλεὺς διὰ
of-arms bare being the indeed then emperor because-of
ταῦτα θυμοῦ μὲν ἐπέπλησto, καὶ προσέταττεν ἐξ ὀργῆς
these-things of-anger indeed was-filled and ordered from wrath
αὐτοὺς ἐκείνους, ὅπως ἂν ἔχοιεν, περὶ τὴν αὐτὴν καὶ
them those-very so-that — they-might-be-able to the same also
αὖθις μάχην χωρῆσαι· οἱ δὲ ἀδυνάτως εἶχον τῆς πράξεως.
again battle to-go they but impossibly were of-the deed
Ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτα οὕτω συνέβη, συνεπεπτώκει καί τι 58
when and these-things so happened had-befallen also some(-thing)
τῶν βαρυτέρων καὶ πολλὴν τὴν κατὰ τῶν Ῥωμαίων
of-the heavier and much the against the Romans
βλάβην ἐπαπειλοῦν. ὁ γὰρ τοῦ Μελενικιωτικοῦ προεξάρχων
harm threatening the for of-the Melenikiote leader
στρατεύματος, Δραγωτᾶς τοὔνομα, καὶ φύσει μὲν ὡς
army Dragotas the-name and by-nature indeed as
Βούλγαρος δύσνοιαν τρέφων κατὰ Ῥωμαίων, ἔτι δὲ καὶ
Bulgarian ill-will nourishing against Romans still and also

πλέον φέρων τοῦ φυσικοῦ διὰ τὴν πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα
more bearing than-the natural because-of the toward the emperor
ἀπέχθειαν — ἤλπισε γὰρ ἐξ αὐτοῦ μεγάλων τυχεῖν· οὐδὲ
hatred he-hoped for from him great(-things) to-obtain not-even
γὰρ ἔκρινεν ἄξια τὰ παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως Ἰωάννου
for judged worthy the(-things) by the emperor John
ἐκείνῳ κεχορηγημένα καὶ ταῦτα πολλὰ γεγενημένα —
to-that(-man) furnished and these many having-become
ἀποστασίαν φανερὰν μεμελέτηκε. καὶ δὴ πάντας τοὺς ἐν
revolt open practiced and indeed all the in
Μελενίκῳ συναγαγὼν στρατιώτας τε καὶ λοιπούς, ἔτι δὲ
Melenikon having-gathered soldiers both and others still and
καὶ ἄλλους παμπόλλους ἐκ τῶν πέριξ χωρῶν, παρεκάθισε
also others very-many from the around lands sat-down-before
τοῦ Μελενίκου τῷ ἄστει καὶ ἐπολιόρκει τοῦτο καὶ ἐφιλονείκει
— of-Melenikon the town and besieged it and strove
πορθεῖν. ἦσαν δὲ ἐν τούτῳ τῷ ἄστει προτεταγμένοι τῶν
to-sack were and in this the town placed-in-command of-the(-ones)
φυλασσόντων ὅ τε Νεστόγγος Θεόδωρος καὶ ὁ Ἄγγελος
guarding — both Nestongos Theodore and — Angelos
Ἰωάννης, καὶ ἀμφότεροι δέξιοι ἄστη φυλάξαι καὶ πολεμίους
John and both skillful towns to-guard and enemies
ἐκτρέψασθαι. ἐστενοχώρει δὲ τοὺς ἔνδον τοῦ ἄστεος οὐδὲν
to-turn-back distressed and the(-ones) within the town nothing
ἄλλο — καὶ γὰρ ηὐμοίρουν τῶν χρειωδῶν — ἀλλ᾽ ἢ ἡ
other also for they-had-plenty of-the necessities but than the
τοῦ ὕδατος ἔνδεια, ἐν ὥρᾳ θέρους τὸ ἀναγκαιότατον τῶν
of-the water lack in season of-summer the most-necessary of-the
ἄλλων κἀν τῇ σπάνει βαρύτατον. οἱ δὲ — καὶ γὰρ
others and-in the scarcity heaviest the(-ones) but also for
οὐ πάντῃ τούτους τὸ ὕδωρ ἐξέλιπε — καρτερῶς τοῖς
not wholly them the water failed mightily with-the

ἐναντίοις ἐμάχοντο καὶ ἀνθίσταντο καὶ ὀϊστοῖς ἔβαλλον
opponents fought and resisted and with-arrows shot
καὶ λίθοις ἐτίτρωσκον καὶ πᾶσιν ἄλλοις ὅπλοις ἐμάχοντο.
and with-stones wounded and with-all other arms fought
Τούτων ἐν ἀκροάσει γενόμενος ὁ βασιλεὺς δυσφόρως τὴν
of-these in hearing having-come the emperor grievously the
ἀκοὴν ἤνεγκε, βουλὴν δὲ βουλευσάμενος τὴν ἀρίστην, ὡς
report bore counsel and having-counseled the best as
εἶχε τάχους ἅπαν ξυναγοχὼς τὸ στρατόπεδον δωδεκαταῖος
he-had of-speed all having-gathered the camp on-the-twelfth-day
τὰς Σέρρας πέφθακεν, ἐν ὀλίγῳ χρόνῳ τοσαύτην διανύσας
— Serres reached in little time so-great having-completed
ὁδὸν καὶ τοσοῦτον ἐπαγόμενος στράτευμα, ταῖς κατὰ
road and so-great bringing army to-the in
συστάδην εἰθισμένον μάχαις, ὅπλοις κατάφρακτον καὶ
close-quarters accustomed battles with-arms armored and
ἵπποις φορταγωγοῖς διοικούμενον καὶ πάσαις ἄλλαις
by-horses pack-carrying managed and with-all other
ἀποσκευαῖς συγκροτούμενον καὶ περιφραγνύμενον. ἐπεὶ δὲ
baggage made-up and fenced-around when and
μέχρι Σερρῶν κατηντήκει, αὐτόθι διανυκτερεύσας, ἅμα
as-far-as Serres he-had-arrived there having-spent-the-night at-once
πρωῒ τὰ στρατεύματα συνταξάμενος καὶ τοὺς πεζαιτέρους
at-dawn the armies having-arranged and the more-foot
καὶ τοξοφόρους ἔμπροσθεν βαίνειν ἐγκελευσάμενος, ἐπείπερ
and bow-bearers in-front to-go having-ordered since
ἐπέπυστο τὴν τοῦ Ῥουπελίου δυσχωρίαν, καθ' ἣν ὁ
he-had-learned the — of-Roupelion difficult-ground in which the
ποταμὸς Στρυμὼν ῥεῖ, δυσὶ συγκλειόμενος ὄρεσιν, ὡς
river Strymon flows by-two shut-in mountains so-that
μόγις ἅμαξαν διὰ ταύτης ἔρχεσθαι, τοῦ ποταμοῦ
hardly wagon through it to-go the river

στενωτάτην ἀπεργαζομένου τὴν δίοδον, — κλεισούρας
narrowest making the passage kleisouras
τοὺς τοιούτους τόπους ὁ πολὺς κατονομάζει λαός —
the such places the many name people
Βουλγαρικῇ φυλάττεσθαι στρατιᾷ ἱππέων μὲν ὀλίγων
by-Bulgarian to-be-guarded army of-horsemen indeed few
πεζῶν δὲ πολλῶν, — οἱ γὰρ Βούλγαροι καὶ πύλας ἐν
of-foot but many the for Bulgarians also gates in
αὐταῖς κατεσκεύασαν μοχλοῖς καὶ κλείθροις ἠσφαλισμένας,
them built with-bars and bolts secured
ὡς ἄμαχα τούτοις ἐξ ἀμφοτέρων τυγχάνειν τῆς τε
so-that unassailable for-them from both to-be of-the both
δυσκολίας τοῦ τόπου καὶ τῆς γεγενημένης παρ᾽ αὐτῶν
difficulty of-the place and of-the made by them
προμηθείας καὶ τῆς λοιπῆς ὀχυρώσεως — ἐπεὶ ταῦτα
forethought and of-the other fortification when these-things
οὕτως ἔχειν ἐμεμαθήκει ὁ βασιλεύς, σπουδῇ περὶ τὸν
so to-be had-learned the emperor with-haste to the
ἐκεῖσε χῶρον ἀφῖκτο, εὗρε δὲ τὰ ἐν αὐτῷ καθάπερ
there region arrived found and the(-things) in it as
ἐπέπυστο. ἀποκόψας οὖν τῆς τῶν πεζαιτέρων στρατιᾶς
he-had-learned having-cut-off then of-the of-the more-foot army
ὅσον ἦν εἰκὸς σύνταγμα, ὑπὲρ κεφαλῆς τῶν Βουλγάρων
as-much-as was fitting detachment over head of-the Bulgarians
βαδίζειν εἰς τὸ ὄρος προστέταχεν, ὡς ἂν ἐξ ὑπερδεξίων
to-go to the mountain ordered so-that — from higher-ground
τοὺς Βουλγάρους βάλλωσιν ἐξ ὑψηλοτέρων τῶν τόπων
the Bulgarians they-might-shoot from higher the places
ἐν τοῖς χθαμαλοῖς ἐκείνους τυγχάνοντας. οἱ δὲ θᾶττον
in the low-lying them being the(-men) and quickly
ἐποίουν τὰ προσταττόμενα· ἦν γὰρ τὸ ὄρος δένδροις
did the(-things) ordered was for the mountain with-trees

μὲν συνηρεφές, βάσιμον δὲ ποσὶ πεζαιτέρων· ἱππεῦσι δὲ
indeed overarched passable but for-feet of-foot-soldiers for-horsemen and
κατευθὺ τῶν πυλῶν τὴν μάχην ποιεῖν ἐκέλευσεν.
straight-at the gates the battle to-make he-ordered
Ἐπεὶ γοῦν κατεῖδον οἱ Βούλγαροι ἄνωθεν μὲν ἐκ τῶν
when then saw the Bulgarians from-above indeed from the
βουνῶν ὀϊστοῖς αὐτοὺς βαλλομένους, σταδαίαν δὲ τὴν
hills with-arrows themselves being-shot standing and the
μάχην κατεναντίον κεκτημένους, καὶ ἐν στενῷ κομιδῇ
battle opposite having and in strait utterly
τὰ κατ᾽ αὐτοὺς καθορῶντες εἰς φυγὴν ἐτράποντο,
the(-affairs) concerning them seeing to flight turned
καὶ τὸ βασιλικὸν αὐτοῖς ἐφείπετο στράτευμα. πολλοὺς οὖν
and the imperial them followed army many then
ἐκεῖσε σπάθης ἔργον πεποίηνται, οἱ δ᾽ ἄλλοι μέχρι καὶ τῶν
there of-sword work made the and others up-to also the
Βουλγαρικῶν στρατευμάτων διασωθέντες ἀπέδρασαν καὶ
Bulgarian armies having-been-saved ran-off and
τούτοις τὰ περὶ τοῦ βασιλέως ἀπήγγειλαν καὶ ὅσα
to-these the(-things) about the emperor reported and as-much-as
δὴ ἐπεπόνθεισαν. οἱ δὲ τῷ ἀθρόῳ διαταραχθέντες τῆς
indeed they-had-suffered the(-ones) and at-the suddenness having-been-confounded of-the
ἀκοῆς, καὶ ὡς αἴφνης αὐτοῖς ἐπεισπέπτωκε τὰ δεινά,
report and as suddenly on-them had-fallen the terrible(-things)
ἕκαστος ὡς εἶχεν ἵππου τοῦ ἐφευρεθέντος αὐτῷ σχεδὸν
each as he-had horse the found by-him almost
ἐπιβάς, φεύγειν ὥρμησαν. ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ νὺξ ὑπῆρχεν
having-mounted to-flee rushed since and also night was
ἀσέληνος, καθ᾽ ἣν ἡ φυγή, καὶ δυσχερὴς ὁ τόπος καὶ
moonless in which the flight and difficult the place and
τὰ τῶν ὁδῶν δυσδιάγνωστα, ἔπιπτον μὲν ἐξ ἵππων
the(-things) of-the roads hard-to-make-out fell indeed from horses

ἔνιοι, ἕτεροι δὲ αὐτοὺς κατεπάτουν καὶ ἔφθειραν, καὶ ἄλλοι
some others and them trampled and destroyed and others
μὲν τῶν ἐφεστρίδων ἀπεσφενδονοῦντο κατὰ κρημνῶν,
indeed from-the saddle-cloths were-slung down cliffs
ἄλλοι δὲ ἄλλως τέλος δύστηνον ἀπελάμβανον, ὡς ὀλίγους
others and otherwise end wretched received so-that few
ἐξ αὐτῶν διασωθέντας εἰς τὴν Βουλγάρων ἀφῖχθαι. τότε
of them having-been-saved to the of-Bulgarians to-have-arrived then
δὴ καὶ ὁ προϊστάμενος αὐτῶν Δραγωτᾶς, ὁ καὶ
indeed also the leading them Dragotas the(-one) also
προεξάρχων τῆς ἀπιστίας, ἵππων ποσὶν ἅπαν τὸ σῶμα
first-leader of-the faithlessness of-horses by-feet all the body
συντέθλασται καὶ τριταῖος τὴν αὐτοῦ ψυχὴν ἐξεφύσησεν.
was-crushed and on-the-third-day the his soul breathed-out
ὁ μὲν οὖν βασιλεὺς τῆς νυκτὸς ἐκείνης τὸ ἄστυ καταλαβὼν
the indeed then emperor of-the night that the town having-reached
τοῖς ἐκεῖσε φυλάττουσι ξυνωμίλησε, κἀκεῖνοι ἀσπασίως
with-the(-ones) there guarding conversed and-they gladly
τε τὸν αὐτοκράτορα ὑπεδέξαντο καὶ κρότοις ἐπήνουν καὶ
both the autocrat received and with-applause praised and
εὐφήμοις λόγοις ἐκύδαινον καὶ ἀετὸν ταχὺν κατωνόμαζον.
with-auspicious words glorified and eagle swift named

59 Τὰ ἐκεῖσε μὲν οὖν, ὡς ἦν εἰκός, οἰκονομήσας ὁ
the(-things) there indeed then as was fitting having-arranged the
βασιλεύς, καὶ τὰς γυναῖκας καὶ τοὺς παῖδας τῶν
emperor and the wives and the children of-the(-ones)
ἀπιστησάντων ἐξορίσας τοῦ ἄστεος, πάντα δὲ τὰ αὐτῶν
having-been-faithless having-banished from-the town all and the their
χρήματα δημοσιευθῆναι κελεύσας, ἀπάρας τοῦ Μελενίκου
goods to-be-confiscated having-ordered having-set-out — from-Melenikon
ἐς τὴν Θεσσαλονίκην ἀφίκετο, κἀκεῖθεν τὸν Βαρδάρειον
to — Thessalonica arrived and-thence — Bardarios

διαπεράσας καὶ τὰ Βοδηνὰ παραμείψας ὀλίγον ἐκεῖσε
having-crossed and — Bodena having-passed for-a-little there
τὰς σκηνὰς ἔπηξεν. ἐνόσησε δὲ νόσημα ἑδρικόν· τοῦτο
the tents pitched fell-ill and with-illness of-the-seat this
δὲ καὶ ἐπιδήμιον τοῖς ἐκεῖσε στρατεύμασιν ἐγεγόνει.
and also epidemic among-the there armies had-become
διακαρτερήσας οὖν ἐκεῖσε μικρὸν ὅσον ῥαΐσαι τὴν νόσον,
having-stayed then there a-little as-much-as to-ease the illness
περὶ τὸν Πρίλαπον ὥρμησεν. ἐκεῖσε γοῦν προσηκόντως
toward — Prilapos set-out there then fittingly
συσκευασάμενος καὶ μηχανήματα προσλαβόμενος καὶ
having-prepared and engines having-taken-in-addition and
ἁμάξαις τὰς ἑλεπόλεις συγκομισάμενος ἐς τὸν Βελεσὸν
on-wagons the siege-engines having-brought-together to — Belesos
ἐχώρει πολιορκῆσαι τοῦτον καὶ τῆς τῶν ἐχθρῶν χειρὸς
went to-besiege it and from-the of-the enemies hand
ἐξελεῖν. οἱ δὲ καὶ μόνον τῇ τοῦ βασιλέως ἐφόδῳ
to-take-out the(-men) and also only at-the of-the emperor attack
καταβροντηθέντες καὶ μηδὲ ἀναμείναντες ἀναστῆναι
having-been-thunderstruck and not-even having-waited to-be-set-up
μηχανήματα, εἰς συνθήκας ἐλθόντες ἐφ' ᾧ μηδέν
engines to agreements having-come on condition-that nothing
τι παθεῖν δεινόν, αὐτοῖς δὲ ὅπλοις καὶ πράγμασι
at-all to-suffer terrible with-the-very and with-arms and goods
τοῦ ἄστεος ἐξελθεῖν, τοὺς ὅρκους πρὸς τοῦ βασιλέως
from-the town to-go-out the oaths from the emperor
λαβόντες ἐξῆεσαν τοῦ φρουρίου. ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς ἐπείπερ
having-taken went-out from-the fortress the but emperor since
αὐτοὺς ἐθεάσατο παμπόλλους μὲν τὸν ἀριθμὸν — εἰς
them he-saw very-many indeed the number to
γὰρ πεντακοσίους ἠρίθμηντο — εὐμεγέθη δὲ κεκτημένους
for five-hundred they-were-counted well-grown and having

τὰ σώματα καὶ ἀγαθοὺς τὰς μορφάς, ἐπὶ τῇ πράξει
the bodies and good the forms at the deed
μεταμεμέληται, εἰ τοσούτους καὶ τοιούτους ἐάσει πρὸς
repented that so-many and such he-will-allow to
τὴν τῶν ἐχθρῶν ἀφικέσθαι καὶ ἐναντίους γενέσθαι
the(-land) of-the enemies to-arrive and opponents to-become
Ῥωμαίοις· ὑπὸ δὲ τῶν ὅρκων ἀναγκασθεὶς ἀπέλυσε
to-Romans by and the oaths having-been-compelled released
σφᾶς αὐτοὺς ἀποδοὺς τὴν ἐλευθερίαν.
them themselves having-given-back the freedom
Ἐκεῖθεν οὖν μετὰ πάσης τῆς στρατιᾶς ὁρμήσας διὰ τῆς
thence then with all the army having-set-out through —
Νευσταπόλεως τὴν πορείαν ἐποιεῖτο. ἄνυδρος δέ ἐστιν ὁ
Neustapolis the march made waterless and is the
τόπος καὶ ἄοικος καὶ πλήθει στρατευμάτων δυσβάδιστος.
place and uninhabited and for-multitude of-armies hard-to-traverse
ἄρτου γοῦν ἐν ἐνδείᾳ ἐν οὐ μετρίαις ἡμέραις διῆγεν ἡ
of-bread then in lack in not moderate days spent-time the
στρατιά, καὶ δυσὶν ἡμέραις οἱ πλείους τῶν ἵππων ὑπῆρξαν
army and for-two days the more of-the horses were
ὕδατος ἄγευστοι. τὸ γοῦν τῆς Στρουμμίτζης παραμείψαντες
of-water untasting the then — of-Stroummitza having-passed
ἄστυ καὶ διὰ τῶν τοῦ Μελενίκου χώρων βαδίσαντες
town and through the — of-Melenikon lands having-marched
εἰς τὰς Σέρρας καὶ αὖθις ἀπήειμεν. ἔνθα καὶ γραφὰς ὁ
to — Serres also again we-went-off where also letters the
αὐτοκράτωρ δεξάμενος ἐκ τῶν τῆς ἀνατολῆς μερῶν πρὸς
autocrat having-received from the of-the east parts by
τοῦ προσφιλοῦς αὐτοῦ πεμφθείσας Μουζάλωνος, ὡς τὰ
the dear his sent Mouzalon that the(-affairs)
τῶν Μουσουλμάνων πρὸς τῶν Ταχαρίων κυμαίνεται,
of-the Muslims by the Tachars are-surging

ἐπέτεινε τὴν ὁδὸν καὶ μακροτέρας τὰς ἡμερησίους ἐποιεῖτο
extended the road and longer the daily made
πορείας. ἐπεὶ δὲ τὸν Ἔβρον ἐπεφθάκει, ὃν καὶ Μαρίτζαν ὁ
marches when and — Hebros he-had-reached which also Maritza the
χυδαῖος κατονομάζει λαός, καὶ μὴ οὕτως ἔχειν τὰ ἐν τῇ ἕῳ
vulgar names people and not so to-be the in the east
μεμαθηκὼς πράγματα, τῆς ταχυτῆτος ἀνιεὶς σχολαιότερον
having-learned affairs from-the speed relaxing more-leisurely
ἐπορεύετο καὶ τοὺς συνήθεις βασιλικοὺς ἐποιεῖτο σταθμούς·
proceeded and the customary imperial made stages
παρεκκλίνας δὲ τῆς πρὸς ἕω κατ᾽ εὐθεῖαν ἐς τὸ
having-turned-aside and from-the(-road) to east by straight to —
Διδυμότειχον ἀφίκετο κἀκεῖθεν εἰς τὴν Ἀδριανοῦ.
Didymoteichon arrived and-thence to the of-Hadrian
Καὶ ἐπεὶ μηδὲν ἐναπολέλειπτο τῶν παρὰ τῶν Βουλγάρων
and since nothing had-been-left of-the by the Bulgarians
κατασχεθέντων φρουρίων καὶ ἄστεων — πάντα γὰρ ὁ
seized fortresses and towns all for the
βασιλεὺς ἐχειρώσατο — πλὴν δυοῖν, ἑνὸς μὲν φρουρίου
emperor subdued except two one indeed fortress
πάνυ σμικροτάτου ἐν τοῖς βουνοῖς κειμένου τῆς Ἀχριδοῦ
very smallest in the hills lying — of-Achridos
καὶ καλουμένου Πάτμου, ὃ καὶ εὐχερῶς πάνυ ὁ
and called Patmos which also easily very —
Φιλανθρωπηνὸς Ἀλέξιος εἶλεν ὁ Δούκας, καταλειφθεὶς
Philanthropenos Alexios took the Doukas left
πρὸς τοῦ βασιλέως εἰς φυλακὴν τῶν ἐν Ἀχριδῷ, καὶ
by the emperor for guard of-the(-places) in Achridos and
ἄστεος ἄλλου Τζεπαίνης ὀνομαζομένου, λίαν τυγχάνοντος
town other Tzepaina named very being
ὀχυροῦ καὶ περὶ τὴν ξυμβολὴν τελοῦντος τῶν δύο
strong and about the junction being of-the two

μεγίστων ὀρῶν, τοῦ τε Αἵμου καὶ τῆς Ῥοδόπης,
greatest mountains — both of-Haimos and — of-Rhodope
καθ' ὧν μέσον ὁ Ἔβρος ῥεῖ ποταμός, ἐν δεινῷ
between which middle — Hebros flows river in terrible(-light)
μὲν ἐποιεῖτο ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ, ὅτι μὴ καὶ αὐτῶν ὡς
indeed held the autocrat that not also these as
τῶν ἑτέρων ἐκράτησεν, ἀλλ' ἔτι τῆς χειρὸς αὐτοῦ
the others he-mastered but still than-the hand his
κρείττω φανέντα ἔξω τυγχάνουσι· μάλιστα δὲ ὑπὲρ
stronger having-appeared outside were especially and about
τῆς Τζεπαίνης ἐδυσφόρει τὰ μέγιστα. ἔσπευδε μὲν
— Tzepaina he-was-distressed the greatest(-degree) hastened indeed
οὖν καὶ κατὰ ταύτης στρατεῦσαι καὶ ὡς εἶχεν ἰσχύος
then also against it to-campaign and as he-had of-strength
ἀποπειράσασθαι. ἡ μὲν οὖν ὥρα τοῦ θέρους ἤδη παρῄει,
to-make-trial the indeed then season of-the summer already passed
καὶ τὸ μετόπωρον ἐγγὺς ἦν καὶ τοῦτο παραδραμεῖν. ὁ δὲ
and the autumn near was also this to-run-past he but
μηδέν τι τοῦ καιροῦ φροντίσας μηδὲ τὸ τοῦ χειμῶνος
nothing at-all of-the season having-taken-thought nor the of-the winter
προσκοπήσας δριμύ — ἑνὸς γὰρ καὶ μόνου τοῦ τὸ
having-foreseen harshness of-one for and only the the
οἰκεῖον ἀποπλῆσαι βούλημα ἐστοχάζετο — τὴν στρατιὰν
own to-fulfill wish he-aimed the army
πᾶσαν ἐκ τῆς Ἀδριανοῦ κινήσας ἁμάξας τε παμπόλλας
all from the of-Hadrian having-moved wagons both very-many
συλλεγῆναι προστάξας ἀπανταχόθεν τῆς τῶν Μακεδόνων
to-be-gathered having-ordered from-everywhere of-the of-the Macedonians
χώρας, τὰς μὲν ἐπὶ τῷ τὰ μηχανήματα καὶ τὰς
land the(-ones) indeed for the the engines and the
ἑλεπόλεις φέρειν, τὰς δὲ ἐπὶ τῷ διακομίζειν τὰ ζωαρκῆ
siege-engines to-carry the(-ones) and for the to-convey the provisions

τοῦ στρατεύματος, καὶ συναθροισθῆναι κελεύσας πληθὺν
of-the army and to-be-gathered having-ordered multitude
ἀνδρῶν πεζῶν τοξοτῶν καὶ κορυνοφόρων οὐκ εὐαρίθμητον,
of-men foot archers and club-bearers not easily-counted
ἐπεὶ πάντα καλῶς αὐτῷ καὶ ὡς ἔδοξε κατηρτίσατο, τῆς
when all well for-him and as seemed was-arranged from-the
Ἀδριανοῦ ἀπάρας κατὰ τῆς Τζεπαίνης ἐχώρει. τέσσαρας
of-Hadrian having-set-out against — Tzepaina went four
δὲ σταθμοὺς παρήμειψεν ὁ στρατός, καὶ κατὰ τὸν τόπον,
and stages passed the army and at the place
ὃν Μακρολιβάδα κατονομάζουσιν, ἐτητύμως πρὸς τὸ
which Makrolibada they-name truly to the
σχῆμα τὴν κλῆσιν οἱ πρώτως ἰδόντες θέμενοι, δεινὸς
shape the name the(-ones) first having-seen having-given terrible
συμπίπτει σφίσι χειμών. ἐξ ἑσπέρας γοῦν ἀρξάμενος, δι᾽
befalls them winter from evening then having-begun through
ὅλης τῆς νυκτὸς τὴν σφοδρότητα τοῦ ψύχους καὶ τοῦ
whole the night the violence of-the cold and of-the
ἀνέμου προσεπιτείνας τὸ βίαιον, πολλῇ τε χιόνι τῆς γῆς
wind having-intensified the force with-much both snow of-the earth
ἐπηλυγάσας τὴν ἐπιφάνειαν, ἕωθεν τῷ βασιλεῖ πολλὴν
having-covered the surface at-dawn to-the emperor much
προυξένησε τὴν δυσχέρειαν. ὅ τε γὰρ τόπος ἄοικος ἦν
caused the difficulty the both for place uninhabited was
καὶ ἐγγύτερον ἐτύγχανον οἱ πολέμιοι, καὶ ἡ προσδοκωμένη
and nearer were the enemies and the expected
σπάνις τῶν ἀναγκαίων οὐχ ἧττον τὴν ψυχὴν ἐπίεζε· τοῦτο
scarcity of-the necessities not less the soul pressed this
γὰρ καὶ μᾶλλον δεινότερον καθέστηκεν ἐν στρατεύμασιν.
for also rather more-terrible stands in armies

ἐς τοσαύτην γοῦν τὴν δυσφορίαν συνελαθεὶς τοὺς ἡγεμόνας
into so-great then the distress having-been-driven the commanders
συνηθροίκει τῶν στρατευμάτων, οὐ τῶν Ῥωμαϊκῶν μόνων
gathered of-the armies not of-the Roman only
ἀλλ' ἤδη καὶ τῶν ἐξ ἔθνους Λατίνων τε καὶ Σκυθῶν, καὶ
but already also of-the from nation Latins both and Scythians and
τούτους τί δεῖ ποιεῖν ἠρωτήκει. πάντες γοῦν σχεδὸν
them what it-is-necessary to-do asked all then almost
ἐβουλεύσαντο ἐς τὴν Ἀδριανοῦ τὴν ἐπιστροφὴν ποιήσασθαι.
advised to the of-Hadrian the return to-make
ὁ δὲ τὴν μὲν βουλὴν αὐτῶν οὐκ ἀπέπεμψεν, ἀλλὰ πρὸς
he but the indeed counsel their not dismissed but to
αὐτοὺς εἰρήκει ὡς 'ὑμεῖς μὲν ὅπερ κρεῖττον καὶ συμφέρον
them said that you indeed what better and advantageous
ἔδοξε καλῶς ἐβουλεύσασθε· εἰ δὲ καὶ αὐτὸς ἕτερόν τι
seemed well counseled if and also I-myself other something
σὺν θεῷ νοήσαιμι, οὐκ ἂν δέξησθε τοῦτο ὡς ἀπὸ δεσπότου
with God should-think not — receive this as from master
νουνεχοῦς εἰρημένον καὶ ὑμῶν ὡς δέον προνοουμένου;'
sensible said and for-you as needful taking-forethought
ξυνέφησαν ἅπαντες ὡς 'ὅπερ ἂν τῷ σῷ δόξειε κράτει,
agreed all that whatever — to-the your should-seem might
στερκτὸν αὐτὸ καὶ ἀσπαστὸν λογισαίμεθα.' τούτους μὲν
acceptable it and welcome we-would-reckon these indeed
οὖν πάντας ἀπέλυσεν ὁ βασιλεὺς εἰς τὰς σφετέρας
then all dismissed the emperor to the their
ἐπιέναι σκηνὰς ἐφ' ᾧ καὶ τροφῇ διὰ τὸν χειμῶνα
to-go tents for which also food because-of the winter
χρήσασθαι, αὐτὸς δὲ εἰς τὸν αὐτοῦ κοιτῶνα εἰσιὼν μετὰ
to-use he and into the his bedchamber entering with
τῶν περὶ αὐτὸν ἐβουλεύετο τί μᾶλλον χρὴ ποιεῖν.
the(-ones) about him deliberated what rather it-is-necessary to-do

τινὲς μὲν τὴν τῶν ἔξωθεν βουλευσαμένων βουλὴν
some indeed the of-the(-ones) outside having-counseled counsel
εἰς ἔργον ἐβουλεύοντο θεῖναι, ἄλλοι δέ, οἷς καὶ τὸ
into deed advised to-put others and to-whom also the
κρεῖττον διανοηθῆναι τῷ βασιλεῖ διακέκριται, τοὐναντίον
better to-think by-the emperor has-been-judged the-opposite
εἰρήκασιν. ἔφησαν καὶ γὰρ ‘ὅση μὲν ὁδός ἐστιν ἡμῖν
said said also for as-much-as indeed road is for-us
ὄπισθεν εἰς τὴν Ἀδριανοῦ, τοσαύτη καὶ ἔμπροσθεν εἰς
behind to the of-Hadrian so-much also in-front to
τὸ τοῦ Στενιμάχου ἄστυ καθέστηκε· καὶ ὥσπερ ἐκεῖ
the — of-Stenimachos town stands and as there
τῶν χρειωδῶν εὐμοιρῆσαι ἔχομεν, οὕτω δὴ καὶ εἰς
of-the necessities to-have-plenty we-are-able so indeed also at
τὸν Στενίμαχον. οὕτω γοῦν πράξαντες οὐ δόξαιμεν τοῖς
— Stenimachos thus then having-done not we-would-seem to-the
πολεμίοις οὔτε δειλίᾳ τῇ πρὸς αὐτοὺς οὔτε μὴν τῇ τοῦ
enemies neither by-cowardice the toward them nor indeed by-the of-the
χειμῶνος δυσχερείᾳ τὴν ὑποστροφὴν ποιήσασθαι.’ ἀρεστὸν
winter difficulty the return to-have-made pleasing
γοῦν ἔδοξε τοῦτο τῷ βασιλεῖ, καὶ ἐπεὶ τῆς δριμύτητος
then seemed this to-the emperor and since of-the harshness
καὶ ὁ χειμὼν ἔληγε καὶ ἡ τῆς χιόνος ἔστη φορά,
also the winter ceased and the of-the snow stood onrush
τὴν ἐπιοῦσαν τὸ ἀνακλητικὸν ἠχῆσαι προσέταξεν. ἐκεῖθεν
the following(-day) the recall to-sound ordered thence
οὖν τὰς συντάξεις τῶν στρατευμάτων λαβὼν ἀπῄει ἐς
then the formations of-the armies having-taken went-off to
τὸν Στενίμαχον. κἀντεῦθεν οὖν τὸ σύμπαν ἐνσιτίσασθαι
— Stenimachos and-hence then the whole to-provision
κελεύσας στράτευμα κατευθὺ τῆς Τζεπαίνης ἐχώρει.
having-ordered army straight-for — Tzepaina went

Κατηντήκει γοῦν ἐς πόλιν ἐπικεκλημένην Βατκούνιον,
had-arrived then at town called Batkounion
ἱκανὰς ἡμέρας μεγίστῃ ἐξαρκέσαι δυναμένην εἰς ζωάρκειαν
sufficient days for-very-great to-suffice able for sustenance
στρατιᾷ. ἐκεῖθεν οὖν ἀπεστάλκει τὸν θεῖον αὐτοῦ
army thence then had-sent the uncle his
τὸν Λάσκαριν Μανουήλ, μοναχὸν ὄντα καὶ Μάξιμον
— Laskaris Manuel monk being and Maximos
ὀνομαζόμενον, καὶ τὸν τοῦ ἀλλαγίου αὐτοῦ ἄρχοντα
named and the of-the allagion his commander
τὸν Μαργαρίτην Κωνσταντῖνον, κατοπτεῦσαι τὸν τόπον
— Margarites Constantine to-survey the place
καὶ εἰ εὐχερεστέραν τὴν εἰς αὐτὸν πορείαν σχοίη τὸ
and if easier the to it march might-have the
στράτευμα. οἱ δὲ ἀπιόντες καὶ τὰ περὶ τοῦ τόπου
army the(-men) and going-off and the(-things) about the place
κατασκοπήσαντες εὐχερῆ τὴν ἄνοδον τυγχάνειν τῷ βασιλεῖ
having-surveyed easy the ascent to-be to-the emperor
κατήγγελλον, καὶ μάλιστα ὁ Μαργαρίτης Κωνσταντῖνος,
reported and especially — Margarites Constantine
καίτοι γε πολλῶν τῶν εἰδότων ἀντιλεγόντων. τοῖς
although at-least many of-the(-ones) knowing contradicting by-the
γοῦν τούτων λόγοις πεισθεὶς ὁ βασιλεὺς μετὰ πάσης
then their words having-been-persuaded the emperor with all
τῆς στρατιᾶς ἀνῄει. καὶ ἦν μὲν πάντῃ ἀνάντης ὁ χῶρος
the army went-up and was indeed wholly uphill the place
τὴν ἄνοδον, καὶ παγετὸς τὴν ὁδὸν πᾶσαν παχύτερός τε
the ascent and frost the road all thicker both
καὶ λεῖος βαδίσαι δυσχερεστέραν ἐποίει, συνηρεφῆ τε καὶ
and slippery to-walk more-difficult made overarching both and
λάσια δένδρα περὶ τὴν ἀκρώρειαν ἦν. ἡ μὲν οὖν στρατιὰ
shaggy trees about the summit were the indeed then army

τὴν νύκτα πᾶσαν ἐκείνην πυρκαϊὰς ἀνάψαντες ἐθερμαίνοντο·
the night all that fires having-lit warmed-themselves
τῶν γὰρ πλειόνων οἱ ὑπηρέται μετὰ τῶν σκηνῶν αὐτῶν
of-the for most the servants with the tents their
οὐκ ἠδυνήθησαν τοὺς σφῶν κυρίους εὑρεῖν. ἔκλαιον δὲ
not could the their masters to-find wept and
μικροῦ δεῖν κλαυθμὸν ἄπαυστον, εἰ καὶ ἄλυπον· ὁ γὰρ ἐκ
of-little to-lack weeping unceasing if even painless the for from
τῶν πυρκαϊῶν καπνὸς ὑπὸ τῆς τῶν δένδρων πυκνότητος
the fires smoke by the of-the trees thickness
συνεχόμενος καὶ διέξοδον εἰς ἐλεύθερον ἀέρα μὴ εὑρίσκειν
held-in and outlet to free air not to-find
δυνάμενος, κάτω ὑπενόστει καὶ τοὺς ὀφθαλμοὺς εἰς
being-able down sank and the eyes to
ἄκρον ἔδακνε καὶ τῶν ὀφθαλμῶν ἐκπιέζειν κατηνάγκαζε
the-utmost bit and from-the eyes to-squeeze-out compelled
δάκρυον. τοῦτο καὶ ὁ βασιλεὺς ἐπεπόνθει. ὡς δὲ ἡ νύξ
tear this also the emperor had-suffered as and the night
παρῄει καὶ ἡμέρα ἐπέλαμψεν, ἀνεπιχείρητον εἰς πολιορκίαν
passed and day shone-forth unassailable for siege
εἶναι τὸ ἄστυ γνωρίσας, κατιέναι προσετετάχει ἐς τὸ
to-be the town having-recognized to-go-down had-ordered to the
πεδίον τὴν στρατιάν. καὶ οἱ μὲν ἀπῄεσαν, ὁ δὲ
plain the army and the(-ones) indeed went-off the(-other) and
φύλαξ ὄπισθεν μετὰ μετρίων ἐναπελείφθη στρατιωτῶν καὶ
as-guard behind with moderate was-left soldiers and
τούτων τῶν περὶ αὐτόν τε καὶ νεωτέρων. κατόπισθεν
these of-the(-ones) about him both and younger behind
δὲ καὶ αὐτὸς κατῄει πεζὸς ὡς καὶ οἱ λοιποί· οὐδὲ γὰρ
and also himself went-down on-foot as also the others not-even for
ἦν δυνατὸν ἱππότην βαδίσαι περὶ τὸ κάταντες τοῦ βουνοῦ.
was possible as-horseman to-go about the downslope of-the hill

60 Ἐκεῖσε γοῦν ἡμέρας διανύσας δύο καὶ λείαν τὴν κώμην
there then days having-spent two and booty the village
πεποιηκὼς τὸ Βατκούνιον, ἐς τὴν Ἀδριανοῦ καὶ αὖθις
having-made — Batkounion to the of-Hadrian also again
ὑπέστρεψε κἀκεῖθεν εἰς τὸ Διδυμότειχον. αὐτόθι γοῦν εἰς
returned and-thence to — Didymoteichon there then as
ἡγεμόνας τάξας τόν τε Λάσκαριν Μανουήλ, ὃν
commanders having-appointed — both Laskaris Manuel whom
καὶ πρωτοσεβαστὸν κατωνόμασεν, ἀνθρώπιον ἀφελέστατον
also protosebastos he-named little-man most-simple
καὶ κακῶς εἰδὸς στρατηγεῖν, καὶ τὸν Μαργαρίτην
and badly knowing to-be-general and — Margarites
Κωνσταντῖνον, ὃν προφθάσας ὁ λόγος ἐδήλωσεν, ἄνδρα
Constantine whom anticipating the account showed man
ἀγροῖκον καὶ ἐξ ἀγροίκων γεγενημένον, μάζῃ καὶ
rustic and from rustics born on-barley-cake and
πιτύροις ἀνατεθραμμένον καὶ λαρυγγίζειν μόνον εἰδότα
bran reared and to-gorge only knowing
— ἐκ Νεοκάστρων δὲ οὗτος ὥρμητο, καὶ ἐτέλει τὰ
from Neokastra and this(-man) set-out and was-ranked the
πρῶτα ἐν τῇ τοῦ θέματος τουτουὶ στρατιᾷ, εἶτα καὶ
first(-places) in the of-the theme this army then also
τζαούσιος γέγονε. δόξαν δὲ παρασχὼν τῷ βασιλεῖ Ἰωάννῃ
tzaousios became opinion and having-given to-the emperor John
ὡς ἐντρεχής ἐστι καὶ ὑπηρετεῖν ἱκανὸς ἐν τοῖς ἀνακτόροις,
that adroit he-is and to-serve capable in the palace
ἐκεῖθεν ἐκβαλὼν τζαούσιον τῆς αὐτοῦ πεποίηκε τάξεως,
thence having-cast-out tzaousios of-the his made rank
εἶτα αὐτῷ καὶ τὸ μέγας προσέθετο. ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς
then to-him also the great added the and emperor
Θεόδωρος ἄρχοντα τῆς αὐτοῦ κατωνόμακε τάξεως, οὔπω
Theodore commander of-the his named rank not-yet

μέχρις αὐτοῦ τὸ τοιοῦτον ἔν τινι γεγονός, ὁ δὲ καὶ τὸ
up-to him the such(-thing) in anyone having-happened he and also the
μέγας προσεπέγραφε τῷ ὀνόματι — τούτους εἰς φυλακὴν
great added to-the name these for guard
τῆς χώρας εἴασε καὶ ἑτέρους ἡγεμόνας οὐκ ὀλίγους.
of-the land he-let(-stay) and other commanders not few
καταλελοίπει δὲ μετ᾽ αὐτῶν καὶ ἀξιόλογον στράτευμα,
had-left and with them also considerable army
προσετετάχει δὲ αὐτοῖς μηδ᾽ ὅλως εἰς μάχην ἐγκαταστῆναι
had-ordered and them not at-all into battle to-engage
τοῖς πολεμίοις, εἴπερ κατὰ τούτων ὁρμήσαιεν, Σκύθας
with-the enemies if-indeed against them they-should-set-out Scythians
προσλαβόντες εἰς συμμαχίαν· τοῦτο γὰρ ἡ φήμη προύλεγε·
having-taken-in-addition for alliance this for the report foretold
καὶ εἰς σκύλευσιν δὲ εἰ κινηθεῖεν τῆς χώρας, αὐτοὺς
and for despoiling and if they-should-move of-the land them
ἀτρεμεῖν, ἔκ τε τοῦ Διδυμοτείχου τὴν ἀσφάλειαν ἔχοντας
to-keep-still from both — Didymoteichon the safety having
— ἐχυρὸν γὰρ τὸ ἄστυ — καὶ ἐκ τοῦ ποταμοῦ Ἔβρου —
strong for the town and from the river Hebros
μέσον γὰρ αὐτῶν στρατοπεδεύειν τούτους ἐκέλευσεν — εἰ
between for them to-encamp these he-ordered if
μή που ὀλίγη τις κατὰ τῆς χώρας ἐπεισφρήσειε στρατιά·
not somewhere small some against the land should-burst-in army
κατὰ ταύτης γὰρ ποιήσασθαι θαρρούντως τὴν ἔφοδον.
against this for to-make boldly the attack
Οὑτωσὶ γοῦν ταῦτα πάντα καταρτίσας ὁ βασιλεὺς
thus then these-things all having-arranged the emperor
τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον διαπεραιωθεὶς περὶ τὴν Λάμψακον τὴν
— Hellespont having-crossed about — Lampsakos the
σκηνὴν ἔπηξε, κἀκεῖσε τοὺς αὐτοῦ ὀφφικίοις τετιμήκει
tent pitched and-there the his(-men) with-offices honored

καὶ ἀξιώμασι. καὶ τὸν μὲν Μουζάλωνα Γεώργιον τὸν
and with-dignities and — indeed Mouzalon George the(-one)
ὑπὲρ πάντας ἄλλους τούτῳ φιλούμενον, ὄντα μέγαν
above all others by-him loved being great
δομέστικον, πρωτοσεβαστόν τε καὶ πρωτοβεστιάριον καὶ
domestic protosebastos both and protovestiarios and
μέγαν στρατοπεδάρχην τετίμηκε, τὸν δὲ αὐτοῦ ἀδελφὸν
great stratopedarches honored the and his brother
Ἀνδρόνικον, πρωτοβεστιαρίτην ὄντα, μέγαν δομέστικον
Andronikos protovestiarites being great domestic
κατωνόμασε, τὸν δὲ Ἄγγελον Ἰωάννην, μέγαν πριμμικήριον
named — and Angelos John great primmikerios
τελοῦντα, τετίμηκε πρωτοστράτορα, ἀνδράρια μηδενὸς ἢ
being honored protostrator little-men of-nothing or
τριῶν ὀβολῶν ἄξια, παιδιαῖς ἀνατεθραμμένα καὶ κυμβάλων
of-three obols worthy in-games reared and of-cymbals
μέλεσί τε καὶ ᾄσμασι, πρὸς οὓς τὸ Ὁμηρικὸν εὐστόχως
in-tunes both and in-songs at whom the Homeric(-line) aptly
ἂν ἀπετόξευσε· ‘ψεῦσταί τ’ ὀρχησταί τε χοροτυπίῃσιν
— would-have-shot liars both dancers both in-choral-dancing
ἄριστοι,’ πρωτοβεστιαρίτην δὲ τὸν Καρυανίτην πεποίηκε.
best protovestiarites and — Karyanites made
ταύταις ταῖς παιδιαῖς συμπέπλεγμαι καὶ αὐτός, ἄκων νὴ
in-these the games was-entangled also myself unwilling by
τὴν Θέμιν καὶ ὡς οὐκ ἐχρῆν βιασθείς, καὶ συνεφάνην
— Themis and as not it-was-right having-been-forced and appeared-with
τοῖς παίζουσι δυστυχέστερον παίγνιον. ἠλλοίωσε γὰρ
the(-ones) playing more-unfortunate plaything changed for
ὁ κρατῶν κἀμοὶ τοὔνομα, καὶ οὐκ εἴασεν ἀσυνάπτως
the ruling(-one) for-me-too the-name and not allowed unconnectedly
Ἀκροπολίτην κατονομάζεσθαι. ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν παρῆλθε,
Akropolites to-be-named but these-things indeed passed

διεξήει δὲ τὰ περὶ τούτων ὁ τῆς ἱστορίας λόγος,
went-through and the(-things) about these the of-the history account
ἵνα τὰ μετὰ ταῦτα σαφέστερον ἀπαγγείλῃ. ἐν τῇ
so-that the(-things) after these-things more-clearly it-may-report in —
Λαμψάκῳ γοῦν μικρὸν διὰ ταῦτα προσκαρτερήσας
Lampsakos then a-little because-of these-things having-stayed
ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ, καὶ τὰς τοῦ Χριστοῦ πανηγύρεις τῆς
the autocrat and the — of-Christ festivals of-the
τε γέννας καὶ τῶν φώτων ἀποπληρώσας, διὰ μετρίων
both nativity and of-the lights having-fulfilled through moderate
πάνυ τῶν ἡμερῶν ἐπεφθάκει τὸ Νύμφαιον.
very the days had-reached — Nymphaion

XI · AKROPOLITES BEATEN

Theodore leads a great army west, and at Didymoteichon the Cumans rout his commanders. Uros brokers peace with Bulgaria and the surrender of Tzepaina. Doubting the peace, Theodore questions Akropolites, flies into a rage, and has him beaten; he refuses for weeks to yield. Michael Palaiologos flees to the Turks and fights for the sultan against the Tatars. Theodore leaves Akropolites as praetor in the west.

Ἐκεῖσε γοῦν παραχειμάσας, ἐπεὶ τὸ ἔαρ ἐπέλαμψε, 61
there then having-wintered when the spring shone-forth
πολλὴν συλλεξάμενος στρατιάν — οὐ γὰρ μόνους τοὺς
much having-gathered army not for only the(-ones)
τεταγμένους ὁπηδεῖν προσέταττεν, ἀλλὰ καὶ τοὺς μηδ᾽
appointed to-follow he-ordered but also the(-ones) not
ὅλως ἐν τάξει ποτὲ τελοῦντας τῆς στρατιᾶς· αὐτίκα
at-all in rank ever being of-the army for-instance
γὰρ τοὺς ἐξυπηρετοῦντας τοῖς βασιλεῦσιν ἐν θήραις
for the(-ones) serving the emperors in hunts

ταῖς τε τῶν θηρῶν ἄγραις, ἐλάφων τε καὶ χοίρων,
the both of-the beasts in-chases of-deer both and of-boars
καὶ τοὺς δι' ἱεράκων θηρεύοντας, πάντας ἁπαξαπλῶς
and the(-ones) by hawks hunting all altogether
στρατιωτικοῖς συντέταχε τάγμασι. καὶ ἦν τὸ συνηγμένον
to-military assigned units and was the gathered
πλῆθος πολύ, καὶ ἡ τοῦ κρατοῦντος δὲ ἀρχὴ ἠνάγκαζε
multitude great and the of-the ruling(-one) and rule compelled
τοὺς πλείους τῶν εἰωθότων φέρειν τι περιττότερον.
the more than-the customary to-bear something more
οὕτω γοῦν πᾶσαν συναγηοχήκει τὴν στρατιάν. ὡς δὲ καὶ
thus then all had-gathered the army as and also
τὸν περσάρχην μὴ πράγματα ἔχειν παρὰ τῶν Ταχαρίων
the Persian-ruler not troubles to-have from the Tachars
πρεσβείαν ἐξαποστείλας ἐμεμαθήκει, κατευθὺ πρὸς τὴν
embassy having-sent-out he-had-learned straight to the
δυσμὴν ἐκ τῆς ἕω χωρεῖ· καλῶς γὰρ ἔχειν τὸν περσάρχην
west from the east goes well for to-be the Persian-ruler
τῶν ἐκείνου πραγμάτων οἰόμενος καὶ ἀσφαλῶς μένειν,
in-the his affairs thinking and safely to-remain
οὐδ' ὅλως περὶ τῇ ἑαυτοῦ κατὰ τὴν ἕω ἐδεδίει ἀρχῇ. τὴν
not at-all about the his-own in the east he-feared rule the
πᾶσαν γοῦν συνηθροικὼς στρατιὰν μείζονα τῶν ποτὲ
all then having-gathered army greater than-the(-ones) ever
παρά τε πατρὸς αὐτοῦ βασιλέως καὶ τούτου συνειλεγμένων
by both father his emperor and him gathered
εἰς τὸ διαπεραιωθῆναι τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον, ἀφίκετο εἰς τὴν
for the to-cross — Hellespont arrived at —
Λάμψακον, ἐλπίσας καὶ τοὺς κατὰ τὸ Διδυμότειχον
Lampsakos having-hoped also the(-ones) at — Didymoteichon
καταλελειμμένους σώους τε εὑρεῖν κατὰ τὰ
left safe both to-find according-to the(-things)

προστεταγμένα τούτοις καὶ οὐ σμικρὰν προσθήκην τῇ
ordered for-them and not small addition to-the
ἀμφ᾽ αὐτὸν στρατιᾷ ἐμποιήσασθαι. τοὺς δὲ κακοβουλία
about him army to-make the(-ones) but ill-counsel
καὶ τὸ παρακοῦσαι τῆς βασιλικῆς κελεύσεως ἔσφηλεν.
and the to-disobey the imperial order tripped
Ἐπεὶ γὰρ ὁ τῶν Βουλγάρων ἄρχων μακρότερον διάγειν
when for the of-the Bulgarians ruler farther to-be-staying
τὸν βασιλέα ἐγίνωσκε, Σκυθικὸν στράτευμα εἰς σφετέραν
the emperor knew Scythian army for their-own
συμμαχίαν προσκαλεσάμενος κατὰ τῶν τῆς Μακεδονίας
alliance having-summoned against the — of-Macedonia
χώρων ἐκπέπομφε κέρδους τε χάριν καὶ τῆς πρὸς
lands sent-out of-gain both for-the-sake and of-the toward
Ῥωμαίους τινὸς ἐκφοβήσεως. ἠρίθμηντο δὲ περί που
Romans some frightening they-were-counted and about somewhere
τὰς τέσσαρας χιλιάδας, ὡς οἱ εἰδότες ἔφασκον
the four thousands as the(-ones) knowing said
Σκύθαι· τινὲς μὲν οὖν καὶ πλείους, οἱ δὲ καὶ
Scythians some indeed then also more the(-others) and also
ἐλάττους ἔλεγον. οἱ μὲν οὖν Σκύθαι τὴν Ἀδριανοῦ
fewer said the indeed then Scythians the of-Hadrian
παραμείψαντες τὰ περὶ τὸν ποταμὸν οὗ Ῥηγίνα
having-passed the(-places) about the river whose Regina
τοὔνομα λείαν ἐποιοῦντο καὶ τὰ πέριξ τοῦ Διδυμοτείχου
the-name booty made and the around — Didymoteichon
χωρία ἐσκύλευον. οἱ δὲ προλελεγμένοι στρατάρχαι τοῦ
places despoiled the and aforesaid army-commanders of-the
εἰς τὸ Διδυμότειχον καταλελειμμένου στρατεύματος, τῶν
at — Didymoteichon left army the
βασιλικῶν ἐπιλελησμένοι προστάξεων, καθοπλισθέντες κατὰ
imperial having-forgotten orders having-armed against

τῶν Σκυθῶν ἐφώρμησαν. οἱ μὲν οὖν Ῥωμαῖοι, οἷα ἔθος
the Scythians set-out the indeed then Romans as custom
αὐτοῖς, δυσαχθέσιν ὅπλοις κατάφρακτοι ἦσαν, οἱ δὲ Σκύθαι
for-them with-heavy arms armored were the but Scythians
κοῦφοι ὁπλῖται καὶ τόξοις χρώμενοι. μακρόθεν οὖν οὗτοι
light armed-men and with-bows using from-afar then these
τοῖς βέλεσι τοὺς Ῥωμαίους ἔβαλλον καὶ τοὺς ἵππους
with-the missiles the Romans shot and the horses
ἐτίτρωσκον καὶ πεζοὺς τοὺς ἱππότας ῥᾳδίως ἐποίουν καὶ
wounded and on-foot the horsemen easily made and
τέλος τρέπουσιν. ὁ μὲν οὖν Λάσκαρις Μανουὴλ ταχύτατον
finally rout — indeed then Laskaris Manuel swiftest
ἔχων τὸν ἵππον, ὃν καὶ Χρυσοπόδην ἐκάλεσε, φυγὰς
having the horse which also Chrysopodes he-called fugitive
εἰς τὴν Ἀδριανοῦ ᾤχετο· ὁ δὲ Μαργαρίτης Κωνσταντῖνος
to the of-Hadrian went — but Margarites Constantine
ἑάλω καὶ ἄλλοι πολλοὶ μετ᾽ αὐτοῦ τῶν εἰς κεφαλὰς
was-captured and others many with him of-the(-ones) as heads
τεταγμένων τῆς στρατιᾶς, οὓς καὶ ἀπημπόλησαν τοῖς
appointed of-the army whom also sold to-the
Βουλγάροις οἱ Σκύθαι. ὁ μὲν οὖν βασιλεὺς τὰ περὶ
Bulgarians the Scythians the indeed then emperor the(-things) about
τούτου μαθὼν ἠνιάθη, ἔσπευδε δὲ διὰ τάχους περὶ
this having-learned was-grieved hastened and with speed to
τὸν τοῦ Βουλγαροφύγου χῶρον ἐλθεῖν, καὶ ἐπιτείνας
the — of-Boulgarophygon region to-come and having-extended
τὸν δρόμον ὀξυτέραν ἐποίει τὴν κίνησιν. ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ
the course sharper made the movement when and also
οἱ πευστῆρες ἔφασκον ἐγγὺς τυγχάνειν τὸ Σκυθικὸν
the scouts said near to-be the Scythian
στράτευμα, ἔνθα ἂν αὐτοὺς περιπολεῖν ἔλεγον, ἐκεῖσε
army where — them to-be-roaming they-said there

καὶ πᾶσαν ἐκίνει τὴν στρατιάν. καὶ ἡμέρας μὲν μιᾶς
also all he-moved the army and of-day indeed one
πλείους τῶν τετρακοσίων διεξήει σταδίων σταθμούς,
more than-the four-hundred went-through stades stages
οὐκ ἐνέκυρσε δὲ τούτοις· ἐμεμαθήκεσαν γὰρ καὶ οὗτοι τὴν
not met and them had-learned for also these the
ταχεῖαν τοῦ βασιλέως ἔφοδον, καὶ ὡς εἶχον ποδῶν ἔφυγον,
swift of-the emperor attack and as they-had of-feet fled
καὶ πλείους δὲ αὐτῶν καὶ περιφανέστεροι τοῦ ἔθνους
and more too of-them and more-conspicuous of-the nation
περί που τὰ μέρη τῆς Βιζύης ξίφους ἔργον ἐγένοντο.
about somewhere the parts — of-Bizye of-sword work became
ἀποτυχὼν γοῦν τῆς ἐγχειρήσεως ταύτης ὁ βασιλεὺς περὶ
having-failed then of-the undertaking this the emperor about
τὸν ποταμὸν ὃς Ῥηγίνα καλεῖται τὴν σκηνὴν ἔπηξε, καὶ
the river which Rhegina is-called the tent pitched and
πᾶσαν ἐκεῖσε συνῆξε τὴν στρατιὰν εἰς πλῆθος οὖσαν πολύ.
all there gathered the army in multitude being great
Ὁ μὲν οὖν τῶν Βουλγάρων ἄρχων, ἐπειδὴ μὴ 62
the indeed then of-the Bulgarians ruler since not
διαπράξασθαί τι κατὰ Ῥωμαίων ἐδεδύνητο, τοῦ
to-accomplish anything against Romans had-been-able the
βασιλέως ἐπιδεδημηκότος μετὰ τοσούτων στρατευμάτων
emperor having-come with so-many armies
ἐν τῇ δυσμῇ καὶ πεπλησιακότος τῇ ἑαυτοῦ, εἰς σπονδὰς
in the west and having-come-near to-the his-own to treaties
ἐτράπετο, καὶ τὸν πενθερὸν αὐτοῦ τὸν Ῥῶσον Οὖρον, τοῦ
turned and the father-in-law his the Russian Uros of-the
ῥηγὸς Οὐγγρίας ἐπὶ θυγατρὶ τελοῦντα γαμβρόν, μεσιτεῦσαι
king of-Hungary by daughter being son-in-law to-mediate
τὰ εἰς εἰρήνην βεβούλευται. καὶ πρῶτα μὲν ἔστειλε
the(-things) for peace planned and first indeed sent

πρέσβεις πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα προοικονομήσοντας τὴν εἰς
envoys to the emperor to-arrange-beforehand the to
αὐτὸν τοῦ Οὔρου ἄφιξιν ἔξω πτοίας τε εἶναι καὶ ἐντίμως
him — of-Uros arrival outside of-fear both to-be and honorably
πρὸς τοῦ βασιλέως δεχθῆναι. καὶ γέγονε ταῦτα, καὶ ὁ
by the emperor to-be-received and happened these-things and —
Οὖρος εἰς τὸν βασιλέα ἀφίκετο. ἐδέχθη οὖν παρὰ τοῦ
Uros to the emperor arrived was-received then by the
αὐτοκράτορος ἀσμένως τε καὶ μετὰ τῆς προσηκούσης
autocrat gladly both and with the fitting
φιλοτιμήσεως καὶ οὗτός τε καὶ οἱ μετ᾽ αὐτοῦ, καὶ
generosity and he both and the(-ones) with him also
τὴν εἰρήνην πεποίηκεν ἐπομοσάμενος δικαίῳ τε αὐτοῦ
the peace made having-sworn by-right both his
καὶ τοῦ γαμβροῦ αὐτοῦ τοῦ τῶν Βουλγάρων ἄρχοντος,
and of-the son-in-law his the of-the Bulgarians ruler
ἀπολυθῆναι μὲν πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα τὸ τῆς Τζεπαίνης ἄστυ
to-be-released indeed to the emperor the — of-Tzepaina town
— τοῦτο γὰρ καὶ μόνον παρὰ τῶν Βουλγάρων κατείχετο
this for also only by the Bulgarians was-held
ἀφ᾽ ὧν ὁ βασιλεὺς Ἰωάννης ἐκράτει — εἰρήνην τε πρὸς
of which the emperor John mastered peace both toward
Βουλγάρους ἔχειν τὸν βασιλέα, καὶ ἑκάτερα τὰ μέρη τοῖς
Bulgarians to-have the emperor and each the parts with-the
παλαιτέροις ὁρίοις ἀρκεῖσθαι. ἐπεὶ γοῦν οὕτωσὶ ταυτὶ
older boundaries to-be-content when then thus these-things
κατὰ γνώμην τετέλεσται τῷ κρατοῦντι, ὁ μὲν Οὖρος
according-to mind were-accomplished for-the ruling(-one) — indeed Uros
τοὺς τῆς ἀποχωρήσεως εἰπὼν λόγους ἐξῄει βασιλικῶν
the of-the departure having-said words went-out of-imperial
χαρισμάτων τυχών· τὰ δ᾽ ἦσαν εἰς εἴκοσι χιλιάδας
gifts having-obtained the(-things) and were to twenty thousands

ἀπαριθμούμενα ἁπάντων συνεισαγομένων εἰδῶν ἵππων τε
numbered all brought-in-together kinds of-horses both
καὶ ὑφασμάτων καὶ λοιπῶν· ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς διεκαρτέρει ἐν τῷ
and of-woven-stuffs and others the and emperor persisted in the
τῆς Ῥηγίνης τόπῳ, τὴν τῆς Τζεπαίνης περιμένων ἀπόλυσιν.
— of-Rhegina place the — of-Tzepaina awaiting release
Συμβέβηκε δέ τι ἐν τούτοις τῷ τότε πρᾶγμα 63
happened and some in these at-the then(-time) thing
θαυμάσιον, μνήμης καὶ ἱστορίας ἄξιον. ἡμέρα ἦν τῶν
wonderful of-memory and of-history worthy day it-was of-the
ἐπιφανῶν τε καὶ ἑορτασίμων, καθ' ἣν τὴν Χριστοῦ
notable both and festal on which the of-Christ
μεταμόρφωσιν οἱ εὐσεβεῖς ἑορτάζομεν· καὶ ἐπεὶ ἔδει
transfiguration the pious(-ones) we-celebrate and since it-was-necessary
καὶ ἀμφὶ τὴν ἱερὰν μυσταγωγίαν, ὡς τὸ εἰωθός, παρεῖναι
also at the sacred liturgy as the custom to-be-present
τὸν βασιλέα, εἰς ἀργίαν ὁ τοῦ ἀρίστου παρετάθη καιρός.
the emperor into idleness the of-the luncheon was-extended time
ἠριστήσαμεν οὖν καὶ αὐτοί, καὶ μικρόν τι καθευδήσαντες
we-lunched then also ourselves and a-little something having-slept
ἀνηγέρθημεν· ἤδη δὲ ὁ ἥλιος τῷ ὁρίζοντι προσήγγισε τῆς
we-were-roused already and the sun to-the horizon drew-near of-the
δυσμῆς. ἔθος δὲ ὑπῆρχε τῷ βασιλεῖ περὶ δείλην ἑσπέραν
west custom and was for-the emperor about late evening
ἐποχεῖσθαι καὶ σύμπαν διέρχεσθαι τὸ στρατόπεδον, καὶ
to-ride and whole to-go-through the camp and
ἀμφὶ τὸ τούτου τέρμα εἰς τόπον ἀγχώμαλόν πως τελοῦντα
at the its end to place level somehow being
καὶ μικρὸν ὑπερανεστηκότα τῆς πεδιάδος ἀνέρχεσθαι καὶ
and a-little rising-above the plain to-go-up and
τὴν ὅλην καθορᾶν στρατιάν, ἣν καὶ πόλιν κινουμένην
the whole to-look-down-on army which also city moving

ὠνόμαζε, πάσας τὰς Ῥωμαϊκὰς ἄλλας πόλεις φυλάττουσαν.
he-named all the Roman other cities guarding
τοῦτο δὲ οὕτως ἐποίει διηνεκῶς, καὶ ὁ φωσφόρος δὲ εἴπερ
this and so he-did continually and the light-bearer and if-indeed
τὸν δυτικὸν εἰσδῦναι ὁρίζοντα ἔμελλεν, οὐ κατώκνει τοῦτο
the western to-set-into horizon was-about not hesitated this
ἐργάσασθαι. τὸ δὲ τοῦ στρατοπέδου διάστημα ἀμφί που
to-do the and of-the camp extent about somewhere
τὰ τεσσαράκοντα στάδια ἦν, εἰ μή γε καὶ πρός. ἔγωγε
the forty stades was if not at-least also more I
οὖν οὐκ ἀγαθῇ τύχῃ τότε χρησάμενος ὁ φιλοβασιλεύς τε
then not with-good fortune then having-met the emperor-loving both
καὶ μάταιος, πεπυσμένος ἱππότην εἶναι τὸν βασιλέα, τῆς
and vain having-learned on-horseback to-be the emperor the
ἡμιόνου ὡς εἶχον τάχους ἐπιβὰς δρομαῖος ἐφειπόμην
mule as I-had of-speed having-mounted running followed
αὐτῷ, οὐ τὸ τῆς ὥρας ἄωρον κατοπτεύσας, ὅπερ ἔδει.
him not the of-the hour untimeliness having-considered which was-needed
ἐφ᾽ ἵππου δὲ ὁ βασιλεὺς ἐπιβὰς ταχύτερον ἐπορεύετο, ὡς
on horse and the emperor having-mounted faster went as
δὲ εἶδέ με κατόπιν αὐτοῦ μὴ δυνάμενον ἐκείνῳ συνέπεσθαι,
and he-saw me behind him not being-able him to-follow
ὑπολαβὼν μή πως μακρύνας οὐχ ἕψομαι, εἰρήκει μοι·
having-supposed lest somehow having-fallen-behind not I-will-follow said to-me
‘μηδ᾽ ὅλως ἀπολειφθῇς, ἀλλὰ καὶ σχολαιότερον ἔρχου.’
not at-all be-left-behind but also more-leisurely come
Ἀπήει γοῦν εἰς τὸν συνήθη τόπον, καὶ σὺν αὐτῷ
he-went-off then to the customary place and with him
οἱ ἀμφ᾽ αὐτὸν λογάδες συνέστησαν, καὶ αὐτὸς σφίσι
the about him select-men stood-together and myself with-them
ξυνῆλθον ἑπόμενος, καὶ περιέστημεν κατὰ κύκλον πάντες.
came-together following and we-stood-around in circle all

καὶ ὁ βασιλεὺς ‘μεμαθήκατε’ φησι ‘τῶν προσφάτως
and the emperor have-you-learned says of-the(-things) recently
ἀπηγγελμένων ἡμῖν;’ καὶ ἡμεῖς ‘οὔκουν, ὦ βασιλεῦ.’ καὶ ὁ
reported to-us and we not-then O emperor and the
βασιλεύς· ‘ἄνθρωπός τις πρό τινος βραχείας ὥρας ἐλθὼν
emperor man some before some short hour having-come
ἀπήγγειλέ τι τῶν ἀβουλήτων. τὸ δ’ ἦν, ὡς
reported something of-the(-things) unwished the(-thing) and was that
ὁ Ῥῶσος Οὖρος ἡμᾶς ἐξηπάτηκε· χάριν γὰρ κέρδους
the Russian Uros us has-deceived for-the-sake for of-gain
ἐνταυθοῖ ἀφιγμένος τὴν μεσιτείαν τῆς εἰρήνης ἐψεύσατο
hither having-come the mediation of-the peace lied
καὶ ἐπίορκον ὤμοσε. φενάκη γοῦν ὑπῆρχε τὰ πάντα ἐκείνῳ
and falsely swore deceit then was the all for-him
ὅσα πεποίηκε, καὶ ἀπολογίαν εὐάφορμον ἔχει, ὥς φασι,
as-much-as he-did and excuse well-founded he-has as they-say
πρὸς τὴν τῶν ὅρκων διάλυσιν, ὅτιπερ ὁ τῶν Βουλγάρων
for the of-the oaths dissolution that-indeed the of-the Bulgarians
ἄρχων ὁ τούτου γαμβρὸς τὴν ἐπὶ συμφωνίαις τοιαύταις
ruler the his son-in-law the on agreements such
εἰρήνην οὐ καταδέχεται. τί οὖν ὑμῖν δοκεῖ; ἆρ’ ἀληθές
peace not accepts what then to-you seems then true
ἐστι τοῦτο ἢ ῥῆμα πεπλασμένον πρὸς ψευδολόγου;’ καὶ
is this or word fabricated by a-liar and
ἡμεῖς· ‘οὐδ’ ὅλως δοκεῖ πως’ ἔφημεν ‘ἀληθείας τὸν λόγον
we not at-all seems somehow we-said of-truth the account
ἔχεσθαι· πάνυ γὰρ τυγχάνει οὗτος ψευδὴς καὶ ἀβέβαιος,
to-hold very for is this false and unstable
ὅτιπερ ὁ Ῥῶσος Οὖρος οὐ μόνον ὑπὲρ ἑαυτοῦ ἀλλὰ καὶ
since the Russian Uros not only for himself but also
ὑπὲρ τοῦ γαμβροῦ αὐτοῦ τοῦ τῶν Βουλγάρων ἄρχοντος
for the son-in-law his the of-the Bulgarians ruler

ἐπωμόσατο. πῶς οὖν ἐστὶ πεφυκὸς ἄνθρωπον ὄντα
swore how then is it-natural man being
Χριστιανὸν ἐπιορκίᾳ τοιαύτῃ περιπεσεῖν;' καὶ ὁ βασιλεύς·
Christian into-perjury such to-fall and the emperor
'ἡ τῶν χρημάτων ἴσως ἐπιθυμία παρέπεισεν ἂν αὐτὸν
the of-the money perhaps desire would-have-persuaded — him
εἰς τοιαύτην ἐξολισθῆσαι κακίαν, καὶ ἡμεῖς οὐ μόνον τὴν
into such to-slip wickedness and we not only the
τῶν Βουλγάρων ἀγάπην οὐκ ἔχομεν, ἀλλὰ καὶ τοσαῦτα
of-the Bulgarians love not have but also so-much
ἐπὶ κενῆς καταναλώκαμεν χρήματα.' 'οὐμενοῦν' ἡμεῖς
in vain we-have-spent money no-indeed we
ἔφημεν 'ἀληθὲς τουτὶ καθέστηκε, βασιλεῦ.' καὶ ὁ βασιλεὺς
said true this stands emperor and the emperor
ἰδίᾳ καὶ πρὸς ἐμέ· 'σὺ δὲ τί φάσκεις πρὸς ταῦτα;' καὶ
privately also to me you and what say to these-things and
αὐτός· 'οὑτωσί πως ἐν τούτοις ὡς καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι διάκειμαι,
myself thus somehow in these as also the others am-disposed
καὶ ἐπὶ πολὺ μᾶλλον ψεύδεσθαι τὸ λελεγμένον ἢ
and by much rather to-lie the(-thing) said than
ἀληθεύειν οἶομαι. εἰ δέ, οἷα συμβαίνει ποτὲ καὶ ἐν ἐνίοις,
to-speak-true I-think if and as happens sometimes also in some
καὶ ὁ Οὖρος οὑτοσὶ τοὺς ὅρκους ἠθετηκέναι βεβούληται,
also — Uros this(-man) the oaths to-have-set-aside has-wished
δόξας ἡμᾶς ἐξηπατηκέναι, ἀλλ' ἕξει μὲν οὗτος τὸ
having-seemed us to-have-deceived but will-have indeed he the
θεῖον καθ' ἑαυτοῦ πολέμιον, ἡμεῖς δὲ ὑπὲρ ἑαυτῶν τῆς
divine against himself hostile we and for ourselves the
ἀληθείας καὶ τοῦ δικαίου ὑπερμαχόμενον.' ταῦτ' εἴπομεν,
truth and the justice fighting-for these-things we-said
καὶ ὁ βασιλεὺς τοῖς λελεγμένοις συνήνεσε, καὶ
and the emperor with-the(-things) said agreed and

ὑποστρέφειν πρὸς τὰς σκηνὰς ἐφωρμήκαμεν· νὺξ γὰρ ἤδη,
to-return to the tents we-set-out night for already
ἀλλ' ἡ σελήνη πανσέληνος οὖσα φῶς ἡμῖν παρεῖχεν ὁρᾶν.
but the moon full being light to-us provided to-see
Καὶ ὁ βασιλεὺς διερχόμενος 'τί ὑμῖν δοκεῖ περὶ τῶν
and the emperor going-through what to-you seems about the(-things)
λελεγμένων;' αὖθις ἠρώτα. καὶ ἡμεῖς 'ψευδὲς τοῦτο, ὦ
said again asked and we false this O
βασιλεῦ.' τοῦτο δὲ οὐχ ἅπαξ οὐδὲ δὶς ἢ καὶ τρίς, ἀλλὰ
emperor this and not once nor twice or also thrice but
καὶ πολλάκις πυθόμενος ἦν, οἷα ἐκεῖνος μικρόψυχος ἐν
also often inquiring was as that(-man) small-souled in
τοιαύταις ὢν περιστάσεσι. καὶ ἡμεῖς τὰς ἀποκρίσεις ἐξ
such being circumstances and we the answers from
ἴσου πρὸς τὰς πεύσεις πεποιηκότες ἐσιωπῶμεν. ὁ δὲ καὶ
equal to the questions having-made were-silent he but also
πάλιν ἠρώτα. ἐπεὶ δὲ τοὺς ἄλλους σιγῶντας ἑώρα, πρὸς
again asked when and the others silent he-saw to
μὲ τὸν λόγον ἀποστρέψας ἠρώτηκε· 'σὺ δὲ τί φῂς πρὸς
me the speech having-turned asked you and what say to
ταῦτα;' τὴν τοῦ ὀφφικίου κλῆσιν προσθείς· 'ἡ τοιαύτη γὰρ
these-things the of-the office title having-added the such for
ὑπόθεσις σοὶ ἁρμόττει καὶ ὡς σὴ καθέστηκε μάλιστα.'
matter to-you fits and as yours stands especially
ταυτὶ δὲ ἔλεγε πρόφασιν ὀργῆς ζητῶν ἐφευρεῖν. ἦν δ'
these-things and he-said pretext of-anger seeking to-find said and
ἐγώ· 'τίνος χάριν ἐστὶν ἐμή; εἰ γὰρ μὴ καλῶς πεποίηκα
I of-what for-the-sake is mine if for not well I-did
τὰς γραφὰς καὶ τοὺς ὅρκους τετέλεκα μηδὲ προσηκόντως
the writings and the oaths I-completed nor fittingly
αὐτόν τε καὶ τοὺς ἀμφ' αὐτὸν ᾠκονόμηκα, σφάλμα
him both and the(-ones) about him managed error

τοῦτο ἐμὸν καὶ πταῖσμα μακρόν· εἰ δὲ πρεπόντως ταῦτα
this mine and stumble long if but fittingly these-things
γεγένηται καὶ ὡς οὐκ ἄλλως ἐχρῆν, τί πρὸς ἐμὲ τὰ
have-happened and as not otherwise it-was-right what to me the(-things)
παρ᾽ ἐκείνου πρὸς ἀνατροπὴν τῶν γεγενημένων
by him for overturning of-the(-things) having-happened
τελούμενα;᾽ καὶ ὁ βασιλεὺς — οὐκ οἶδ᾽ ὅπως· τὴν γὰρ
being-done and the emperor not I-know how the for
αἰτίαν εἰρήκειν — πάλιν λέγει· ‘τί φῂς περὶ τῶν
cause I-had-said again says what do-you-say about the
τοιούτων;᾽ καὶ αὐτός· ‘πολλάκις εἰρήκειν, ὦ βασιλεῦ, ὡς ἐπὶ
such(-things) and I-myself often I-had-said O emperor that for
πλέον μοι δοκεῖ τὸ εἰρημένον ψευδές, ἐπ᾽ ἔλαττον δὲ
more to-me seems the(-thing) said false for less but
ἀληθές· τὸ δὲ ἐπὶ τοῖς ἀδήλοις ἀκριβῶς ἀποφαίνεσθαι
true the and about the unclear(-things) exactly to-declare
οὔ μοι δοκεῖ ῥᾷον εἶναι.᾽ ἦ δ᾽ ἐκεῖνος· ‘ἐν τοῖς ἀδήλοις
not to-me seems easier to-be said and he in the unclear(-things)
ἐστὶ χάρις βεβαίως καὶ ἀκριβῶς ἀποφαίνεσθαι· ἐπὶ γὰρ
is grace firmly and exactly to-declare about for
τοῖς δήλοις καὶ οἱ ἀείδαροι λέγουσιν.᾽ ἦν δὲ ἐγώ·
the clear(-things) also the ever-flayed speak said and I
‘ἰδοὺ μετὰ τῶν ἀειδάρων καὶ ἡμεῖς συντετάγμεθα.᾽ καὶ ὁ
behold with the ever-flayed also we have-been-ranked and the
βασιλεὺς χόλου πλησθείς· ‘σὺ πάντοτε ἦσθα᾽ ἔφη ‘μωρὸς
emperor with-bile having-been-filled you always were he-said fool
καὶ ἀρτίως πάλιν μωρός.᾽ καὶ αὐτὸς οὐδέν τι πλέον μὰ
and just-now again fool and myself nothing at-all more by
τοὺς λόγους ἀνταπεκρίθην ἀλλ᾽ ἤ· ‘ἐγὼ μέν εἰμι μωρὸς
the words answered but than I indeed am fool
καὶ ἵνα σιωπῶ, οἱ δὲ φρονοῦντες λαλείτωσαν.᾽
and that I-may-be-silent the(-ones) but being-sensible let-them-speak

Ταῦτ᾽ εἶπον, καὶ ὀργῆς ὁ βασιλεὺς ἀπλέτου καὶ
these-things I-said and with-anger the emperor boundless and
μανίας πλησθεὶς καὶ οἷον ἐκβακχευθεὶς τῷ θυμῷ
madness having-been-filled and as-if driven-to-frenzy by-the rage
ἑλκύσαι μὲν ὥρμησε τὴν σπάθην τοῦ κουλεοῦ, τῆς
to-draw indeed rushed the sword from-the scabbard the
κώπης ἐπιλαβόμενος. ἀλλὰ τοῦτο μὲν κατέσχε· μικρὸν
hilt having-seized but this indeed he-checked a-little
γὰρ ταύτην ἀπογυμνώσας πάλιν εἰσῆξε· τῷ μεγάλῳ δὲ
for it having-bared again thrust-in to-the great and
δομεστίκῳ αὐτοῦ τῷ Μουζάλωνι Ἀνδρονίκῳ καταβαλεῖν με
domestic his — Mouzalon Andronikos to-throw me
τοῦ ἵππου προσέταξε. καὶ ὃς ἐβούλετο μέν, οὐκ ἠδύνατο
from-the horse ordered and he wished indeed not was-able
δέ· λεπτὸν γὰρ εἶχε καὶ ἀδρανὲς τὸ σωμάτιον. ἠρέμα δέ
but slight for he-had and feeble the little-body gently and
πως ἔφη· ‘ἔκστηθι τῆς ἐφεστρίδος.’ καὶ αὐτὸς ἀπέβην
somehow said get-off the saddle-cloth and myself dismounted
τῆς ἡμιόνου. ὁ δὲ χρηστότατος περὶ ἡμᾶς βασιλεὺς
from-the mule the but most-kind toward us emperor
τοὺς πολλὰ πρὸς τοῦ πατρὸς αὐτοῦ δι᾽ αὐτὸν
the(-ones) much by the father his because-of him
πεπονθότας, ὃς ἐν πολλῷ πλήθει καὶ πολλάκις διαπρυσίῳ
having-suffered who in great multitude and often with-piercing
ἔλεξε τῇ φωνῇ ὡς ‘πολλῶν μοι αἴτιος ἀγαθῶν οὑτοσὶ ὁ
spoke the voice that of-many to-me cause of-good(-things) this-here the
ἄνθρωπος γέγονε’ — περὶ τῆς λογικῆς φάσκων παιδείας
man has-become about the logical saying education
— ‘καὶ πολλῶν ὀφειλέτης τούτῳ τυγχάνω,’ ὁ τὴν
and of-many debtor to-him I-am the(-one) the
κλῆσίν μοι προθέμενος ἐν πολλοῖς καὶ γλυκὺ ταύτην
title to-me having-set-before in many(-things) and sweet it

κατονομάζων καὶ πρᾶγμα καὶ ὄνομα, δυοῖν κορυνοφόροιν
naming both thing and name to-two club-bearers
προσέταξε τύπτειν με, χθιζὰ καὶ πρὸ τρίτης τούτους
ordered to-beat me yesterday and before three(-days) them
χειροτονήσας, ὡς εἴκοσι τέσσαρας πάντας τὸν ἀριθμόν, οὐκ
having-appointed as twenty four all the number not
οἶδα εἰ μὴ δι' ἐμέ, ἵν' εἴη καὶ σκηνὴ τοῦ δράματος
I-know if not because-of me that might-be also stage of-the drama
εἰς τραγῳδίαν ἀξίαν μεμορφωμένη. καὶ οἱ μὲν ἔτυπτον,
into tragedy worthy shaped and the(-ones) indeed beat
ἐγὼ δὲ σιγῇ τὰς τύψεις ἐλάμβανον. ὃ καὶ μᾶλλον
I but in-silence the blows received which also more
τοῦτον ἐξέμαινεν, ὅτι μηδ' ὅλως πρὸς δεήσεις κάμπτομαι
him maddened that not at-all to entreaties I-am-bent
καὶ πληττόμενος. ἐπεὶ δὲ πολλὰς κατὰ παντὸς ἐδεξάμην
even being-struck when and many over all I-received
τοῦ σώματος, μόγις ἰσχνῇ καὶ ἠρεμαίᾳ φωνῇ 'ὦ Χριστὲ
the body hardly in-thin and quiet voice O Christ
βασιλεῦ,' ἔφην, 'πόσας νενόσηκα νόσους, καὶ διὰ τί
king I-said how-many I-have-been-sick illnesses and because-of what
ἐν οὐδεμιᾷ τούτων κατέλυσα τὴν ζωήν, ἀλλ' ἐν τοιούτοις
in none of-these I-ended the life but for such
με καιροῖς ἐταμίευες;' ταῦτ' εἶπον, καὶ ὁ βασιλεὺς
me times you-were-reserving these-things I-said and the emperor
οἷον αἰδεσθεὶς ἀπηλλάγη, ἑνὶ τῶν ἀκολούθων αὐτοῦ
as-if having-been-ashamed went-off to-one of-the attendants his
εἰρηκώς· 'λάβε τοῦτον αὐτός.' καὶ ὃς ἔφιππόν με λαβὼν
having-said take him yourself and he on-horseback me having-taken
ἠρώτα, ποῦ ἂν καὶ ἀπέλθοιμεν, ἐγὼ δέ· 'ὅπου ἂν αὐτὸς
asked where — also we-might-go I and where — yourself
βούλει, ἐφέπομαι.' καὶ πάλιν οὗτος διὰ τῶν ἐρωτήσεων
you-wish I-follow and again he through the questions

κατηνάγκαζε· τότε γοῦν καὶ αὐτὸς πρὸς τοῦτον ἀντέφην
compelled then at-any-rate also myself to him replied
ὡς ‘δεῖ ἡμᾶς τὴν πρὸς τοὺς Βαρδαρειώτας βαδίσαι·
that it-is-necessary for-us the(-road) to the Bardariotai to-go
τοῦτο γάρ μοι δοκεῖ καὶ μᾶλλον συμφέρον σοι.’ καὶ γέγονεν
this for to-me seems also more advantageous to-you and it-happened
οὕτως, καὶ ἐς τῶν Βαρδαρειωτῶν ἀπήειμεν τὰς σκηνάς.
so and to of-the Bardariotai we-went-off the tents
ἰδὼν δέ με ὁ αὐτῶν πριμμικήριος θαυμάσας ἠρώτα,
having-seen and me the their primmikerios having-wondered asked
τί ἂν βουλόμενος περὶ τὴν αὐτοῦ σκηνὴν ἀφικόμην· καὶ
what — wishing to the his tent I-had-come and
ἔγωγε ‘μικρᾶς’ ἔφην ‘ἀναπαύσεως χάριν.’ βραχὺ γοῦν
I of-small said of-rest for-the-sake short(-while) then
τι προσεκαρτέρησα τοῖς ἐκεῖσε· ἤδη γὰρ καὶ ὁ
some I-stayed with-the(-men) there already for also the
πριμμικήριος ἐμεμαθήκει τὰ κατ’ ἐμέ. ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς
primmikerios had-learned the(-things) concerning me the but emperor
οὐδ’ εἰς πολὺ μελλήσας διεμηνύσατο εἰς τὴν σκηνὴν
not-even for long having-delayed sent-word to the tent
ἀφικέσθαι με. δεδιὼς δὲ μή πως τῇ λύπῃ κατασχεθεὶς
to-come me fearing and lest somehow by-the grief having-been-gripped
φυγῇ χρήσωμαι, προσέταξε μοῖράν τινα στρατιωτικὴν
flight I-should-use ordered portion some military
περιστοιχίσαι μου τὴν σκηνὴν καὶ λεληθότως φυλάττειν με.
to-surround my the tent and secretly to-guard me
Ἐγὼ μὲν οὖν εἰς τὴν οἰκείαν ἀφιγμένος σκηνὴν ἡσύχως
I indeed then to the own having-arrived tent quietly
ἐν αὐτῇ τὸν καιρὸν διεβίβαζον, οὐκ ἐν ἀνακτόροις βαδίζων
in it the time spent not in palace going
οὐδέ τινι τῶν συνήθων καὶ ἐπιτηδείων προσομιλῶν, ἀλλ’
nor with-any of-the familiar and close(-friends) conversing but

ἢ ταῖς βίβλοις προσανέχων καὶ ἀναγνώσει χρώμενος καὶ
than to-the books attending and in-reading engaging and
τροφῆς μεταλαμβάνων κατὰ καιρόν. ἱκαναὶ γοῦν ἡμέραι
of-food partaking in season sufficient then days
οὑτωσί πώς μου ἔχοντος παρῳχήκεσαν, καὶ ὁ βασιλεὺς
thus somehow my being had-passed and the emperor
ἠγανάκτει τὸ σκληρόν μου καθορῶν τοῦ φρονήματος.
was-vexed the hardness my seeing of-the spirit
παρῄει γοῦν ὅλος ὁ Αὔγουστος, καὶ οὐδ' ὅλως ἐνδοῦναι
passed then whole — August and not at-all to-give-way
εἶχον τῆς ἧς ἔστερξα γνώμης μικρόν. πολλοὶ γοῦν
I-was-able of-the which I-had-embraced resolve a-little many then
τῶν ἀρχιερέων ἀφίκοντο πρὸς ἐμέ, βασιλικῇ μέν, ὡς
of-the high-priests came to me by-imperial indeed as
ἠπιστάμην, τῇ προσταγῇ, εἰ καὶ ἐκεῖνοι λανθάνειν ἤθελον,
I-knew the order if even they to-escape-notice wished
οἴκοθεν λέγοντες ἀφικέσθαι πρὸς ἐμὲ φιλίας χάριν καὶ
from-themselves saying to-have-come to me of-friendship for-the-sake and
χρηστῆς διαθέσεως· πολλά τε λέγοντες τὸ ἀπόκροτον
of-kind disposition many(-things) both saying the hard
καταλιπεῖν με τῆς γνώμης καὶ τῷ βασιλεῖ ξυνελθεῖν
to-leave me of-the resolve and with-the emperor to-come-together
καὶ αὖθις αὐτῷ πρὸς τὸν τῆς δουλείας συνελαθῆναι ζυγόν,
and again with-him to the of-the slavery to-be-driven yoke
οὐχ εὕρισκον ὅλως πειθήνιον· ἔφασκον γὰρ ὡς 'εἴπερ μοι
not they-found at-all obedient I-said for that if-indeed to-me
τὰ χρηστότατα ὁ βασιλεὺς ἐπιδείξαιτο, ὁποῖα οὐδεὶς ἄλλος
the kindest(-things) the emperor should-show such-as no-one other
τῶν βεβασιλευκότων ἐπί τινι τῶν ὑπηρετησάντων
of-the(-ones) having-reigned toward any of-the(-ones) having-served
αὐτῷ ἐπιδέδειχεν, ἢ τὰ χείρω καὶ κάκιστα ἐν ἐμοὶ
him has-shown or the worse(-things) and worst in me

κατεργάσαιτο, οἷα οὐδεὶς ἄλλος τῶν ἐπὶ κακίᾳ
should-work as no-one other of-the(-ones) for wickedness
περιβοήτων ἐν οὐδενὶ τῶν ἁπάντων πεποίηκεν, οὔθ' οὕτως
notorious in none of-the all has-done neither so
οὔτ' ἐκείνως τῷ βασιλεῖ κατά τι δουλεύσαιμι.' ἐγὼ
nor thus to-the emperor in anything I-would-serve I
μὲν οὖν οὕτως εἶχον γνώμης καὶ ἀμεταθέτου σκοποῦ.
indeed then so held of-resolve and of-unchangeable aim
Ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ ὁ Σεπτέβριος ἐφεστήκει μὴν καὶ ἡ τοῦ
when and also — September had-come-on month and the of-the
δεσπότου Μιχαὴλ σύζυγος Θεοδώρα παρὰ τὸν βασιλέα
despot Michael wife Theodora to the emperor
ἀφίκετο μετὰ τοῦ υἱοῦ αὐτῆς Νικηφόρου, τὸ πρὸς τὸν
arrived with the son her Nikephoros the with the
βασιλέα κῆδος ἀποπληρώσοντες, ὅπερ ὁ βασιλεὺς
emperor marriage-alliance to-fulfill which the emperor
Ἰωάννης ὁ τοῦ βασιλεύοντος πατὴρ πρὸ χρόνων τινῶν
John the of-the reigning(-one) father before years some
συμπεφώνηκεν, ὁ μὲν βασιλεὺς ἔσπευδε τὴν Θεσσαλονίκην
had-agreed the indeed emperor hastened — Thessalonica
καταλαβεῖν, ἔνθα καὶ τοὺς γάμους ποιῆσαι βεβούληται.
to-reach where also the wedding to-make wished
καὶ δήπερ ἀπάρας ἐξ οὗπερ ἔκειτο τόπου τῆς εἰς
and indeed having-set-out from where he-lay place the(-road) to
τὴν Θεσσαλονίκην φερούσης ἥπτετο· καθ' ὁδὸν δὲ μετὰ
— Thessalonica leading took-hold-of on road and with
τῆς τοῦ δεσπότου συζύγου τὰς συμβιβάσεις ἐποίει. ἡ μὲν
the of-the despot wife the agreements made the indeed
οὖν τοῦ δεσπότου σύζυγος Θεοδώρα καὶ ἄκουσα τοῖς τοῦ
then of-the despot wife Theodora even unwilling with-the of-the
βασιλέως λόγοις συνήρχετο· ἐντὸς γὰρ τῶν ἐκείνου χειρῶν
emperor words agreed within for the his hands

οὖσα καὶ μικροῦ δεῖν ὡς ἐν εἱρκτῇ τυγχάνουσα οὐκ εἶχέ
being and of-little to-lack as in prison being not had
τι ἄλλο δρᾶσαι. συμπεφώνηκε γοῦν δοῦναι πρὸς τὸν
anything other to-do agreed then to-give to the
βασιλέα τὸ κάστρον τὰ Σέρβια καὶ σὺν αὐτῷ καὶ τὸ
emperor the castle — Servia and with it also —
Δυρράχιον. ἐπὶ τούτοις καὶ ὅρκοι ἐγγράφως προέβησαν
Dyrrachion on these also oaths in-writing proceeded
καὶ ἀπεστάλησαν πρὸς τὸν δεσπότην Μιχαήλ. ὁ δέ, ὅ
and were-sent to the despot Michael he and what
φησιν ἡ ποίησις, ἑκὼν ἀέκοντί γε θυμῷ τοῖς
says the poem willing with-unwilling at-least spirit with-the(-things)
ὁμωμοσμένοις συνῆλθεν· ηὔχετο γὰρ ἐλευθερωθῆναι καὶ
sworn agreed prayed for to-be-freed and
παρ᾽ αὐτὸν γενέσθαι καὶ τὸν υἱὸν καὶ τὴν σύζυγον.
to him to-come both the son and the wife
Ἐν τοῖς τοιούτοις τῶν λόγων ὁ βασιλεὺς κἀμὲ τῆς ἧς
in the such of-the words the emperor also-me from-the which
εἶχον ἐκμοχλεύσας στερρότητος ἐχειρώσατο. ἐξαποστείλας
I-had having-prised-loose firmness subdued having-sent-out
γὰρ τὸν πρὸς πάππου αὐτοῦ θεῖον τὸν Λάσκαριν
for the on-the-side-of grandfather his uncle — Laskaris
Μανουὴλ καὶ τὸν πρωτοβεστιάριον αὐτοῦ τὸν Μουζάλωνα
Manuel and the protovestiarios his — Mouzalon
Γεώργιον ἱλαροῖς καὶ ἁπλοῖς τισιν ἐχρήσατο λόγοις, καί
George with-cheerful and simple some used words and
με εἶλε, καὶ πρὸς αὐτὸν οἱ ἀποσταλέντες ἀπήγαγον.
me took and to him the(-ones) sent led-away
καὶ γοῦν προσιὼν τῷ βασιλεῖ καὶ ὡς ἔθος κλίνας τὴν
and then approaching the emperor and as custom having-bowed the
κεφαλὴν μακρότερον ἔστην. καὶ ὁ βασιλεύς· ‘οὐκ οἶδας ὅπῃ
head farther-off I-stood and the emperor not you-know where

εἰώθεις ἵστασθαι; τὸν τόπον σου γινώσκεις, καὶ πρόσιθι.᾽
you-were-wont to-stand the place your you-know and come-forward
τῇ προσταγῇ γοῦν ὑπείξας τοῦ βασιλέως ἀπελθὼν ἔστην
to-the order then having-yielded of-the emperor having-gone I-stood
ἐκ πλαγίου αὐτοῦ καθώσπερ εἶχον καὶ ἔθος. τότε γοῦν
from side his as I-had also custom then at-any-rate
μοι ὁ βασιλεὺς τὰς τοῦ δεσπότου Μιχαὴλ ὑποθέσεις πάσας
to-me the emperor the of-the despot Michael matters all
ἀνεκοινώσατο καὶ ἐξ ἀρχῆς ὅπως προέβησαν διηγήσατο.
communicated and from beginning how they-proceeded narrated
ταῦτα μὲν οὖν ἐν τοῖς τοῦ Λαγκαδᾶ — τόπος δέ ἐστιν
these-things indeed then in the(-places) — of-Langadas place and is
οὗτος ἐγγύς που τυγχάνων τῆς Θεσσαλονίκης — ἐγένετο.
this near somewhere being — Thessalonica happened
Ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁ βασιλεὺς τὴν Θεσσαλονίκην κατείληφε, τοὺς 64
when and the emperor — Thessalonica had-reached the
ἐπὶ τῇ θυγατρὶ Μαρίᾳ γάμους μετὰ τοῦ υἱοῦ τοῦ
for the daughter Maria wedding with the son of-the
δεσπότου Μιχαὴλ Νικηφόρου, ὃν καὶ δεσπότην τετίμηκεν,
despot Michael Nikephoros whom also despot he-honored
ἐκπεπλήρωκεν.
fulfilled
Ἐν τούτοις δὲ ὄντος τοῦ βασιλέως γραφή τις πρὸς
in these and being the emperor letter some to
αὐτὸν ἐξεπέμφθη παρὰ τῶν ἐν τοῖς Βιθυνίας μέρεσιν
him was-sent from the(-ones) in the of-Bithynia parts
ὄντων καὶ εἰς φυλακὴν εἶναι τοῦ τόπου προστεταγμένων,
being and on guard to-be of-the place ordered
ὡς ὁ Μιχαὴλ Κομνηνὸς ὁ Παλαιολόγος, ὃν καὶ μέγαν
that — Michael Komnenos the Palaiologos whom also great
κονοστάβλον πρὸς τοῦ βασιλέως Ἰωάννου ὁ λόγος φθάσας
konostaulos by the emperor John the account anticipating

τετιμῆσθαι δεδήλωκε καὶ τὴν τῆς ἁπάσης ταύτης
to-have-been-honored has-shown and the of-the whole this
χώρας ἡγεμονίαν ἐμπεπιστεῦσθαι, φυγὰς ᾤχετο καὶ περὶ
land command to-have-been-entrusted fugitive went and to
τὸν τῶν Μουσουλμάνων ἀπῄει χῶρον. ἐταράχθη γοῦν ἐπὶ
the of-the Muslims went-off region was-troubled then at
τούτοις ὁ βασιλεὺς οὐ μικρῶς, καί με προσκαλεσάμενος
these the emperor not slightly and me having-summoned
‘ἔγνως,’ ἔφη, ‘τί γέγονε καὶ αὐτός;’ ‘οὐδαμῶς’ ἔφην,
have-you-learned he-said what has-happened and I by-no-means I-said
‘ὦ βασιλεῦ· τί δέ ἐστι τὸ προσφάτως γεγενημένον;’
O emperor what and is the recently having-happened
ὁ δέ φησιν· ‘ὁ μέγας κονοστάβλος ἀπέδρα καὶ περὶ
he and says the great konostaulos ran-away and to
τὰ τῶν Μουσουλμάνων κεχώρηκε. τί γοῦν ἄρα
the(-lands) of-the Muslims has-gone what then indeed
περὶ τοῦ τοιούτου διανοῇ; μῶν πρὸς Μουσουλμάνων
about the such do-you-think surely-not from Muslims
προσλαβόμενος στράτευμα καθ’ ἡμετέρας χωρήσει χώρας;’
having-taken army against our will-he-go lands
‘οὐδαμῶς μοι δοκεῖ τοιοῦτον, ὦ βασιλεῦ,’ ἔφην, ‘αὐτὸν
by-no-means to-me seems such O emperor I-said him
διαπράξασθαι· τὴν γὰρ γνώμην τοῦ ἀνδρὸς ἐπέγνων
to-accomplish the for mind of-the man I-know
καὶ τὸ τοῦ φρονήματος ἐπίσταμαι φιλορώμαιον.’ καὶ
and the of-the spirit I-understand Rome-loving and
ὁ βασιλεύς· ‘τίνος οὖν χάριν φυγὰς τῶν ἡμετέρων
the emperor of-what then for-the-sake fugitive from-the our(-lands)
ἐγένετο;’ ‘ὅτιπερ,’ ἔφην, ‘ὡς οἶσθα, ὦ βασιλεῦ, οὐχ
did-he-become because I-said as you-know O emperor not
ἅπαξ οὐδὲ δὶς ἀλλὰ καὶ μυριάκις ἠπείλεις αὐτῷ τὰ
once nor twice but also ten-thousand-times you-threatened him the

δεινότατα καὶ ὠργίζου κατ᾽ αὐτοῦ χαλεπῶς, καὶ ἐν
most-terrible(-things) and were-angry against him harshly and in
πλήθει παρόντι πολλῷ ἔφασκες ἐκπέμψαι καὶ ἐξορύξαι
multitude present great you-said to-send-out and to-gouge-out
οἱ τοὺς ὀφθαλμούς. ταῦτ᾽ ἐκεῖνος ἐμάνθανε καὶ παρὰ
his the eyes these-things he learned and from
πολλῶν τῶν λεγομένων ἤκουε, καὶ ἐδάκνετο τὴν
many of-the(-things) said heard and was-bitten the
ψυχὴν καὶ ἐδειλία τὴν τιμωρίαν καὶ ἀποφυγεῖν ἐπέσπευσε
soul and feared the punishment and to-escape hastened
τὴν ποινήν.᾽ ‘καὶ διὰ τί,᾽ ἔφη ὁ βασιλεύς, ‘οὐκ ἐν
the penalty and because-of what said the emperor not in
τοῖς ἡμετέροις προσεκαρτέρει, καὶ εἰ παθεῖν ἔμελλε τὰ
the our(-lands) did-he-persevere even if to-suffer he-was-about the
δεινὰ ταῦτα, τῆς ἐπὶ τῆς ἀλλοδαπῆς εὐπραγίας
terrible(-things) these than-the in the foreign-land good-fortune
τὴν ἐν τοῖς ἰθαγενέσι προτιμῶν δυσπραγίαν;᾽ ‘οὐκ ἔστι
the among the native-born preferring misfortune not is
τοῦτο ψυχῆς ἀνθρωπίνης,᾽ ἔφην, ‘ὦ βασιλεῦ. δεινὰ
this of-soul human I-said O emperor terrible(-things)
μὲν γὰρ παθεῖν καὶ περιπεσεῖν συμφοραῖς ἔνιοι ἂν ἱκανοὶ
indeed for to-suffer and to-fall-into misfortunes some — able
φανῶσι, στερροτέρου γεγενημένοι φρονήματος καὶ οἷον
might-appear of-firmer having-become spirit and so-to
εἰπεῖν ἀπροσπαθοῦς ἐν τοῖς τοῦ βίου πράγμασι· τὸ δὲ
speak unattached in the of-the life affairs the but
περὶ αὐτῇ τῇ ζωῇ δεδιέναι καὶ ἀκρωτηριασμὸν τῶν
about itself the life to-fear and mutilation of-the
καιριωτέρων σωματικῶν μερῶν προσδοκᾶν, οὐμενοῦν δοκεῖ
more-vital bodily parts to-expect not-at-all seems
τινα ἐν τούτοις προσκαρτερεῖν, ἀλλὰ τὸν περὶ ψυχῆς
anyone in these to-persevere but the(-race) for soul

τρέχων ἀποφυγγάνει τῶν δεινῶν ὅση δύναμις.'
running escapes the terrible(-things) as-much-as power
ταῦτ' εἰπόντες σεσιωπήκαμεν. καὶ μετὰ βραχὺ 'τί δὲ
these-things having-said we-were-silent and after short(-while) what and
οἴει' ὁ βασιλεὺς ἔφη 'τοῦτον ποιῆσαι;' ἐγὼ δὲ ἔφην ὡς
do-you-think the emperor said him to-do I and said that
'μικρὸν ὑπολαμβάνω παρὰ τὸν περσάρχην προσκαρτερήσας
a-little I-suppose with the Persian-ruler having-stayed
ἀποστελεῖ συμπαθείας πρὸς τοῦ σοῦ κράτους ἀξιωθῆναι,
he-will-send of-sympathy by the your might to-be-deemed-worthy
ἔχων καὶ τὸν περσάρχην ἐπὶ τῇ ὑποθέσει μεσολαβοῦντα,
holding also the Persian-ruler in the matter mediating
ζητήσει δέ σε ὅρκον εἰς τὴν τῆς ἀληθείας βεβαίωσιν, οὗ
he-will-seek and you oath for the of-the truth confirmation which
ἄνευ οὐκέτι μοι δοκεῖ παρὰ σὲ ἀφικέσθαι.' ἐν τούτοις ἦν
without no-longer to-me seems to you to-come in these was
τεταραγμένος ὁ βασιλεύς, ἐν ἀμφιβόλοις τυγχάνων τοῖς
troubled the emperor in doubtful being the
πράγμασιν. ὡς δὲ μετ' ὀλίγας τινὰς ἡμέρας γραφαὶ πρὸς
affairs as and after few some days letters to
τὸν βασιλέα ἐπέμφθησαν πρὸς τῶν στραταρχούντων ἐν
the emperor were-sent from the(-ones) generalling in
Βιθυνίᾳ καὶ Μεσοθυνίᾳ — αἱ δὲ γραφαὶ τοῦ μεγάλου
Bithynia and Mesothynia the and letters of-the great
κονοστάβλου ἐτύγχανον πρὸς αὐτούς, περιλήψεως ἔχουσαι
konostaulos happened to them of-tenor having
οὕτως — πρὸς ἕνα δὲ ἕκαστον τῶν τοιούτων ἐγεγραφήκει
so to one and each of-the such(-men) he-had-written
— ὡς 'ἐγὼ τὸν ἐκ τοῦ βασιλέως φόβον ἐν τῇ καρδίᾳ
that I the from the emperor fear in the heart
μου σχὼν καὶ δεδιὼς μή πού τι πάθω δεινόν,
my having and fearing lest somehow something I-might-suffer terrible

φυγῇ ἐχρησάμην· ὑμεῖς δὲ φρονίμως καὶ ἀνδρικῶς τῶν
flight I-used you but sensibly and manfully the
στρατιωτικῶν ὑμῖν πραγμάτων ἀντέχεσθε, καὶ αἱ φυλακαὶ
military for-you affairs hold-to and the guards
τῶν πολιχνίων καὶ ἄστεων ἀσφαλεῖς ἔστωσαν, καὶ ἡ τῆς
of-the small-towns and towns secure let-be and the of-the
ἁπάσης χώρας προσοχὴ καὶ συντήρησις παρ᾽ ὑμῶν ὡς
whole land attention and preservation by you as
ἔθος γινέσθω, καὶ καθὼς ἐπράττετε μετ᾽ ἐμοῦ, καὶ αὖθις
custom let-be-done and as you-did with me also again
ποιεῖτε.᾽ καὶ ἡ ἐπιγραφὴ τὸν μέγαν κονοστάβλον ἐσήμαινε.
do and the superscription the great konostaulos signified
ταύτας ὁ βασιλεὺς θεασάμενος τὰς γραφὰς ἱλαρῶς διετέθη
these the emperor having-seen the letters cheerfully was-disposed
πρὸς τὴν ὑπόθεσιν καὶ τοῖς λόγοις μου ἐμπεπίστευκεν.
toward the matter and the words my trusted
Ἐνταῦθα δὲ τοῦ λόγου γενόμενοι τὰ τῆς ἱστορίας, ὡς 65
here and of-the account having-come the(-things) of-the history as
δέον ἐστίν, ἐμπλατύνομεν· πολλῶν γὰρ λόγων ἄξια τὰ
needful it-is we-broaden of-many for words worthy the(-things)
ἐν τῇ φυγῇ γεγενημένα τοῦ Κομνηνοῦ Μιχαήλ. ἐπεὶ γὰρ
in the flight having-happened — of-Komnenos Michael when for
οὗτος ἐν τοῖς οἰκήμασι τῶν Τουρκομάνων ἀφίκετο — ἔθνος
he in the dwellings of-the Turkomans arrived nation
δὲ τοῦτο τοῖς ἄκροις ὁρίοις τῶν Περσῶν ἐφεδρεῦον, καὶ
and this on-the extreme borders of-the Persians lying-in-wait and
ἀσπόνδῳ μίσει κατὰ Ῥωμαίων χρώμενον καὶ ἁρπαγαῖς
with-implacable hatred against Romans using and in-plunderings
ταῖς ἐκ τούτων χαῖρον καὶ τοῖς ἐκ πολέμων σκύλοις
the(-ones) from these rejoicing and in-the from wars spoils
εὐφραινόμενον, καὶ τότε δὴ μᾶλλον, ὁπότε τὰ τῶν
delighting and then indeed rather when the(-affairs) of-the

Περσῶν ἐκυμαίνετο καὶ ταῖς ἐκ τῶν Ταχαρίων ἐφόδοις
Persians were-surging and by-the from the Tachars attacks
συνεταράττετο — τῷ Κομνηνῷ Μιχαὴλ ὡς ἑρμαίῳ
were-confounded — Komnenos Michael as windfall
ἐντυχόντες τινὲς καὶ λίχνον ὄμμα τοῖς αὐτοῦ ἐπιβαλόντες
having-met some and greedy eye on-the his having-cast
πράγμασι, πάντα τὰ αὐτοῦ διηρπάκασι, χρυσὸν ἄργυρον
affairs all the(-things) his plundered gold silver
ἵππους ὑφάσματα καὶ αὐτὰ δὴ τὰ ἐνδύματα, οἷς
horses woven-stuffs and the-very indeed the garments with-which
οἱ αὐτοῦ ἐνεδέδυντο. διαμερίσαντες δὲ καὶ πάντας
the(-men) his were-clothed having-divided and also all
τοὺς ἑφεπομένους αὐτῷ, ἕκαστος τὸν κατισχημένον εἰς
the(-ones) following him each the(-one) seized into
οἰκείαν δουλείαν ἠγάγετο. ὁ δὲ Κομνηνὸς Μιχαὴλ μόγις
own slavery led — and Komnenos Michael hardly
τὰς χεῖρας τούτων διεκφυγὼν καὶ θεοῦ προνοίᾳ διασωθεὶς
the hands of-these having-escaped and of-God by-providence having-been-saved
γυμνὸς ἁπάντων παρὰ τὸν περσάρχην ἀφίκετο. ὁ δὲ οὐ
naked of-all to the Persian-ruler arrived he but not
κατὰ νέηλυν φυγάδα τοῦτον ἐδέξατο, ἀλλ᾽ ἀσμένως λίαν
as a-newly-arrived fugitive him received but gladly very
προσήκατο. τό τε γὰρ εὐγενὲς τοῦ ἀνδρὸς ἐμεμαθήκει,
admitted the both for nobility of-the man he-had-learned
καὶ πάντες οἱ μετὰ τοῦ περσάρχου μεγιστᾶνες τελοῦντες
and all the with the Persian-ruler grandees being
τὸ εἶδος αὐτοῦ καὶ τὸ φρόνημα τεθαυμάκασι, καὶ ὅ φησί
the form his and the spirit admired and what says
τις τῶν παλαιῶν, τυραννίδος ἄξιον ἔκριναν. εἰς ὀλίγους
one of-the ancients of-tyranny worthy judged to few
γὰρ αὐτῷ ξυνιόντες λόγους ἐκ βραχέων τὴν τοῦ ἀνδρὸς
for with-him coming-together words from short(-ones) the of-the man

ἐπεγνώκεισαν σταθηρότητα· τήν τε γὰρ αὐτοῦ στρατιωτικὴν
they-had-recognized steadiness the both for his military
ἐτεκμήραντο τέχνην καὶ τὴν ἐν τοῖς πολέμοις ἀκρίβειαν
they-inferred skill and the in the wars exactness
καὶ ὡς οὐκ ἀδαὴς ἂν εἴη τῶν προσηκόντων
and that not unskilled — he-would-be of-the(-things) fitting
ἐν μάχαις. χάριν μὲν οὖν τῶν ἐσκυλευμένων αὐτῷ
in battles for-the-sake indeed then of-the despoiled of-him
πραγμάτων καὶ τῶν διαμεμερισμένων ὑπηρετῶν γραφαὶ τοῦ
goods and of-the divided servants letters of-the
σουλτάνου, εἰ καὶ εἰς μάτην, γεγένηνται, ἵν' ἐπισυναχθεῖεν
sultan if even in vain were-made that might-be-gathered
τὰ πάντα καὶ πάντες καὶ ἐπικομισθεῖεν αὐτῷ.
the(-things) all and all and might-be-brought to-him
Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐπὶ ξυροῦ ἀκμῆς τὰ τῆς μάχης σφίσιν
when and on razor's edge the(-affairs) of-the battle to-them
ἐφίστατο — οἵ τε γὰρ Ταχάριοι τὰ πλείω τῆς
stood the both for Tachars the most of-the
χώρας τῶν Μουσουλμάνων λῃϊσάμενοι περὶ τὰ Ἄξαρα
land of-the Muslims having-plundered about — Axara
ἐστρατοπεδεύσαντο, πᾶσα δὲ ἀνάγκη ἦν καὶ πρὸς
encamped all and necessity was also for
μάχην τοὺς Πέρσας ἀντιστῆναι τοῖς Ταχαρίοις — τὸν
battle the Persians to-stand-against the Tachars —
μὲν Κομνηνὸν Μιχαὴλ εἰς ἡγεμόνα τῶν Χριστιανικῶν
indeed Komnenos Michael as commander of-the Christian
στρατευμάτων οἱ Πέρσαι εἶναι διετάξαντο. ὁ δὲ ἐπεὶ ἐν
armies the Persians to-be appointed he but since in
ἀλλοδαπῇ ἐτύγχανεν ὤν, συμμαχεῖν μὲν Μουσουλμάνοις
foreign-land he-was being to-fight-alongside indeed Muslims
ἀπευκταῖον ἡγεῖτο, μή ποτε, ὡς ἔφασκεν οὗτος, ἐν μάχῃ
abominable he-thought lest ever as he-said he in battle

πεσόντος εὐσεβὲς αἷμα αἵμασι συγκραθείη ἀνοσίοις καὶ
having-fallen pious blood with-bloods might-be-mixed unholy and
ἀσεβέσι, χάριτι δὲ θείᾳ ἀναρρωσθεὶς καὶ γενναῖον
impious by-grace but divine having-been-strengthened and noble
ἀναλαβὼν φρόνημα πρὸς τὴν μάχην ἐξώρμησε. τὸ μὲν οὖν
having-taken-up spirit for the battle set-out the indeed then
μέρος τοῦ στρατεύματος τὸ παρὰ τοῦ Κομνηνοῦ Μιχαὴλ
part of-the army the(-one) by — Komnenos Michael
τεταγμένον τοὺς ἀντιτεταγμένους αὐτῷ Ταχαρίους κατὰ
arrayed the arrayed-against him Tachars by
κράτος νενίκηκε, τοῦ Μιχαὴλ αὐτοῦ πρώτως δόρατι παρὰ
force conquered — of-Michael himself first with-spear by
μαζὸν βαλόντος τὸν τοῦ στρατεύματος προηγούμενον, ὅς,
breast having-struck the of-the army leader who
καθάπερ ἔφησαν οἱ γινώσκοντες, μετὰ μικρὸν ἐκ τῆς
as said the(-ones) knowing after a-little from the
βολῆς ἐτεθνήκει. καὶ ἦσαν μὲν ἐκ τοῦ κρατουμένου μέρους
blow had-died and were indeed from the held part
τοῦ Κομνηνοῦ ἐκνενικημένοι οἱ Ταχάριοι καὶ πρὸς φυγὴν ἤδη
— of-Komnenos defeated the Tachars and to flight already
ἐχώρουν. ἀνὴρ δέ τις τῶν ἐν Πέρσαις περιωνύμων,
went man and some of-the(-ones) among Persians renowned
τὴν ἀξίαν ἀμυραχούρης — μέγα δὲ τοῦτο παρὰ Πέρσαις
the dignity amirachoures great and this among Persians
— ἀπιστίαν περὶ τὸ αὐτοῦ γένος ἐγκυμονῶν ἐκ μακροῦ
faithlessness toward the his-own race being-pregnant-with from long
τότε ταύτην ἐξώδινε, καὶ τὸ ὑφ' αὑτὸν ἅπαν συλλαβὼν
then it brought-forth and the under himself whole having-taken
στράτευμα τοῖς Ταχαρίοις προσώρμησε. καὶ τὸ ἐντεῦθεν
army against-the Tachars set-out and the from-this-point
τἀναντία ἦν ἰδεῖν· οἱ γὰρ πρὸ μικροῦ διώκοντες ἔφευγον
the-opposite was to-see the(-ones) for before little pursuing fled

καὶ νῶτα ἐδίδουν τοῖς ἐναντίοις πλήττεσθαι. ἔπιπτον
and backs gave to-the opponents to-be-struck fell
γοῦν οἱ Πέρσαι συχνοὶ τοῖς τῶν Ταχαρίων πληττόμενοι
then the Persians numerous by-the of-the Tachars being-struck
βέλεσι. μέχρι μὲν οὖν μακρῶν διαστημάτων τὴν δίωξιν
missiles up-to indeed then long distances the pursuit
οἱ νενικηκότες πεποίηνται. ὁ γοῦν Κομνηνὸς Μιχαὴλ
the(-ones) having-conquered made — then Komnenos Michael
συμβὰν οὕτω τῷ μεγίστῳ στρατοπεδάρχῃ τῶν Περσικῶν
having-met so the greatest stratopedarch of-the Persian
στρατευμάτων, ὃν πεκλάρπακιν οἴδασιν οἱ Πέρσαι καλεῖν,
armies whom beklarbaki know the Persians to-call
ξυνῄει κατὰ τὴν ὁδόν, καὶ ἐπορεύοντο πάνυ πλείους
came-together on the road and they-traveled very many
ἡμέρας ἐφεπομένους ἑαυτοῖς τοὺς πολεμίους ἔχοντες καὶ
days following them the enemies having and
καθ' ὥραν μαχόμενοι. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡ τοῦ λεγομένου οἰκία
by hour fighting since and the of-the said(-man) house
πεκλάρπακι περὶ τὴν Καστάμοναν ἐτύγχανεν οὖσα, ἐκεῖσε
beklarbaki about — Kastamona happened being there
σπεύσαντες ἐγεγόνεισαν. τὸ δὲ Ταχαρίων γένος πᾶσαν τὴν
having-hastened they-had-come the and of-Tachars race all the
ὑπὸ τοὺς Μουσουλμάνους κατέδραμε χώραν. ἀλλ' ἐνταῦθα
under the Muslims overran land but here
μὲν ὁ περὶ τούτων λόγος ἀναμεινάτω, ἐχέσθω δὲ τῶν
indeed the about these account let-wait let-hold and to-the
προτέρων, ἵνα καὶ καθ' εἰρμὸν τὰ τῆς ἱστορίας προΐοι.
former(-things) that also in sequence the(-things) of-the history may-proceed
Ὁ μὲν οὖν βασιλεὺς Θεόδωρος ἐπεὶ περὶ τῶν 66
the indeed then emperor Theodore when about the(-things)
γεγενημένων ἐν τῇ τῶν Μουσουλμάνων ἐπύθετο χώρᾳ, οὐ
happened in the of-the Muslims learned land not

περὶ τούτων μᾶλλον ἔχων φροντίδα ἢ περὶ τῶν αὐτοῦ
about these rather having care than about the(-things) his-own
— κίνδυνον γὰρ οὐ σμικρὸν τοῖς Ῥωμαϊκοῖς ἐπισυμβαίνειν
danger for not small to-the Roman to-befall
ὑπετόπασε χώροις — ἔσπευσε πρὸς τὴν ἕω παλινοστῆσαι·
suspected lands hastened to the east to-return
καὶ δὴ πᾶσαν τὴν Ῥωμαϊκὴν στρατιὰν μεθ' ἑαυτοῦ
and indeed all the Roman army with himself
προσλαβὼν τῆς πρὸς τὴν ἕω φερούσης ἐφήπτετο.
having-taken the(-road) to the east leading took-hold-of
καταλελοίπει δὲ ἔν τε τῇ Θεσσαλονίκῃ καὶ τοῖς κατὰ δυσμὴν
had-left and in both — Thessalonica and the in west
μέρεσιν ὡς πρὸς φύλαξιν δῆθεν τῆς χώρας τὸν πρὸς
parts as for guards supposedly of-the land the on-the-side-of
πάππου θεῖον αὐτοῦ τὸν Λάσκαριν Μιχαήλ, μικρόν τι
grandfather uncle his — Laskaris Michael small some
καὶ εὐσύνοπτον ἐκ Παφλαγόνων στράτευμα ἐπιδοὺς αὐτῷ
and easily-surveyed from Paphlagonians army having-given to-him
κἀκ τοῦ Σκυθικοῦ ὅσον εἰς τριακοσίους ἠριθμημένον,
and-from the Scythian as-much-as to three-hundred numbered
τοῦ δὲ Πριλάπου καὶ τῶν περὶ αὐτὸν στρατευμάτων τὸν
— and of-Prilapos and of-the about it armies —
ὃν εἶχε σκουτέριον Ξυλέαν ὠνομασμένον, φερωνύμως τὴν
whom he-had shield-bearer Xyleas named fittingly the
κλῆσιν νὴ τὴν Θέμιν ἔχοντα, εἰς δὲ τὸν Βελεσὸν καὶ τὰ
name by — Themis having to and — Belesos and the(-places)
περὶ αὐτὸν τὸν Καλαμπάκην Θεόδωρον, ὃν καὶ τατᾶν
about it — Kalampakes Theodore whom also tatas
τῆς αὐλῆς κατωνόμαζον, τὸν δὲ Χαβάρωνα Κωνσταντῖνον
of-the court they-named — and Chabaron Constantine
εἰς ἡγεμονίαν τοῦ Ἀλβάνου κατέστησεν, ἐμὲ δὲ πραίτορα
to command — of-Albanon appointed me and praetor

χειροτονήσας πάντων αὐτῶν ἀφῆκε προΐστασθαι. τοῦτο
having-appointed over-all them let to-preside this
δέ, ὡς οἶμαι, πεποίηκεν, ἵνα τῇ ἐξ αὐτοῦ μακροτέρᾳ
and as I-think he-did that by-the from him longer
ἀποδημίᾳ εἰς λήθην ὧν ἐπεπόνθειν γενοίμην. οὐδὲ γὰρ
absence to forgetfulness of-what I-had-suffered I-might-come not-even for
εἶδέ με πώποτε μετὰ τὰς πληγὰς ἐλευθεριάσαντα καὶ
he-saw me ever after the blows acting-freely and
λόγοις χαροπωτέροις ὡς εἰώθειν πρὸς αὐτὸν χρήσασθαι.
words more-cheerful as I-was-wont toward him to-use
ἵνα γοῦν τῇ χρονίῳ ταύτῃ διατριβῇ τῆς ψυχῆς ἡ
that then by-the long this sojourn of-the soul the
σκυθρωπότης διαλυθείη μοι, πέπραχε τοῦτο, τάχα δὲ
gloom might-be-dissolved for-me he-did this perhaps and
καὶ ὡς δυσχεραίνων ἦν τὴν ξυναυλίαν μου βαρυνόμενος·
also as being-annoyed he-was the companionship my being-burdened
προσέκρουον γὰρ αὐτῷ πολλάκις ἐφ᾽ οἷς ἤδειν οὐ
I-offended for him often at what(-things) I-knew not
κατὰ λόγον οὐδὲ κατὰ δίκαιον διαπράττεσθαι θέλοντα.
according-to reason nor according-to justice to-be-done wishing

Akropolites tours the western lands. Michael of Epirus, aided by the Albanians and the Serbs, rebels; Xyleas loses the army at Prilapos, the Lapardas column is cut down, and Michael takes Prilapos by treachery and holds Akropolites in chains. Theodore suspects him, then learns he is a prisoner.

67 Ὁ μὲν οὖν βασιλεὺς πρὸς τὴν ἕω ἀπῄει, ἐγὼ δὲ
the indeed then emperor to the east went-off I and
καταλελείμμην τοῖς ἐν δυσμῇ. τῆς γοῦν Θεσσαλονίκης
was-left among-the(-places) in west — then from-Thessalonica
ἐξιὼν ἀφικόμην περὶ τὴν Βέρροιαν· ἐκεῖσε γὰρ ὑπῆρχον
going-out I-arrived about — Berrhoia there for were
καὶ οἱ τοῦ πάπα πρέσβεις, οὓς ἀπεκβαλεῖν βασιλικῷ
also the of-the pope envoys whom to-cast-out by-imperial
προστάγματι ἔμελλον. κἀκεῖσε μικρὸν προσκαρτερήσας
order I-was-about and-there a-little having-stayed
διὰ τὴν τῶν πρέσβεων ἀπεκβολὴν καὶ δι᾽ ἑτέρας
because-of the of-the envoys casting-out and because-of other
τινὰς ὑποθέσεις, ἐκεῖθεν ἐξιὼν τῆς πρὸς τὸ Ἄλβανον
some matters thence going-out the(-road) to — Albanon
φερούσης ἡπτόμην. καὶ δὴ τὰ Σέρβια παρελθὼν καὶ
leading I-took-hold-of and indeed — Servia having-passed and
παραμείψας τὴν Καστορίαν καὶ τὰ ἀμφὶ τὴν Ἀχρίδαν
having-gone-by — Kastoria and the(-places) about — Ochrid
παραγγείλας ἀφικόμην περὶ τὸ Ἄλβανον, κἀκ τούτου μετὰ
having-passed I-arrived about — Albanon and-from this with
τῶν τῆς χώρας ἐκκρίτων κατείληφα τὸ Δυρράχιον. κἀκεῖσε
the of-the land select-men I-reached — Dyrrachion and-there
διακαρτερήσας ἡμέρας ὀκτὼ ἐξῄειν, πάντα τὰ καθ᾽ ὁδὸν
having-stayed days eight I-went-out all the(-things) on road

οἰκονομήσας καὶ καταρτίσας ὡς ἔμοιγε δέον ἐδόκει, κατὰ
having-arranged and having-settled as to-me needful seemed according-to
ταῦτα δὲ καὶ τὰ τοῦ Δυρραχίου. ἐξορμήσας γοῦν τοῦ
these-things and also the(-things) — of-Dyrrachion having-set-out then —
Δυρραχίου καὶ διελθὼν τὰ τῆς Χουναβίας καὶ τὸ
from-Dyrrachion and having-gone-through the(-places) — of-Chounabia and the
ὄρος ὑπερβὰς ὃ δὴ Κακὴν Πέτραν κατονομάζουσιν,
mountain having-crossed which indeed Bad Rock they-name
εἰς τὰ περὶ τὴν Μάτην ἀπῆειν κἀντεῦθεν περὶ τὴν
to the(-places) about — Mate I-went-off and-hence about —
Δέβρην ἀφῖγμαι. πᾶσι δὲ τοῖς καθ' ὁδὸν ξυντυχών, τοῖς
Debre I-arrived all and the(-ones) on road having-met the(-ones)
ἀμφὶ τὰ ἄστη καὶ τοῖς ἀμφὶ τὰ τοπικὰ στρατόπεδα καὶ
about the towns and the(-ones) about the local camps and
τοῖς τὰ δημόσια διενεργουμένοις πράγματα, διὰ τῆς
the(-ones) the public conducting affairs through —
Κυτζάβεως παριὼν ἐπὶ τὸν Πρίλαπον ἐγενόμην. ταύτην
Kytzabis passing at — Prilapos I-came this
γοῦν τὴν πορείαν τὴν ἐκ Θεσσαλονίκης μέχρι καὶ αὐτοῦ
then the journey the(-one) from Thessalonica as-far-as also itself
τοῦ Πριλάπου διὰ τριῶν πεποίηκα τῶν μηνῶν χειμῶνος
— Prilapos in three I-made the months of-winter
ὥρᾳ· Δεκέβριος γὰρ ἦν ὁπότε τῆς Βερροίας ἐξώρμων,
in-season December for was when — from-Berrhoia I-set-out
καὶ τὸ Φεβρουαρίου τέλος ἐπὶ τὸν Πρίλαπον εἶχέ με.
and the of-February end at — Prilapos had me
Ἐκεῖσε γοῦν ἀφιγμένου μου φήμη πάμπαν δεινὴ τοῖς 68
there then having-arrived me report altogether terrible to-the
ὠσὶν ἐπεισέφρησε. τὰ δὲ τῆς φήμης, ὅτιπερ ὁ
ears burst-in the(-things) and of-the report that-indeed the(-one)
τὴν ἡγεμονίαν τοῦ Ἀλβάνου πρὸς τοῦ βασιλέως λαβὼν
the command — of-Albanon from the emperor having-received

ὁ Χαβάρων Κωνσταντῖνος πρὸς τοῦ δεσπότου Μιχαὴλ
— *Chabaron Constantine by the despot Michael*
ἑάλω μηχαναῖς τῆς γυναικαδέλφης αὐτοῦ Μαρίας, ἥτις
was-captured by-devices of-the sister-in-law his Maria who
προεῖχε μὲν ἄνδρα Σφραντζῆν τοὐπίκλην, τότε δὲ ὑπῆρχε
had indeed husband Sphrantzes by-surname then but was
χήρα· δόλοις γὰρ αὕτη τὸν Χαβάρωνα μετελθοῦσα καὶ
widow by-guiles for she — Chabaron having-pursued and
γράμμασιν ἐρωτικοῖς δελεάσασα τούτου τὸ φρόνημα —
with-letters amorous having-baited his the spirit
κουφότερος γὰρ οὗτος περὶ τὰ τοιαῦτα τυγχάνων ἦν, εἰ
lighter for this(-man) about the such(-things) being was if
καὶ ἄλλως καλὸς ἐτύγχανε στρατιώτης — ταῖς πάγαις
even otherwise good he-was soldier by-the snares
ταύτης ἁλώσιμος ἐγεγόνει. τοὐντεῦθεν εἰς ἀποστασίαν
her captive had-become thereafter to revolt
φανερὰν ὁ Μιχαὴλ ἐξωρμήκει. ἔγωγε μὲν οὖν διάγων περὶ
open — Michael had-set-out I indeed then staying about
τὸν Πρίλαπον περὶ τοῦ γεγενημένου δράματος ἐπεπύσμην.
— *Prilapos about the having-happened drama had-learned*
ὡς εἶχον γοῦν σπουδῆς πρὸς τὸν Λάσκαριν Μιχαὴλ
as I-had then of-haste to — Laskaris Michael
ἐπιστολὴν ἐπεπόμφειν, τὰ ξυμβεβηκότα τούτῳ διὰ
letter I-had-sent the(-things) having-happened to-him through
ταύτης δηλοποιῶν, καὶ περὶ τὴν Πελαγονίαν ἀφῖχθαι
it making-clear and to — Pelagonia to-have-come
τοῦτον γεγράφηκα, ὡς ἂν καὶ αὐτὸς ἀφιγμένος ἐκεῖσε
him I-wrote so-that — also he having-arrived there
καὶ ἄμφω εἰς ἓν γεγονότες περὶ τῶν ἀνὰ χεῖρας ἡμῖν
and both into one having-become about the in hands for-us
πραγμάτων τὴν ξυμβουλὴν ποιησαίμεθα· ξυνήλθομεν γοῦν
affairs the counsel we-might-make we-came-together then

καὶ ἄμφω ἐν τῇ Πελαγονίᾳ καὶ μεθ᾽ ἡμῶν καὶ ὁ
also both in — Pelagonia and with us also —
Ξυλέας σκουτέριος. ὑπελαμβάνομεν γὰρ αὐτὸν ἄνθρωπον
Xyleas shield-bearer we-supposed for him man
στρατιωτικὸν εἶναι ἢ κἂν ῥωμαιόφρονα· καὶ γὰρ καὶ
military to-be or at-least Roman-minded also for also
ὁ βασιλεὺς Θεόδωρος πολλὴν περὶ αὐτοῦ εἶχε ὑπόληψιν,
the emperor Theodore much about him had opinion
στρατιωτικήν τε αὐτὸν αὐχεῖν ἐμπειρίαν καὶ περὶ αὐτὸν καὶ
military both him to-boast experience and toward him also
τὰ τῶν Ῥωμαίων εὔνοιαν κεκτῆσθαι τὴν ἀκροτάτην.
the(-things) of-the Romans goodwill to-have-acquired the highest
Ἐπεὶ γοῦν ξυνήειμεν, ἐβουλευσάμεθα οὑτωσί, τὸν μὲν
when then we-came-together we-planned thus — indeed
Λάσκαριν Μιχαὴλ λαβεῖν τὸ ὑπ᾽ αὐτὸν ὅλον στρατόπεδον,
Laskaris Michael to-take the under him whole camp
τό τε Ῥωμαϊκὸν καὶ τὸ Σκυθικόν, καὶ ἀποχωρῆσαι τῶν
the both Roman and the Scythian and to-withdraw from-the
περὶ τὴν Βέρροιαν χώρων — ἐκεῖσε γὰρ ἐποιεῖτο τὰς
about — Berrhoia lands there for he-made the
σκηνάς — καὶ περὶ τὴν Πελαγονίαν ὁρμῆσαι κἀκεῖσε
tents and to — Pelagonia to-set-out and-there
στρατοπεδεῦσαι, ὡσαύτως καὶ ὁ Ξυλέας σκουτέριος ἵνα
to-encamp likewise also — Xyleas shield-bearer that
λάβῃ τὸ ὑπ᾽ αὐτὸν ἅπαν στρατιωτικὸν σύνταγμα —
he-might-take the under him whole military unit
ἐκεῖνο γὰρ μᾶλλον εἰς πλῆθος ἠρίθμητο — καὶ συνέλθοι
that for rather in multitude was-counted and might-come-together
τῷ Λάσκαρι Μιχαήλ, καὶ ἡνωμένως ἐν τοῖς τῆς Πελαγονίας
— with-Laskaris Michael and united in the — of-Pelagonia
μέρεσι στρατοπεδεύσασθαι. ἐν ἐπικαίρῳ γὰρ ἦν ὁ τόπος
parts to-encamp in suitable(-position) for was the place

περὶ τὴν τοῦ δεσπότου Μιχαὴλ μάχην καὶ περὶ τὴν τῶν
for the of-the despot Michael battle and for the(-battle) of-the
Σέρβων, ὡς ἐπυθόμεθα ὅτι καὶ οὗτοι συμφώνους λόγους
Serbs as we-learned that also these agreeing words
πρὸς τὸν Μιχαὴλ ἐπεποίηντο. ἐκείνους μὲν οὖν ἐκπληρῶσαι
toward — Michael had-made them indeed then to-fulfill
τὰ βεβουλευμένα ὑπεσχημένους κατέλιπον, ἐγὼ δὲ μετὰ
the(-things) planned having-promised I-left I and with
τῆς προσηκούσης ὑπηρεσίας μου τὴν Ἀχρίδα κατέλαβον, εἴ
the fitting service my — Ochrid reached if
πως ἂν δυνηθείην τὰ τῶν Ἀλβανιτῶν διορθώσασθαι.
somehow — I-might-be-able the(-affairs) of-the Albanians to-set-right
προύλαβον δὲ ἐξαποστεῖλαι περὶ τὸ Ἄλβανον τὸν ἐπὶ
I-had-anticipated and to-send-out to — Albanon the(-one) over
τῆς βασιλικῆς τραπέζης Ἰσαάκιον τὸν Νεστόγγον, ἔνταλμα
the imperial table Isaac the Nestongos mandate
δοὺς αὐτῷ κατ' ἔθος περιλαμβάνον τὴν τῆς ἡγεμονίας
having-given to-him according-to custom comprising the of-the command
περίληψιν. ὥριστό μοι καὶ γὰρ ἐπ' ἀδείας ἔχειν με
scope it-was-laid-down for-me also for in license to-have me
τοιαῦτα ποιεῖν, ἐνεργοῦντας καὶ δημόσια διαπραττομένους
such(-things) to-do acting and public(-affairs) conducting
καὶ στρατευμάτων προϊσταμένους καὶ χωρῶν ἡγεμονίαν
and armies leading and of-lands command
κεκτημένους ἀνταλλάττειν ὡς ἂν βουλοίμην. εἱλόμην οὖν
having to-exchange as — I-might-wish I-chose then
ἀπελθεῖν περὶ τὸ Ἄλβανον καὶ τῆς τῆς χώρας ἕνεκεν
to-go-off to — Albanon both for-the of-the land sake
διορθώσεως καὶ τοῦ μαθεῖν με τί ἂν ὁ ἐπὶ τῆς
setting-right and of-the to-learn me what — the(-one) over the
βασιλικῆς τραπέζης πεποίηκεν. ἀπελθὼν γοῦν τὸν μὲν
imperial table did having-gone-off then the(-one) indeed

ἐπὶ τῆς τραπέζης, καθὼς ἂν εἶχον ἰσχύος, τοῦ Ἀλβάνου
over the table as — I-had of-strength — from-Albanon
ἐξήγαγον. προύφθασαν γὰρ τὸ τῶν Ἀλβανιτῶν ἔθνος καὶ
I-led-out had-anticipated for the of-the Albanians nation and
τὰ τῆς ἀνταρσίας ἐκπεπληρώκασιν· ἅπαντες γὰρ
the(-things) of-the rebellion fulfilled all for
ξυνῆλθον τῷ ἀποστάτῃ δεσπότῃ Μιχαήλ. ἐπεὶ γοῦν αὐτὸς
joined the rebel despot Michael when then I-myself
ἑώρων τὰ πάντα κυκώμενα, ἐκ τῶν Δεβρῶν ἀπάρας
saw the all being-stirred-up from — Debre having-set-out
— πλείους γὰρ ἐκεῖσε ἡμέρας ἢ ἔδει διήνυσα· καὶ
more for there days than was-needed I-spent also
γὰρ κύκλῳ τοὺς πολεμίους εἶχον — μετὰ μετρίων τινῶν
for in-circle the enemies I-had with moderate some
ἀνδρῶν τῶν ἐξυπηρετούντων μοι μεθ' ὅπλων κατείληφα
men of-the(-ones) serving me with arms I-reached
τὴν Ἀχρίδα. κἀκεῖσε γοῦν τὸν ἐπὶ τῆς τραπέζης εἰς
— Ochrid and-there then the(-one) over the table for
φυλακὴν τοῦ κάστρου ἀφείς, διαβὰς τὴν Πρέσπαν
guard of-the castle having-left having-crossed — Prespa
καὶ τὸ οὕτω πως ἐπονομαζόμενον Σιδηρόκαστρον, τῷ
and the thus somehow named Siderokastron —
Πριλάπῳ προσέσχον, καὶ οἷον ἐδόκουν ὡς εἰς λιμένα
at-Prilapos I-put-in and as-it-were I-seemed as into harbor
τινὰ προσοκεῖλαί με ἄκλυστον.
some to-have-put-in me sheltered
Ὑπῆρξε δὲ καὶ ἐμοὶ καὶ τοῖς ἐκεῖσε οὖσιν ἡμετέροις τὰ
happened and also to-me and to-the(-ones) there being ours the
ἐναντία. τῶν γὰρ πέριξ χωρῶν καὶ κάστρων ὁ ἀντάρτης
opposite(-things) of-the for around lands and castles the rebel
ἐπιδραξάμενος Μιχαὴλ ἑνὸς καὶ μόνου τοῦ Πριλάπου
having-grasped Michael of-one and only — of-Prilapos

ἐλείπετο, καὶ ἔσπευδεν, ὅσον ἦν αὐτῷ δυνατόν, ὑφ᾽
was-lacking and hastened as-much-as was for-him possible under
ἑαυτὸν ποιῆσαι τὸν Πρίλαπον· οὕτω γὰρ ἦν ἐξὸν αὐτῷ
himself to-make — Prilapos so for it-was possible for-him
καὶ ἀσφαλῶς τῶν πέριξ κρατεῖν. ἐπῆλθε γοῦν καὶ
also safely the(-places) around to-master came-upon then also
ἡμῖν μετ᾽ οὐ πολὺ τὸ πρῶτον ὁ ἀποστάτης Μιχαὴλ μετὰ
us after not much the first(-time) the rebel Michael with
τοῦ περὶ αὐτὸν στρατεύματος ἅπαντος, καὶ ἀπεπειράσατο
the about him army whole and made-trial-of
στρατιωτικαῖς μεθοδίαις τοῦ ἄστεος. τὸ δὲ ἦν ἀσφαλὲς καὶ
by-military methods the town it but was secure and
οὐ ῥᾴδιον χειρωθῆναι, ἐθάρρει δὲ οὗτος μᾶλλον ταῖς τῶν
not easy to-be-subdued trusted but he rather to-the of-the
οἰκητόρων ἐπιβουλαῖς. τῷ τότε μὲν οὖν ἀπεκρούσθη,
inhabitants plots at-the then(-time) indeed then he-was-repulsed
καὶ τὸν στρατὸν αὐτοῦ λαβὼν ἐπανέζευξε καὶ τοῖς γύρωθεν
and the army his having-taken marched-back and the around
τόποις περιεπόλευεν, ἡμεῖς δ᾽ ἐγκεκλεισμένοι τῷ τοῦ
places roamed we and shut-in in-the —
Πριλάπου ἄστει καὶ ὡς ἐν εἱρκτῇ καθειργμένοι γεγόναμεν.
of-Prilapos town and as in prison confined became
καὶ τὰ μὲν ἐν ἡμῖν οὕτω ξυνέβη, ὁ δὲ τῆς
and the(-things) indeed among us so happened the and of-the
ἱστορίας λόγος τῶν ἐπὶ τὴν ἕω γεγενημένων ἐχέσθω.
history account of-the(-things) in the east having-happened let-hold

69 Ὁ μὲν οὖν βασιλεὺς διαπεραιωθεὶς τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον, ὡς
the indeed then emperor having-crossed — Hellespont as
εἶχε τάχους περὶ τοὺς τῆς Λυδίας τόπους κεχώρηκε καὶ περὶ
he-had of-speed to the — of-Lydia places went and about
τὰς Σάρδεις τὰς σκηνὰς ἔπηξεν. ὁ δὲ περσάρχης σουλτάν,
— Sardis the tents pitched the and Persian-ruler sultan

ὁ φυζακινῆς ἐλάφου κραδίην ἔχων, εἶπεν ἂν ποιητής,
the(-one) of-a-fleeing deer heart having would-say — poet
τὴν χώραν τούτου καταλιπών, ἐπείπερ καὶ τὸ τούτου
the land his having-left since also the his
στράτευμα καταλέλυται, φυγὰς πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα χωρεῖ.
army has-been-destroyed fugitive to the emperor goes
ὁ δὲ ἐδέξατο τοῦτον καὶ δωρήμασιν αὐτόν τε καὶ τοὺς
he and received him and with-gifts him both and the(-ones)
ἀμφ᾽ αὐτὸν φιλοτίμως ἐδεξιώσατο, καὶ πρὸς τὴν αὐτῶν
about him generously welcomed and to the their(-land)
ἐπαναζεῦξαι τούτους πεποίηκε, δοὺς αὐτοῖς στράτευμα
to-march-back them made having-given them army
μέτριον· εἰς τετρακοσίους γὰρ καὶ μόνον ἠρίθμητο. ἡγεμόνα
moderate to four-hundred for and only it-was-numbered commander
δὲ τοῦ στρατεύματος τὸν Ἰσαάκιον Δούκαν κατέστησεν, ὃν
and of-the army — Isaac Doukas appointed whom
καὶ Μούρτζουφλον ὠνόμαζον, τῷ γένει τούτου τοὐπίκλην
also Mourtzouphlos they-named to-the family his the-surname
τινῶν ἐπιθέντων τῶν παίζειν εἰωθότων ἐπὶ τὰς κλήσεις,
some having-applied of-the(-ones) to-jest wont at the names
πριμμικήριον ὄντα τότε τῆς βασιλικῆς αὐλῆς. ὁ δὲ
primmikerios being then of-the imperial court the and
περσάρχης ἀντίχαριν ἀντιδοῦναι θέλων τῷ βασιλεῖ τὸ ἄστυ
Persian-ruler return-favor to-give-back wishing to-the emperor the town
τῆς Λαοδικείας ἀπεχαρίσατο, καὶ εἰσῆλθεν ἐν αὐτῷ καὶ
— of-Laodikeia gave-up and entered into it also
Ῥωμαϊκὴ φυλακή. ἀλλ᾽ ἐπ᾽ ὀλίγον τοῦτο προσεκαρτέρησε,
Roman garrison but for little-while this persisted
καὶ πάλιν ὑπὸ τοὺς Μουσουλμάνους τὸ ἄστυ τοῦτο
and again under the Muslims the town this
γεγένηται· οὐδὲ γὰρ ἦν δυνατὸν ὑπὸ Ῥωμαίων φυλάττεσθαι.
became not-even for was possible by Romans to-be-guarded

ὁ μὲν οὖν σουλτὰν ἐπεὶ μὴ ἐξίσχυε τοῖς Ταχαρίοις
the indeed then sultan since not was-strong-enough the Tachars
ἀνθίστασθαι, μετὰ τῶν αὐτοῦ λογάδων βουλευσάμενος εἰς
to-withstand with the his select-men having-deliberated to
ξυμβιβάσεις καὶ συμφωνίας τοῖς Ταχαρίοις συνῆλθε· καὶ
agreements and accords with-the Tachars came and
ὑπόφοροι τούτοις ἐγένοντο, καὶ ἔκτοτε τυγχάνουσι σφίσιν
tributary to-them became and since-then are to-them
αὐτοῖς οἱ Μουσουλμάνοι φορολογούμενοι.
themselves the Muslims paying-tribute
Ὁ δὲ Κομνηνὸς Μιχαὴλ ὁ Παλαιολόγος, οὗ πολλάκις
— and Komnenos Michael the Palaiologos whom often
ἐμνήσθημεν, ὅρκον πρὸς τοῦ βασιλέως λαβὼν εἰς
we-mentioned oath from the emperor having-taken for
ἀσφάλειαν πρὸς αὐτὸν ἐπανέζευξε καὶ τοῖς οἰκείοις αὖθις
safety to him marched-back and to-the own again
ἀποκατέστη καὶ τῶν ἰδίων ἀπήλαυσεν.
was-restored and the own(-goods) enjoyed
70 Οὔπω πάνυ πολλαὶ παρῆλθον ἡμέραι, καὶ ἐπεὶ τὰ
not-yet very many passed days and when the(-affairs)
περὶ τὴν δυσμὴν ταραττόμενα λίαν ἐπεγνώκει ὁ βασιλεὺς
about the west being-troubled very had-recognized the emperor
καὶ τὰ πλείω πρὸς τοῦ ἀντάρτου Μιχαὴλ ἁλισκόμενα,
and the more by the rebel Michael being-taken
καὶ ἔδει στρατηγὸν ἄνδρα μετὰ στρατεύματος εἰς
and it-was-necessary general man with army for
ἀντιπαράταξιν στεῖλαι, τὸν εἰρημένον Κομνηνὸν Μιχαὴλ
counter-array to-send the said Komnenos Michael
ἐξελέξατο, δοὺς αὐτῷ καὶ στράτευμα ἐκ Μακεδονίας,
chose having-given to-him also army from Macedonia
πάνυ δὲ τῷ ποσῷ ὀλίγον καὶ ἀνωφελέστατον τῇ
very and in-the quantity small and most-useless in-the

ποιότητι. ὁ δέ — καὶ γὰρ οὐκ εἶχεν ἀντιλέγειν τοῖς
quality he but also for not had to-gainsay the(-things)
αὐτῷ προσταττομένοις — λαβὼν τὸ σμικροπρεπὲς ἐκεῖνο
to-him ordered having-taken the paltry that
καὶ ἀπόλεμον στράτευμα τὴν Θεσσαλονίκην καταλαμβάνει,
and unwarlike army — Thessalonica reaches
κἀκεῖθεν διαβὰς τὸν Βαρδάρειον, ὃν οἱ παλαιοὶ Ναξειὸν
and-thence having-crossed — Bardarios which the ancients Axios
ὀνομάζουσι, καὶ τῷ Λάσκαρι Μιχαὴλ ἑνωθείς, καὶ ἄμφω
name and — with-Laskaris Michael having-united and both
βουλὴν ποιησάμενοι κατὰ τῆς Βερροίας ὡρμήκασιν, οὐχ ἵνα
counsel having-made against — Berrhoia set-out not that
μαχέσωνται ταύτην — οὐδὲ γὰρ ἐξῆν αὐτοῖς τοιοῦτόν
they-might-fight it not-even for it-was-possible for-them such
τι διαπράττεσθαι — ἀλλ' ἵνα λείαν τὰ περὶ ταύτην
anything to-accomplish but that booty the(-places) about it
ποιήσωνται. καὶ ἐσκύλευσαν πολλά· ζώων γὰρ πληθὺν
they-might-make and despoiled much of-animals for multitude
οὐκ εὐχερῶς ἀριθμουμένην οἱ ἀμφ' αὐτοὺς ἐληΐσαντο.
not easily counted the(-men) about them plundered
Ἐν οἷς δὲ οὗτοι ταῦτα ἐποίουν, ὁ τῶν Σέρβων
in which and these these-things did the of-the Serbs
ἄρχων τὴν τοῦ ἀποστάτου Μιχαὴλ ἀνταρσίαν μαθών,
ruler the of-the rebel Michael rebellion having-learned
γένος ἔκσπονδον καὶ μηδέποτε εἰδὸς χάριν τοῖς εἰς
race treaty-breaking and never knowing gratitude to-the(-ones) to
αὐτὸ ἐπιδειξαμένοις χρηστόν, ἀλλὰ διὰ μικρόν τι
it having-shown kindness but because-of small some
κέρδος τὸ φιλίας ἀπορρῖπτον καὶ καταπατοῦν κύπελλον,
gain the of-friendship casting-away and trampling cup
στράτευμα συναθροίσας ὡς εἰς χιλίους ἠριθμημένον κατὰ
army having-gathered as to thousand numbered against

τῶν Ῥωμαϊκῶν ἐκπέπομφε χώρων. οὗτοι μὲν οὖν τὴν
the Roman sent-out lands these indeed then —
Κύτζαβιν παραμείψαντες τὰ πέριξ τοῦ Πριλάπου
Kytzabis having-passed the(-places) around — Prilapos
ἐσκύλευον. ὁ δὲ σκουτέριος Ξυλέας μετὰ τοῦ ὑπ' αὐτὸν
despoiled the and shield-bearer Xyleas with the under him
στρατεύματος ἐγγύς που τοῦ ἄστεος κείμενος, ὡς εἶδε
army near somewhere the town lying as he-saw
τὸ τῶν Σέρβων στράτευμα τὴν χώραν λῃΐζον καὶ πυρὰ
the of-the Serbs army the land plundering and fires
πανταχοῦ ἀναπτόμενα, ἄνθρωπος ἀδαὴς τὰ πολεμικὰ
everywhere being-kindled man unskilled the(-things) of-war
καὶ μηδ' ὅλως ἐμπειρίαν ἔχων στρατιωτικήν — οὔτε
and not at-all experience having military neither
γὰρ σκοποὺς εἶχε μακρὰν ὡς πόρρωθεν μαθεῖν τὴν τῶν
for scouts he-had far so-as from-afar to-learn the of-the
πολεμίων ἔφοδον, οὔτε ξυντάξαι στράτευμα ἐπεγνώκει
enemies approach nor to-array army he-knew
— ἀπέλυσεν ἕκαστον κατὰ τῶν Σέρβων ὁρμᾶν ὡς
let each against the Serbs to-set-out as
ἐβούλετο. διαλυθέντες γοῦν τῆς συντάξεως καὶ ὀλίγοι
he-wished having-broken-up then from-the array and few
τοῖς Σέρβοις πλείοσιν οὖσιν ἡλίσκοντο συμπλεκόμενοι,
with-the Serbs more being were-caught engaging
καὶ οἱ μὲν ἔργον μαχαίρας ἐγένοντο, οἱ δὲ
and the(-ones) indeed work of-sword became the(-others) and
ἐζωγροῦντο καὶ δεσμῶται ἀπήγοντο. ὕστερον δὲ καὶ αὐτὸς
were-taken-alive and prisoners were-led-away later and also himself
ὁ Ξυλέας σκουτέριος μετὰ τῶν ὑπολειφθέντων στρατιωτῶν
— Xyleas shield-bearer with the left-behind soldiers
κατὰ τῶν Σέρβων ὁρμήσας μόγις που διεσώθη, ὄρη
against the Serbs having-set-out hardly somehow was-saved mountains

διελθὼν καὶ βουνοὺς καὶ κρημνώδεις τόπους ὑπὸ τῶν
having-gone-through and hills and precipitous places by the
ἐχθρῶν διωκόμενος. οὕτω μὲν οὖν τὸ ἐν τῷ Πριλάπῳ
enemies being-pursued thus indeed then the in — Prilapos
καταλέλυται στράτευμα, καὶ ἡμεῖς ἐγκεκλεισμένοι τῷ τοῦ
has-been-destroyed army and we shut-in in-the —
Πριλάπῳ ἄστει γεγόναμεν καὶ οἷον ἐγκαθειργμένοι.
of-Prilapos town became and as-it-were imprisoned
Οἱ δὲ περὶ τὸν Κομνηνὸν Μιχαὴλ τὸν Παλαιολόγον 71
the(-men) and about — Komnenos Michael the Palaiologos
καὶ οἱ περὶ τὸν Λάσκαριν Μιχαὴλ τοιάδε πεπόνθασιν.
and the(-men) about — Laskaris Michael such(-things) suffered
ἐπεὶ τὴν λείαν ἐν τῇ Βερροίᾳ πεποίηνται, περὶ τὸν ἐν τοῖς
when the booty in — Berrhoia they-made about the in —
Βοδηνοῖς χῶρον ἐσκήνωσαν, ὁμαλόν τε ὄντα καὶ εἰς τροφὴν
Bodena region they-encamped level both being and for feeding
ἵππων χρήσιμον. ὁ ἀποστάτης δὲ Μιχαὴλ ὁ δεσπότης
of-horses useful the rebel and Michael the despot
τὰ τοῦ Ῥωμαϊκοῦ στρατεύματος ἀκριβῶς ἐγνωκώς,
the(-affairs) of-the Roman army exactly having-known
καὶ εἰς ὁπόσον τοῦτο ἠρίθμηται καὶ ὡς πλὴν ὀλίγου τὸ πᾶν
and to how-much it was-numbered and that except little the whole
ἐστὶν ἀνωφελὲς καὶ ἀχρήσιμον, ἐκλογὴν ποιησάμενος ἀπὸ
is useless and unserviceable selection having-made from
παντὸς αὐτοῦ τοῦ στρατεύματος καὶ οἷον ἐξ ἁπάντων
all his-own the army and as-it-were from all
τοὺς κρείττους χωρίσας καὶ ὡς εἰς πεντακοσίους αὐτοὺς
the better having-separated and as to five-hundred them
ἀριθμήσας, καὶ στρατηγὸν χειροτονήσας τὸν νόθον υἱὸν αὐτοῦ
having-numbered and general having-appointed the bastard son his
τὸν Θεόδωρον, κατὰ τοῦ Ῥωμαϊκοῦ στρατεύματος πέπομφεν.
— Theodore against the Roman army sent

Ἔτυχε δὲ τῷ τότε καὶ ὁ Λαπαρδᾶς Μανουὴλ
happened and at-the then(-time) also — Lapardas Manuel
μετὰ στρατεύματος συρφετώδους καὶ ξύγκλυδος πρὸς τοῦ
with army swept-together and rabble by the
βασιλέως ἀποσταλεὶς τοῖς προσιοῦσιν ἡγεμόσι συγκῦρσαι,
emperor sent with-the approaching commanders to-meet
καὶ κατεμέμφετο αὐτοὺς ὡς προλαβόντας καὶ τὴν λείαν
and blamed them as having-anticipated and the booty
ἐργασαμένους, κἀκεῖνον δὲ ἄμοιρον γενέσθαι τοῦ κέρδους.
having-made and-him and without-share to-have-become of-the gain
ἐν οἷς γοῦν τὰ τοιαῦτα ξυνωμιλοῦντο οἱ τοῦ
in which then the(-things) such were-being-discussed the of-the
στρατεύματος ἡγεμόνες, τὸ ὑπὸ τὸν Λαπαρδᾶν Μανουὴλ
army commanders the under — Lapardas Manuel
συρφετῶδες στράτευμα, ὧν οἱ πλείους ἐπωχοῦντο
swept-together army of-whom the more rode
φορβάσι καὶ εἶχον αὐτὰς τὰ χρειώδη πεφορτισμένας, μὴ
mares and had them the necessities loaded not
τῶν ἄλλων ἡγεμόνων εἰδότων εἶχοντο τῆς ὁδοῦ τῆς
the other commanders knowing held-to the road the(-one)
παραμειβούσης τὸ ἄστυ τῶν Βοδηνῶν, ἵνα πρότερον τῶν
passing the town — of-Bodena that before the
ἄλλων διελθόντες λείαν καὶ οὗτοι ποιήσαιντο. ξυνηντήκει
others having-gone-through booty also these might-make had-met
γοῦν αὐτοῖς ἐν τῇ κλείσει τῶν ἐν τοῖς Βοδηνοῖς ὀρῶν τὸ
then them in the defile of-the in — Bodena mountains the
ἀποσταλὲν πρὸς τοῦ ἀποστάτου Μιχαὴλ στράτευμα πρὸς
sent by the rebel Michael army for
τὴν τῶν Ῥωμαίων καταπολέμησιν. ἄνδρες γοῦν στρατιῶται
the of-the Romans defeat men then soldiers
γενναῖοι ὑψαύχεσιν ἵπποις ἐποχούμενοι καὶ τοῖς ὅπλοις
noble on-high-necked horses riding and with-the arms

κατάφρακτοι ἀνθρωπίσκοις ξυντυχόντες ἀόπλοις καὶ ἀγεννέσι
armored with-little-men having-met unarmed and ignoble
καὶ θηλείαις ἵπποις ἐφεζομένοις ἐν ἀκαρεῖ πάντας τούτους
and on-female horses sitting in an-instant all these
ἐτρέψαντο. φυγάδες γοῦν ἔνιοι ἐκ τούτων γεγενημένοι καὶ
routed fugitives then some of these having-become and
πρὸς τὸν Κομνηνὸν Μιχαὴλ ἀφιγμένοι ἀπήγγειλαν αὐτῷ
to — Komnenos Michael having-come reported to-him
τὰ ξυμβάντα. ὁ δὲ οὐκ ἐθροήθη τῷ αἰφνιδίῳ, ἰσχυρὸς
the(-things) having-happened he but not was-terrified at-the suddenness strong
δὲ ὢν τὴν χεῖρα καὶ τὴν γνώμην ἀνδρεῖος καὶ τὰ
and being the hand and the mind manly and the(-things)
μάχιμα ἔμπειρος — πολλοῖς γὰρ καὶ πρότερον τοῖς
of-fighting experienced in-many for also before the
πολεμικοῖς ἐγγεγύμναστο — ὁπλισθεὶς καὶ δόρυ λαβὼν
warlike(-deeds) he-had-been-trained having-armed and spear having-taken
καὶ τὸ στρατιωτικόν, ὅπερ ἦν ὑπὸ τὸν Λάσκαριν Μιχαήλ,
and the military(-force) which was under — Laskaris Michael
ἐκ Παφλαγονίας ὡρμημένον, — ἐκεῖνο καὶ γὰρ μόνον
from Paphlagonia having-set-out that also for alone
ἐτύγχανε τῶν ἄλλων κρεῖττον καὶ πολεμῆσαι δυνάμενον,
happened than-the others better and to-fight able
εἰς πεντήκοντα ἄνδρας ἠριθμημένον — κατὰ τῶν ἐναντίων
to fifty men numbered against the opponents
ὁρμᾷ. ὁ δὲ Λάσκαρις Μιχαήλ, ὡς εἰώθει, οὐ θώρακα
sets-out — and Laskaris Michael as he-was-wont not breastplate
ἀλλὰ θωρακίδιον ἐπενδυθείς, ὡς ἂν ἔχοι ῥᾳδίως
but little-breastplate having-put-on so-that — he-might-be-able easily
φεύγειν, ἐκ πλαγίου τῆς μάχης ἦν καὶ ἐσκόπει τὸ
to-flee from side of-the battle was and watched the(-thing)
γενησόμενον. ὁ μὲν οὖν Κομνηνὸς Μιχαὴλ τῷ πρώτως
about-to-happen — indeed then Komnenos Michael the(-one) first

ἐπερχομένῳ ξυναντήσας βάλλει τῷ δόρατι καὶ ῥίπτει
coming-on having-met strikes with-the spear and throws
τῆς ἐφεστρίδος· ἦν δὲ ὁ ῥηθεὶς τοῦ ἀποστάτου Μιχαὴλ
from-the saddle-cloth was and the said of-the rebel Michael
νόθος υἱὸς ὁ Θεόδωρος. τοῦ πτώματος γοῦν ἀναστὰς
bastard son — Theodore from-the fall then having-risen
οὗτος προσέδραμε τῷ Κομνηνῷ Μιχαὴλ καὶ ἐδυσώπει μὴ
this(-man) ran-to — Komnenos Michael and implored not
φονευθῆναι. ἠγνόει δὲ τοῦτον ὁ Κομνηνός, καὶ ὅστις
to-be-murdered did-not-know and him — Komnenos and who
ἦν οὐκ ἠπίστατο. παραδίδωσι γοῦν αὐτὸν Τούρκῳ τινί,
he-was not knew hands-over then him to-a-Turk some
καὶ ὃς πεφόνευκε τοῦτον. εἶτα ξυμπλακέντες οἱ Παφλαγόνες
and he murdered him then having-engaged the Paphlagonians
οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ τοῖς λοιποῖς ἄλλος ἄλλον ἔβαλλε, καὶ τὸ
the(-ones) with him with-the others one another struck and the
τοῦ πολέμου τέλος εἰς τροπὴν μὲν οἱ τοῦ ἀποστάτου
of-the war end into rout indeed the(-men) of-the rebel
Μιχαὴλ ἀπεῖδον, οἱ δ' ἀμφὶ τὸν Κομνηνὸν Μιχαὴλ
Michael looked the(-men) and about — Komnenos Michael
πλείους ἢ εἴκοσι τῶν ἐγκρίτων ζωγρήσαντες καὶ πολλοὺς
more than twenty of-the select having-taken-alive and many
ἄλλους ξίφους ἔργον ποιήσαντες ἔστησαν· οὐδὲ γὰρ
others of-sword work having-made stopped not-even for
εἶχον διώκειν πάνυ ὀλίγοι τυγχάνοντες, προδιεφθαρμένων
they-could pursue very few being having-been-destroyed-before
καὶ διαλελυμένων τῶν προαπερχομένων στρατιωτῶν, ὡς
and broken-up the going-ahead soldiers as
εἰρήκειμεν. οὕτω μὲν οὖν καὶ αὐτοῖς δυστυχῶς ξυνέβη τὰ
we-had-said thus indeed then also to-them unfortunately happened the
πράγματα κατ' ἴσον τοῖς περὶ τὸν Πρίλαπον.
affairs on equal(-terms) with-the(-ones) about — Prilapos

Ὁ μὲν οὖν Κομνηνὸς Μιχαὴλ καὶ ὁ Λάσκαρις Μιχαὴλ καὶ
— indeed then Komnenos Michael and — Laskaris Michael and
οἱ ἀμφ᾽ αὐτοὺς ἡγεμόνες τυγχάνοντες τοῦ στρατεύματος,
the about them commanders being of-the army
ἐπεὶ παρ᾽ ἡμῶν ἠναγκάζοντο καταλαβεῖν εἰς τὸν Πρίλαπον
when by us they-were-pressed to-reach to — Prilapos
καὶ ἡμῖν ξυντυχεῖν, ἑκόντες ἄκοντες ἀφίκοντο παρ᾽
and with-us to-meet willing unwilling arrived to
ἡμᾶς. καὶ ὀλίγας ἡμέρας προσκαρτερήσαντες μεθ᾽ ἡμῶν,
us and few days having-stayed with us
ἐπεὶ μὴ εἶχον δυνάμεως συστάδην ξυνελθεῖν καὶ τὸν
since not they-had of-power in-close-quarters to-come-together and the
ἀποστάτην μαχέσασθαι Μιχαήλ, ἀφέντες ἡμᾶς ὑπέστρεψαν·
rebel to-fight Michael having-left us returned
τήν τε γὰρ ἀπιστίαν τῶν οἰκητόρων διενοήσαντο καὶ
the both for faithlessness of-the inhabitants they-perceived and
τὸ ἀμφίβολον τῶν εἰς φύλαξιν αὐτοῦ τεταγμένων
the doubtfulness of-the(-ones) for guard its appointed
νουνεχῶς ἐτεκμήραντο. ἐναπελείφθην γοῦν καὶ αὐτὸς ἐν
sensibly they-inferred was-left-behind then also myself in
Πριλάπῳ μετὰ τῶν ὄντων εἰς τὴν φυλακὴν τοῦ ἄστεος·
Prilapos with the(-ones) being for the guard of-the town
οὕτω καὶ γάρ μοι ὁ κρατῶν προστέταχεν.
so also for to-me the ruling(-one) ordered
Ἐπῆλθε γοῦν τὸ δεύτερον καθ᾽ ἡμῶν ὁ ἀποστάτης 72
came-upon then the second(-time) against us the rebel
Μιχαήλ, καὶ ἐπεὶ ἐκεχειρίαν εἶχεν — ἐπέγνω καὶ γὰρ
Michael and since truce he-had he-recognized also for
ὡς αἱ βασιλικαὶ δυνάμεις ἀδυνατοῦσι τοῦτον ἀντιστάδην
that the imperial forces are-unable him face-to-face
μαχέσασθαι — περιεστοίχισε τὸ ἄστυ φρουρᾷ καὶ ἑλεπόλεις
to-fight surrounded the town with-guard and siege-engines

ἵστα. ἦσαν δὲ οἱ ἐντὸς καὶ οἱ σὺν ἡμῖν τὰ
set-up were and the(-ones) within and the(-ones) with us the(-things)
αὐτοῦ φρονοῦντες. πρώτην γοῦν πεποίηκεν ἀπόπειραν, καὶ
his thinking first then he-made attempt and
ὁπλίσας τὸ σύμπαν αὐτοῦ στράτευμα τῷ ἄστει προσέβαλε,
having-armed the whole his army the town attacked
τοξόταις καὶ σφενδονίταις εὐστόχοις χρησάμενος. καὶ
with-archers and slingers good-aiming using and
κλίμακας ἔφερον, ὡς ἂν διὰ τῶν κλιμάκων περὶ τὸ ἄστυ
ladders they-carried so-that — by the ladders about the town
ἀναρριχήσαιντο. ἀλλὰ τότε μὲν ἐτράπησαν καὶ πλείους
they-might-clamber-up but then indeed they-were-routed and more
ἐξ αὐτῶν ἔργον φόνου γεγένηνται, λίθοις βεβλημένοι καὶ
of them work of-murder became with-stones struck and
ὀϊστοῖς, καὶ μέχρι μὲν ἡμερῶν τινῶν ἡσύχασαν. καὶ πάλιν
with-arrows and up-to indeed days some they-were-quiet and again
οἱ ἐντὸς καὶ ἡμέτεροι τούτους ἐκίνησαν, καὶ αὖθις
the(-ones) within and ours them moved and again
προσβολὴ σφοδροτέρα περὶ τὸ ἄστυ, καὶ ἡ ἀπόκρουσις
attack more-violent about the town and the repulse
ὁμοία· οὐδὲ γὰρ ἠδυνήθησάν τι ποιῆσαι, μᾶλλον
similar not-even for they-could anything to-do rather
πεπονθότες ἢ πράξαντες. μέχρι καὶ τρίτου προσέβαλε
having-suffered than having-done up-to also third(-time) he-launched
τὸ δεινόν, καὶ τὰ ὅμοια ἐπ᾽ ἴσης γεγένηνται.
the terror and the similar(-things) on equal(-terms) happened
ἠρέμησαν γοῦν οἱ ἐναντίοι καὶ ἐν ἡσυχίᾳ προσεφίζανον.
were-quiet then the opponents and in quiet sat-near
οὐδὲ γὰρ ἐτόλμων προσεγγίσαι· μᾶλλον καὶ γὰρ ἔπασχον
not-even for they-dared to-draw-near rather also for they-suffered
ἐγγίσαντες ἢ ἐποίουν. οἱ μὲν οὖν τὴν ἀπιστίαν
having-drawn-near than they-did the(-ones) indeed then the faithlessness

νοσοῦντες ἐδόκουν ἐν τῇ κινήσει τῆς μάχης ὡς τὰ ἑαυτῶν
being-sick-with seemed in the movement of-the battle that the their-own
βουλήματα κατορθώσαιντο· θαῦμα δὲ ἂν εἴη τοῖς
wishes they-might-accomplish wonder and — would-be to-the(-ones)
ἀκούουσι, εἰ ἑνὸς ἀνδρὸς ἥττηντο οὐ πλείους τῶν
hearing if by-one man they-had-been-defeated not more than-the
τεσσαράκοντα ὑπηρέτας ἔχοντος καὶ μόνῃ τῇ πίστει καὶ
forty servants having and in-only the faith and
τῇ ἀληθείᾳ τεθαρρηκότος. ὡς γοῦν ἀδυνάτως εἶχον μάχῃ
in-the truth having-trusted as then impossibly they-were by-battle
καὶ κυδοιμῷ τὰ διαβούλια οἱ καθ' ἡμῶν φρονοῦντες τὰ
and by-din the plans the(-ones) against us thinking the
σφῶν κατορθώσασθαι, ἐν ἡσυχίᾳ μεμελετήκασι τὸ δεινόν·
their-own to-accomplish in quiet they-practiced the terrible(-deed)
καὶ σκῆψιν ποιησάμενοι τὴν τοῦ εἰς φυλακὴν τοῦ ἄστεος
and pretext having-made the of-the for guard of-the town
συντεταγμένου στρατεύματος ζωαρκείας χάριν διοίκησιν,
assigned army provisions for-the-sake management
ἐξάγουσιν αὐτοὺς τῶν ἐπάλξεων καὶ περὶ τὰ σιτοφυλακεῖα
lead-out them from-the battlements and to the granaries
ἀπάγουσιν. ἐξ ἐρήμης γοῦν ἀνοίγουσι τὰς πύλας οἱ
lead-away from deserted then open the gates the(-ones)
ταῦτα προμελετήσαντες, καὶ ἑάλω οὕτω τὸ τοῦ Πριλάπου
these-things having-premeditated and was-taken thus the — of-Prilapos
ἄστυ, οὐ πολεμίων ἀρετῇ, οὐκ ἀνοχυρότητι τόπου, ἀλλὰ τῇ
town not of-enemies by-valor not by-weakness of-place but by-the
τῶν φυλάκων ἀβελτηρίᾳ καὶ ἀπιστίᾳ. καὶ ἡμεῖς συνεάλωμεν
of-the guards stupidity and faithlessness and we were-taken-with(-it)
καὶ δεσμῶται γεγόναμεν. οὐδὲ γὰρ ὤνησεν ἡμᾶς τὸ
and prisoners became not-even for profited us the
τῆς ἀκροπόλεως φρούριον· πέτρα γὰρ ἦν καὶ ἁλωτὴ
of-the citadel fortress rock for it-was and capturable

δεκαβάθμῳ κλίμακι, εἴπερ ἐπῄεσάν τινες πολεμήσοντες· ἐν
with-ten-step ladder if-indeed came some about-to-fight in
ᾗ καὶ νυκτὸς οἱ τὰ ἐναντία φρονήσαντες ἡμέτεροι
which also by-night the(-ones) the opposite(-things) having-thought ours
ἐφορμῆσαι καθ' ἡμῶν ἠβουλήθησαν ὡς ἡμᾶς τε ἀποκτενεῖν
to-set-upon against us wished so-as us both to-kill
καὶ τὰ ἡμῶν ξυλλαβεῖν. ἐπεὶ δὲ αὐτὸς ταυτὶ
and the(-things) ours to-seize when and I-myself these-things
ἐπεγνώκειν, τότε μὲν ἑαυτοὺς ἐφυλαξάμεθα καθὼς ἦν ἡμῖν
had-recognized then indeed ourselves we-guarded as it-was for-us
δυνατόν, ἐπιλαμψάσης δὲ ἡμέρας τῷ ἀποστάτῃ Μιχαὴλ
possible having-shone-forth and day with-the rebel Michael
εἰς ξυμφωνίας συνῆλθον. κἀκεῖνος μὲν πρὸς ἡμᾶς δέδωκεν
into agreements we-came and-he indeed to us gave
ὅρκους ἐλευθέρους μὲν κακῶν καὶ μετὰ τῶν σφετέρων
oaths free indeed from-ills and with the own
πραγμάτων παρὰ τοῦ μέρους αὐτοῦ εἰς τὴν χώραν
goods from the part his to the land
διασωθῆναι τοῦ βασιλέως, ἡμεῖς δὲ τὸ μικρὸν ἐκεῖνο πρὸς
to-be-brought-safely of-the emperor we and the small that to
αὐτὸν ἀπολελύκαμεν φρούριον. ἀλλ' ἦσαν οἱ ὅρκοι τούτου
him handed-over fortress but were the oaths his
ψευδεῖς· ἐπίορκον γὰρ ὠμωμόκει. ἔσχεν οὖν ἡμᾶς ἐν δεσμοῖς
false falsely for he-had-sworn held then us in bonds
καὶ ἀπὸ χώρας εἰς χώραν μεταβιβαζομένους πεδήτας.
and from land to land being-moved fettered
Ὁ μὲν οὖν βασιλεὺς Θεόδωρος περὶ τούτων ἀκηκοὼς
the indeed then emperor Theodore about these having-heard
ὑπετόπασε μὲν περὶ ἐμοῦ οὐ καλῶς, ἀνθρωπίνοις δὲ
suspected indeed about me not well human but
λογισμοῖς ἑπόμενος ὑπετόπασεν. ὡς γὰρ ἐμεμαθήκει τοὺς
reasonings following suspected as for he-had-learned the

κρείττους τῶν στρατηγούντων ἐν τῇ δυσμῇ, ἐν οἷς
better of-the(-ones) generalling in the west in whom
ἐθάρρει καὶ τὰ πολλά, ὑπὸ τὸν ἀποστάτην Μιχαὴλ
he-trusted and the most under the rebel Michael
γεγενῆσθαι, τοὺς μὲν καὶ πρὸ τῶν κατασχέσεων τῶν
to-have-come the(-ones) indeed also before the seizures of-the
φρουρίων, ἤγουν τὸν σκουτέριον Ξυλέαν, τὸν Ῥαματᾶν
fortresses namely the shield-bearer Xyleas — Ramatas
Μανουήλ, τὸν Πουλάχαν καὶ ἄλλους ἐνίους τῶν σὺν
Manuel — Poulachas and others some of-the(-ones) with
αὐτοῖς, αὖθις δὲ καὶ μετὰ τὰς κατασχέσεις, εἴτουν τὸν ἐπὶ
them again and also after the seizures that-is the(-one) over
τῆς τραπέζης Ἰσαάκιον τὸν Νεστόγγον, ὃν αὐτὸς εἰς ἀρχήν,
the table Isaac the Nestongos whom I-myself into rule
καθὰ προϊστορήκειν, ἀποκατέστησα τῆς Ἀχρίδος, καὶ ἄλλους
as I-had-told-before established — of-Ochrid and others
οὐκ ὀλίγους τῶν γνωρίμων τε καὶ ὀνομαστῶν ὑπὸ τὸν
not few of-the known both and named under the
ἀποστάτην ἑκόντας τελέσαι, ἐδεδίει καὶ περὶ ἐμοῦ, μή ποτε
rebel willing to-be-ranked he-feared also about me lest ever
καὶ αὐτὸς πάθω τὰ ὅμοια· ἔθραττε καὶ γὰρ τὸν αὐτοῦ
also I-myself might-suffer the similar(-things) troubled also for the his
λογισμὸν τὸ ἐξ ὑπογυίου συμβὰν ἐμοὶ παρ᾽ αὐτοῦ. οἱ
reasoning the from sudden having-happened to-me from him the(-ones)
δὲ τὰ κατ᾽ ἐμὲ ἀκριβέστερον ἐπιγνόντες διισχυρίζοντο
but the(-things) concerning me more-exactly having-learned insisted
μὴ ἄν ποτε τοιοῦτον φανῆναί με. ἐπεὶ δὲ χρόνος παρερρύη
not — ever such to-appear me when and time flowed-past
συχνὸς κἀκ τῶν ἐπερχομένων δεσμώτην ἐμάνθανεν
long and-from the(-ones) arriving prisoner he-learned
εἶναί με καὶ εἱρκτῇ περικλείεσθαι ποδοκάκαις τε καὶ
to-be me and in-prison to-be-shut-in by-foot-stocks both and

χειροπέδαις ξυνέχεσθαι, ἠγάπα τε τὴν πρᾶξιν καί μοι
by-handcuffs to-be-held he-was-glad both at-the deed and to-me
προσφιλέστερον διετίθετο, ὁρισμοὺς δὲ ἐπεποιήκει κτημάτων
more-kindly was-disposed decrees and had-made of-possessions
πέρι τῶν ἐμῶν, μηδένα τολμῆσαί ποτε πόδα τε βαλεῖν
about the my none to-dare ever foot both to-set
ἐν αὐτοῖς καὶ ζημίαν ἐπεμβαλεῖν. καὶ ταῦτα μὲν οὕτως
in them and loss to-inflict and these-things indeed so
ἔσχε, τῷ δὲ βασιλεῖ Θεοδώρῳ ξυνέβη οὕτω τὰ πράγματα.
had to-the and emperor Theodore happened so the affairs

XIII · THE DEATH OF THEODORE II

The Bulgarian ruler is murdered, and Constantine, son of Toichos, takes Theodore's daughter Irene. Theodore II dies, leaving the boy John IV under George Mouzalon, who is murdered with his brothers at the memorial service. The nobles, the army, and the clergy choose Michael Palaiologos as regent, and he is made despot and then crowned emperor at Nicaea.

73 Ὁ μὲν οὖν τῶν Βουλγάρων ἄρχων, ὁ γυναικάδελφος
the indeed then of-the Bulgarians ruler the brother-in-law
αὐτοῦ Μιχαήλ, ὃς πολλὴν τὴν ἔχθραν κατά τε αὐτοῦ τοῦ
his Michael who much the enmity against both himself the
γαμβροῦ καὶ βασιλέως καὶ τῶν Ῥωμαίων ἐξέτρεφε, πρὸς
brother-in-law and emperor and the Romans nourished by
τοῦ πρωτεξαδέλφου αὐτοῦ Καλιμάνου καιρίαν πληγεὶς
the first-cousin his Kaliman mortally struck
εἰδήσει καί τινων οἰκητόρων Τρινόβου, ἔξω που τοῦ
with-knowledge and of-some inhabitants of-Trnovo outside somewhere the
τοιούτου διάγων ἄστεος, εὐθὺς ἐτεθνήκει. ὁ δὲ φονεύσας
such staying town at-once died the and having-murdered

αὐτὸν Καλιμᾶνος τὴν ἐκείνου λαβὼν γαμετὴν ἔδοξε τὴν
him Kaliman the his having-taken wife seemed the
τῶν Βουλγάρων ἀρχὴν σφετερίσασθαι. ἀλλ᾽ ὁ Ῥῶσος
of-the Bulgarians rule to-appropriate but the Russian
Οὖρος μετὰ στρατευμάτων ἐπελθὼν τῷ Τρινόβῳ τὴν
Uros with armies having-come-upon — Trnovo the
θυγατέρα τούτου τὴν τοῦ Μιχαὴλ σύζυγον εἴληφε· τὸν γὰρ
daughter his the — of-Michael wife took — for
Καλιμᾶνον προύλαβόν τινες πεφονευκέναι ἐκ τόπου εἰς
Kaliman anticipated some to-have-murdered from place to
τόπον φεύγοντα. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἔρημος ἐναπελείφθη κληρονόμου
place fleeing when and deserted was-left of-heir
γνησίου ἡ τῶν Βουλγάρων ἀρχή, ξυνιόντες οἱ προύχοντες
legitimate the of-the Bulgarians rule coming-together the leading-men
εἰς βουλὴν τὸν τοῦ Τοίχου υἱὸν Κωνσταντῖνον εἰς τὸ
in counsel the — of-Toichos son Constantine for the
ἄρχειν αὐτῶν ἀναδέξασθαι ἐβουλεύσαντο. ἵνα δὲ καὶ
to-rule them to-accept counseled that and also
εὐπρόσωπος αὐτῷ ἡ ἀρχὴ γένοιτο καὶ ὡς ἄν γε δόξειεν
respectable to-him the rule might-be and as — at-least might-seem
ἀπὸ κληρονομίας κρατεῖν, πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα Θεόδωρον
from inheritance to-hold to the emperor Theodore
πρεσβείαν πεπόμφασιν, ἵνα τὴν αὐτοῦ θυγατέρα τὴν
embassy sent that the his daughter the
πρώτην, ἥτις καὶ Εἰρήνη κατωνομάζετο, εἰς συζυγίαν τῷ
first who also Irene was-named for marriage to-the
τοῦ Τοίχου Κωνσταντίνῳ ἐκπέμψειε, καὶ συζευχθῇ νομίμως
— of-Toichos Constantine he-might-send and might-be-joined lawfully
αὐτῷ, ἐγγόνη οὖσα τοῦ προκατάρξαντος Βουλγάρων
to-him granddaughter being of-the having-first-ruled of-Bulgarians
τοῦ Ἀσὰν Ἰωάννου καὶ προσήκουσα τῇ τοιαύτῃ ἀρχῇ.
— of-Asan John and belonging to-the such rule

ἐπεὶ δὲ ἔτυχε τὸν τοῦ Τοίχου Κωνσταντῖνον γυναῖκα
since and it-happened the — of-Toichos Constantine wife
νόμιμον ἔχειν, χωρισμὸν τοῦ ἀνδρὸς αὐτῆς πεποιήκασι
lawful to-have separation of-the husband her they-made
καὶ τὴν γυναῖκα πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα Θεόδωρον ἔστειλαν.
and the wife to the emperor Theodore sent
οὕτω μὲν οὖν ἔσχε τὰ τῶν Βουλγάρων, οὕτω δὲ
so indeed then had the(-affairs) of-the Bulgarians so and
καὶ ὁ βασιλεὺς Θεόδωρος τὴν ἐξ αὐτῶν ἔσχεν εἰρήνην,
also the emperor Theodore the from them had peace
καὶ ἠρέμησαν ἐν ἀμφοτέροις τὰ πράγματα.
and were-quiet in both the affairs

74 Μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα νόσῳ δεινῇ ὁ βασιλεὺς Θεόδωρος
after and these-things in-illness terrible the emperor Theodore
περιπέπτωκεν. ἀπέκαμον οὖν ἐν ταύτῃ καὶ ἰατρῶν χεῖρες,
fell grew-weary then in it also of-physicians hands
καὶ πᾶσά τις ἄλλη θεραπεία ἀπείρηκεν. ἐν οὐκ ὀλίγῳ
and all some other treatment gave-up in not small
γοῦν χρόνῳ τῇ νόσῳ κατεξετασθεὶς καὶ τὸ σῶμα ἅπαν
then time by-the illness having-been-tried and the body all
κατασκελετευθεὶς ἐν τῷ τέλει τε λόγον μετανοίας
having-been-wasted-to-a-skeleton in the end both reckoning of-repentance
ἐν ἑαυτῷ προσλαβὼν τὸ μοναδικὸν ὑπεισῄει σχῆμα.
in himself having-taken the monastic entered-into habit
ὡς δὲ οἱ τὰ κατ᾽ αὐτὸν ἀκριβῶς τεθεαμένοι
as and the(-ones) the(-things) concerning him exactly having-seen
μοι διηγήσαντο, καὶ ἐξομολόγησιν ἐπεποιήκει ψυχῆς
to-me narrated also confession he-had-made of-soul
ἀξίαν γενναίας καὶ μεγαλόφρονος. τὴν γὰρ εὐαγγελικὴν
worthy noble and magnanimous the for evangelical
μιμησάμενος πόρνην, τὸν τῆς Μιτυλήνης ἀρχιερατικῶς
having-imitated harlot the(-one) — of-Mitylene high-priestly

προϊστάμενον εἰς τὴν τῶν αὐτοῦ σφαλμάτων ἐξαγορίαν
presiding for the of-the his sins confession
μετακαλεσάμενος ἔμπροσθεν τῶν αὐτοῦ ποδῶν πίπτει πρὸς
having-summoned before the his feet falls to
τοὔδαφος, καὶ δακρύων ἀπλέτοις ῥεύμασι τὴν γῆν ἐν ᾗ
the-ground and of-tears with-boundless streams the earth in which
κατέκειτο ἔπλυνεν, ὥστε καὶ πηλὸν γεγενῆσθαι ἐκ τούτων,
he-lay washed so-that also mud to-have-become from these
καθὼς οἱ κατιδόντες ταῦτα σαφῶς ἡμῖν παρεστήσαντο,
as the(-ones) having-seen these-things clearly to-us presented
καὶ τὸ ‘ἐγκατέλιπόν σε Χριστέ’ συχνῶς ἐπεφώνει, τοῖς
and the I-have-forsaken you Christ often he-cried with-the
τῆς ἐξαγορίας λόγοις τοῦτο συμπαραπλέκων. ἐκεῖνος
of-the confession words this weaving-in he
μὲν οὖν οὕτω *** βιώσας καὶ μήπω ὅλους τέτταρας
indeed then thus (lacuna) having-lived and not-yet whole four
ἐνιαυτοὺς αὐτοκρατορήσας· κατὰ Νοέβριον γὰρ ἄρξας
years having-reigned in November for having-begun
ἐν Αὐγούστῳ μηνὶ τὸ τέλος ἔσχηκε τῆς ζωῆς. ὁ μὲν οὖν
in August month the end had of-the life the indeed then
νεκρὸς αὐτοῦ ἐν τῇ τῶν Σωσάνδρων ἀπεκομίσθη μονῇ
corpse his to the — of-Sosandra was-carried monastery
καὶ ἐτάφη ἐκεῖσε, ὅπου καὶ ὁ βασιλεὺς καὶ πατὴρ αὐτοῦ.
and was-buried there where also the emperor and father his
τετελευτηκὼς δὲ ὁ βασιλεὺς Θεόδωρος τρία καταλελοίπει
having-died and the emperor Theodore three had-left
παιδία, ἓν μὲν ἄρρεν τοὔνομα Ἰωάννην, δύο δὲ θήλεα,
children one indeed male the-name John two and female
τήν τε Θεοδώραν καὶ Εὐδοκίαν. τὰς γὰρ ἑτέρας δύο
— both Theodora and Eudokia the for other two
αὐτοῦ θυγατέρας ἀνδράσι πρὸ τούτου συνέζευξε, τὴν μὲν
his daughters to-husbands before this he-had-joined the indeed

πρώτην τὴν καὶ Εἰρήνην καλουμένην τῷ τοῦ Τοίχου
first the(-one) also Irene called to-the — of-Toichos
υἱῷ, καθάπερ ἔφημεν, Κωνσταντίνῳ, τὴν δὲ ἑτέραν τὴν
son as we-said Constantine the and other the(-one)
καὶ Μαρίαν ὠνομασμένην τῷ τοῦ ἀποστάτου Μιχαὴλ υἱῷ
also Maria named to-the of-the rebel Michael son
Νικηφόρῳ· ἥτις καὶ ἐν τῷ καιρῷ τῆς αὐτοῦ ἀποστασίας
Nikephoros who also in the time of-the his revolt
τὸ κοινὸν ἀπέδοτο χρέος, ὡς μέν τινες ἔφασκον, ὑπὸ
the common paid debt as indeed some said by
τοῦ συζύγου Νικηφόρου τυφθεῖσα πολλάκις, ὡς δὲ
the husband Nikephoros having-been-beaten often as and
ἔνιοι ἔλεγον, φυσικῷ περιπεσοῦσα νοσήματι.
some said by-natural having-fallen-into illness
75 Ὁ μὲν οὖν υἱὸς τοῦ βασιλέως Θεοδώρου Ἰωάννης
the indeed then son of-the emperor Theodore John
πάνυ ἀφῆλιξ ἐτύγχανεν ὢν ἐν τῷ καιρῷ τῆς τελευτῆς
very under-age happened being in the time of-the death
τοῦ βασιλέως καὶ πατρός· οὔπω γὰρ τελείων ἐνιαυτῶν
of-the emperor and father not-yet for of-complete years
ὑπῆρχεν ὀκτώ. ὁ δὲ πατὴρ τούτου καὶ βασιλεὺς διαθήκην
was eight the and father his and emperor will
πεποίηκε, τάχα μὲν ὡς ἐπὶ τῷ παιδί, τῇ δ' ἀληθείᾳ
made supposedly indeed as for the child in-the but truth
ἐπὶ τῷ πρωτοβεστιαρίῳ αὐτοῦ τῷ Μουζάλωνι Γεωργίῳ.
for the protovestiarios his — Mouzalon George
τοῦτον γὰρ ἡ διαθήκη ἐποίει τῶν Ῥωμαϊκῶν ἁπάντων
him for the will made of-the Roman all
πραγμάτων κύριον, ὥστε τὸ κράτος ἔχειν ἁπάσης τῆς
affairs lord so-as the might to-have of-all the
τῶν Ῥωμαίων ἀρχῆς, μέχρις ἂν ὁ τοῦ βασιλέως υἱὸς
of-the Romans rule until — the of-the emperor son

εἰς τελείαν τὴν ἡλικίαν ἀφίκοιτο· καὶ προύβησαν ἐπὶ
to complete the age should-come and proceeded on
τούτοις προστάξει τοῦ βασιλέως καὶ ὅρκοι παρὰ τῶν
these by-order of-the emperor also oaths from the(-ones)
ἐντυχόντων τῷ τότε. ἀλλ᾽ οὔπω τριταῖος ἦν ἐν τάφῳ
present at-the then(-time) but not-yet third-day was in tomb
κείμενος ὁ τοῦ βασιλέως νεκρός, καὶ ὡς ἀπὸ κοινοῦ
lying the of-the emperor corpse and as from common
συνθήματος συνδραμόντες πάντες οἱ ἐφευρεθέντες ἐκεῖσε
signal having-run-together all the found there
Ῥωμαῖοι — στράτευμα δὲ ἦν ἱκανὸν συνηγμένον ἐκεῖσε
Romans army and was sufficient gathered there
— οὐ μὴν ἀλλὰ καὶ οἱ πρὸς τοῦ βασιλέως κεκακωμένοι
not however but also the by the emperor ill-treated
ἄνδρες εὐγενεῖς καὶ τῆς πρώτης τυγχάνοντες τάξεως,
men noble and of-the first being rank
ὧν εἷς μὲν ὑπῆρχεν ὁ Στρατηγόπουλος Ἀλέξιος, οὗ
of-whom one indeed was — Strategopoulos Alexios whose
τὸν υἱὸν Κωνσταντῖνον τετύφλωκεν, αὐτὸν δὲ καθεῖρξεν,
the son Constantine he-had-blinded him and he-shut-up
ὁ Τορνίκης τε Κωνσταντῖνος, ὃν μέγαν πριμμικήριον
— Tornikes both Constantine whom great primmikerios
ὁ βασιλεὺς Ἰωάννης εἶχε — καὶ πρὸς τοῦ βασιλέως
the emperor John had and by the emperor's
υἱοῦ καθωσίωτο, ὁ Φιλῆς Θεόδωρός, τοὺς ὀφθαλμοὺς καὶ
son had-been-punished — Philes Theodore the eyes also
αὐτὸς ἐξορωρυγμένος, καὶ ὁ Ζαγαρομμάτης Γεώργιος, ὃν
himself gouged-out and — Zagaromates George whom
πρωτοβεστιαρίτην μὲν ὁ βασιλεὺς ὠνόμασεν Ἰωάννης, ὁ
protovestiarites indeed the emperor named John the
δὲ υἱὸς αὐτοῦ παρακοιμώμενον πρῶτον τιμήσας μετὰ
and son his parakoimomenos first having-honored after

βραχὺ καθωσίωσεν, οἱ τέτταρες υἱοὶ τοῦ πρωτοβεστιαρίου
short(-while) punished the four sons of-the protovestiarios
τοῦ Ῥαοὺλ καὶ αὐτοὶ καθειργμένοι, ὁ Ἀλυάτης τε
— of-Raoul also themselves imprisoned — Alyates both
Νικηφόρος, ὃν πρὸ βραχέος ἐπὶ τοῦ κανικλείου τετιμηκὼς
Nikephoros whom before short(-while) over the inkstand having-honored
ὕστερον τὴν γλῶτταν ἐπ᾽ οὐδεμιᾷ αἰτίᾳ ὁ βασιλεὺς
later the tongue for no cause the emperor
ἐκτεμὼν καθωσίωσεν, ἄλλοι τε πολλοὶ τῶν χρησίμων καὶ
having-cut-out punished others both many of-the useful and
ὀνομαστῶν ἀνδρῶν. οἳ τοῖς στρατιώταις ξυνιόντες καὶ
renowned men who with-the soldiers coming-together and
ἅμα συνδραμόντες καὶ ἐπὶ τῇ τῶν Σωσάνδρων συνανιόντες
at-once having-run-together and at the — of-Sosandra going-up-together
μονῇ κατὰ τοῦ πρωτοβεστιαρίου καὶ ἐπιτρόπου καὶ τῶν
monastery against the protovestiarios and guardian and the
αὐταδέλφων αὐτοῦ αὐτοβοεὶ ἐφώρμησαν· ἐκεῖσε γὰρ
brothers his at-the-first-shout set-upon there for
εἶχε τὴν σκηνὴν ὁ πρωτοβεστιάριος καὶ τὴν ὁσίαν τοῦ
had the tent the protovestiarios and the holy-rite of-the
τεθνηκότος βασιλέως ἐπλήρου.
dead emperor was-fulfilling
Γνοὺς οὖν ὁ πρωτοβεστιάριος τὴν ἔφοδον τοῦ λαοῦ,
having-learned then the protovestiarios the attack of-the people
συνάμα τῷ ἀδελφῷ αὐτοῦ Ἀνδρονίκῳ, ὃν καὶ μέγαν
together-with the brother his Andronikos whom also great
δομέστικον κατωνόμαζον, καὶ τῷ πρώτῳ αὐτοῦ ἀδελφῷ,
domestic they-named and the first his brother
ὃν καὶ πρωτοκυνηγὸν ἐκάλουν, ἐντὸς ἐγένοντο τοῦ ναοῦ.
whom also protokynegos they-called within came of-the church
ὡς δὲ τὸ πλῆθος εἶδον γυμνοῖς τοῖς ξίφεσι κατ᾽ αὐτῶν
as and the multitude they-saw with-bare the swords against them

χωροῦντας, ἐντὸς εἰσῄεσαν καὶ τοῦ ἱεροῦ βήματος, καὶ
going within entered also the sacred sanctuary and
τὴν παναγῆ περιπτυξάμενοι τράπεζαν ἐκεῖσε ξίφους ἔργον
the all-holy having-embraced table there of-sword work
γεγένηνται, μηδὲ μετὰ τὸν φόνον οἶκτον λαβόντων τῶν
became not-even after the murder pity having-taken the
φονευτῶν· τοιοῦτον γὰρ τὸν θυμὸν ὁ λαὸς ἅπας ἐπέτρεφε
murderers such for the anger the people all nursed
κατ᾽ αὐτῶν, ὥστε καὶ μεληδὸν διατεμόντες αὐτούς, μᾶλλον
against them so-that also limb-by-limb having-cut them rather
δὲ κατὰ ἄρθρα, ἢ καὶ σμικρὰ τῶν σαρκῶν διελόντες
and by joints or also small of-the flesh having-divided
τεμμάχια ἕκαστος τὸ οἰκεῖον τμῆμα κρατῶν τῆς ἐπιθυμίας
pieces each the own portion holding of-the desire
ἐνεφορήθησαν. κἀν τῷ τάφῳ δὲ περιστάντες τοῦ βασιλέως
were-sated and-at the tomb and standing-around of-the emperor
Θεοδώρου ὀνειδιστικοῖς καὶ αὐτὸν ἔβαλλον λόγοις, ὅτιπερ
Theodore with-reproachful also him they-pelted words that-indeed
τὴν τῶν Ῥωμαίων ἀρχὴν καὶ τὰ αὐτῆς πράγματα ἀνδραρίοις
the of-the Romans rule and the its affairs to-little-men
βδελυροῖς καὶ ἀνθρωπίσκοις οὐτιδανοῖς ἐμπεπίστευκε, τοῖς
loathsome and to-little-fellows worthless he-entrusted the
ἐκ θυμέλης μελωδήμασιν ἀνατεθραμμένοις καὶ αὐλοῖς
from stage by-songs reared and in-pipes
χαίρουσι καὶ χορδαῖς καὶ πρὸς λύραν ψαλλάττειν
rejoicing and in-strings and to lyre to-play
ἐκμελετήσασι, καὶ τὸ ὁμηρικὸν ἐξειπεῖν ψεύσταις τ᾽
having-practiced and the Homeric(-phrase) to-say-out liars both
ὀρχησταῖς τε καὶ ἀρίστοις χοροτυπίῃσι, καταλελοίπει δὲ
dancers both and best in-choral-dancing had-left and
ἄνδρας γενναίους καὶ περιδεξίους στρατηγούς, καλῶς τε
men noble and very-skillful generals well both

καὶ εὐαρέστως τῷ βασιλεῖ καὶ πατρὶ ἐξυπηρετήσαντας.
and acceptably to-the emperor and father having-served
καὶ ταῦτα μὲν τοιοῦτον ἔσχε τὸν τρόπον.
and these-things indeed such had the manner
76 Οἱ δὲ τοῦ Ῥωμαϊκοῦ πλήθους οἵ τε τῶν
the(-ones) and of-the Roman multitude the(-ones) both of-the(-ones)
ἐν τέλει καὶ οἱ τῶν στρατιωτικῶν ταγμάτων, σὺν
in office and the(-ones) of-the military units with
τοῖς καὶ οἱ τοῦ ἱεροῦ καταλόγου — συμπαρῆν
the(-ones) also the(-ones) of-the sacred roll were-present-with
γὰρ αὐτοῖς καὶ ὁ πατριάρχης καὶ τῶν ἐπιφανεστέρων
for them also the patriarch and of-the more-notable
ἀρχιερέων τινές — σκέψιν ἐπεποίηντο περὶ τῶν κοινῶν
high-priests some deliberation made about the common
πραγμάτων, τίς ἂν εἴη ἄξιος τὴν τούτων οἰκονομίαν
affairs who — would-be worthy the their management
λαβεῖν καὶ κρειττόνως τῶν ἄλλων διευθετήσασθαι.
to-take and better than-the others to-arrange
οὐ γὰρ προσῆκον ἔκριναν τὴν τῶν Ῥωμαίων ἀρχὴν
not for fitting they-judged the of-the Romans rule
τοσαύτην οὖσαν ὑπὸ βρεφυλλίου ὀπωριζομένου ἢ καὶ
so-great being by babe gathering-fruit or also
ἀστραγαλίζοντος διευθύνεσθαι, ἀλλ' ἔκριναν χρεὼν εἶναι
playing-at-knucklebones to-be-directed but they-judged needful to-be
τὸν δυνάμενον τὴν τῶν Ῥωμαίων σώζειν ὁλκάδα ἐπὶ
the(-one) able the of-the Romans to-save merchantman at
τῶν οἰάκων καθῆσθαι τῶν βασιλείων, πολλῶν μὲν ἐναντίων
the tillers to-sit the royal many indeed opposing
πνευμάτων καταπνεόντων αὐτῇ, ἀλλεπαλλήλων δὲ κυμάτων
winds blowing-down on-it one-upon-another and waves
καταβομβούντων καὶ ταραττόντων, καὶ ἁπλῶς εἰπεῖν ἐπὶ
roaring-down and troubling and simply to-say on

μεγάλου τυγχάνουσαν κλύδωνος καὶ κυβερνήτου δεδεημένην
great being billow and of-helmsman in-need
γενναίου πρὸς τὸ ὑπεράνω γενέσθαι τῶν ἐπελθόντων ταύτῃ
noble for the above to-be of-the having-come-upon it
δεινῶν. αὐτίκα γὰρ τὰ μὲν ὁμοροῦντα τοῖς Πέρσαις
terrible(-things) for-instance for the(-parts) indeed bordering on-the Persians
ταῖς ἐφόδοις ἐθορυβοῦντο τῶν ἐπερχομένων κατὰ Περσῶν
by-the attacks were-disturbed of-the coming-on against Persians
Ταχαρίων· οὔπω γὰρ εἰς τελείαν εἰρήνην ἀποκατέστησαν
Tachars not-yet for to complete peace they-had-been-restored
οὐδὲ εἰς ξυμβιβάσεις καὶ συμφωνίας βεβαίας συνῆεσαν. καὶ
nor to agreements and accords firm had-come and
τὰ ἐν δυσμῇ μέχρι καὶ αὐτοῦ τοῦ Ναξειοῦ ποταμοῦ,
the(-parts) in west as-far-as also the-very — Axios river
ὃν καὶ Βαρδάρειον ὁ πολὺς καλεῖ λαός, ὁ ἀποστάτης
which also Bardarios the many calls people the rebel
Μιχαὴλ ὑφ' ἑαυτὸν ἐποιήσατο, καὶ τὰ ἐν αὐτῇ πολίχνιά
Michael under himself made and the in it small-towns
τε καὶ φρούρια παρεστήσατο, καὶ ἀφόβως τούτων ἦρχε
both and fortresses brought-over and fearlessly them ruled
καὶ ἀκινδύνως ἐδέσποζεν. οὐ μὴν ἀλλὰ καὶ ἑτέρα τις
and without-danger was-master not however but also other some
προσδοκία τοὺς πολλούς, μᾶλλον δὲ τοὺς ἐχέφρονας
expectation the many rather and the sensible
ἔθραττε, τὰς ἐπιγαμβρίας φημὶ τοῦ ἀποστάτου Μιχαήλ·
troubled the marriage-alliances I-mean of-the rebel Michael
τόν τε γὰρ ῥῆγα Σικελίας Μαφρέ, καθὼς προειρήκειμεν,
the both for king of-Sicily Manfred as we-had-said-before
τῇ ἑαυτοῦ θυγατρὶ Ἑλένῃ συνέζευξε, καὶ κῆδος δὲ
to-the his daughter Helen joined and marriage-alliance too
ἄλλο ἐπὶ τῇ θυγατρὶ αὐτοῦ Ἄννῃ μετὰ τοῦ τῆς Ἀχαΐας
other by the daughter his Anna with the — of-Achaia

πρίγκιπος ἐπεποίητο. ἦν δὲ καὶ ἐν τῇ Κωνσταντινουπόλει
prince had-made was and also in — Constantinople
τὸ τῶν Λατίνων γένος, ἐχθρὸν καὶ αὐτὸ τυγχάνον
the of-the Latins race hostile also itself being
Ῥωμαίοις, ἐν οἷς καὶ βασιλεύων ὁ Βαλδουῖνος ἐτύγχανεν.
to-Romans in whom also reigning — Baldwin happened
Οὕτω μὲν οὖν τῶν πραγμάτων δυσχερῶς εἶχεν ἡ τῶν
so indeed then of-the affairs with-difficulty held the of-the
Ῥωμαίων ἀρχή, ἐζήτουν δὲ ἄρα οἱ προύχοντες τὸν καλῶς
Romans rule sought and then the leading-men the(-one) well
αὐτῶν προστησόμενον. ξυμπάντων δὲ οἱ ὀφθαλμοὶ πρὸς
them about-to-preside of-all and the eyes toward
τὸν Κομνηνὸν Μιχαὴλ ἀφεώρων, οὗ πολλάκις ὁ λόγος
— Komnenos Michael looked whom often the account
ἀπεμνημόνευσεν. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἔδει καὶ ἐρωτήσεις γενέσθαι
has-mentioned when and it-was-necessary also questions to-be-made
πρὸς τὸν λαόν, ἵνα σχοῖεν σφῶν αὐτῶν ἀπόπειραν τῆς
to the people that they-might-have of-their themselves trial of-the
βουλήσεως καὶ γνοῖεν ἑκάστου πρὸς ὃν ἔχει οὗτος ῥοπήν,
will and might-know of-each toward whom has this(-man) inclination
αἱ πεύσεις κατὰ γένη καὶ κατὰ τάξεις ἐγένοντο. καὶ πρῶτον
the inquiries by races and by ranks were-made and first
μὲν ἠρωτοῦντο Ῥωμαῖοι, καὶ ἁπαξάπαντες ὁμοθυμαδὸν
indeed were-asked Romans and all-together with-one-mind
ὡς ἐξ ἑνὸς στόματος τὸν Κομνηνὸν Μιχαὴλ ἐθέλειν εἶναι
as from one mouth — Komnenos Michael to-wish to-be
ἔλεγον τῶν πραγμάτων κηδεμόνα καὶ φροντιστήν, καὶ
said of-the affairs guardian and caretaker and
ὡς οἰκεῖον δεσπότην ἔχειν αὐτόν. καὶ τὸ Λατινικὸν δὲ
as own master to-have him and the Latin and
φῦλον ἐρωτηθὲν οὐ πολλῆς ἐδεήθη τῆς ἀποκρίσεως, ἀλλ'
tribe having-been-asked not of-much needed of-the answer but

εὐθὺς τὸν Κομνηνὸν Μιχαὴλ ἐζήτουν καὶ οὗτοι ἀρχηγὸν
at-once — Komnenos Michael sought also these leader
ἁπάντων τελεῖν. ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ τὸ Σκυθικὸν ἤροντο γένος,
of-all to-be when and also the Scythian they-asked race
οὐ βαρβαρικῶς ἀπεκρίνοντο ἀλλὰ καὶ Ἑλληνικῶς τε καὶ
not barbarously answered but also in-Greek both and
συνετῶς, καὶ οὐ κρείττονα ἄλλον εἰδέναι διισχυρίζοντο
intelligently and not better other to-know insisted
εἰς τὸ ἄρχειν ἁπάντων τοῦ Κομνηνοῦ Μιχαήλ. οὐ μὴν
for the to-rule all — than-Komnenos Michael not however
ἀλλὰ καὶ ὁ ἱερὸς κατάλογος, ἐπεὶ τὸν Κομνηνὸν ἑώρα
but also the sacred roll since — Komnenos saw
Μιχαὴλ πρὸς τὸ ἀντιλαβέσθαι τῶν Ῥωμαίων οὐ μικρῶς
Michael for the to-take-hold-of the Romans not slightly
δυσχεραίνοντα, ἀλλ᾽ οἷον κατοκνοῦντα καὶ ἀναβαλλόμενον
being-annoyed but as-if hesitating and putting-off
τὴν ἐγχείρησιν καὶ τάχα καὶ ὡς αἰτίαν τιθέντα τὸν
the undertaking and perhaps also as cause setting the
πρὸ βραχέος προβάντα ὅρκον ἐπὶ τῷ τοῦ βασιλέως
before short(-while) having-proceeded oath for the of-the emperor
Θεοδώρου παιδί, οὐ μόνον ἀγράφως αὐτῷ συνεχώρουν
Theodore child not only unwritten to-him they-conceded
τῆς πράξεως, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἔγγραφον ἐξέθεντο τόμον, ἐν ᾧ
of-the deed but also written put-forth tome in which
σὺν τῷ πατριάρχῃ οἱ ἀρχιερεῖς πάντες ὑπογεγράφασι,
with the patriarch the high-priests all signed
διαλαμβάνοντα ὡς οὐ μόνον ἐν τῷ ἀδεκάστῳ βήματι τοῦ
declaring that not only at the incorruptible tribunal —
Χριστοῦ οὐχ ὑφέξει λόγους τοῦ πράγματος, ἀλλὰ καὶ
of-Christ not he-will-render accounts of-the deed but also
στέφανοι θειότεροι τούτῳ πλακήσονται ἕνεκα τοῦ εἰς
crowns more-divine for-him will-be-woven for-the-sake of-the for

σωτηρίαν ἐληλυθέναι τοῦτον τοῦ χριστωνύμου λαοῦ. οὕτω
salvation to-have-come him of-the Christ-named people so
μὲν οὖν τὸν τοῦ Κομνηνοῦ Μιχαὴλ λογισμὸν ἀποτινάξαι
indeed then the — of-Komnenos Michael reasoning to-shake-off
τὴν δειλίαν φρονίμως καὶ ὡς δέον ἦν ἀπειργάσαντο,
the cowardice sensibly and as needful was they-accomplished
77 καὶ οὕτω μὲν καὶ ὁ Κομνηνὸς Μιχαὴλ τὸν ἀγῶνα τῆς
and so indeed also — Komnenos Michael the contest of-the
βασιλείου ἀρχῆς ὑπεισέδυ. καὶ πρῶτα μὲν ἐν τῷ δεσποτικῷ
imperial rule entered-into and first indeed in the despotic
τοῦτον ἀνήγαγον ἀξιώματι, καὶ ταινίαν δεσποτικὴν τὴν
him they-raised dignity and fillet despotic the
τούτου περιτιθέασι κεφαλήν. μικρόν τι πάνυ χρονικὸν
his put-around head little some very of-time
παρῆλθε διάστημα, καὶ ἑκὼν ἄκων εἰς τὴν βασίλειον
passed interval and willing unwilling to the imperial
ἀνήχθη περιωπήν, πολλὰ πρὸς τῶν προυχόντων ἐκβιασθεὶς
was-raised lookout much by the leading-men having-been-forced
καὶ οἷς τὰ κοινὰ τῶν πραγμάτων ἔμελε· καὶ γὰρ
and to-whom the common(-affairs) of-the state were-a-care also for
ἐπὶ τῆς βασιλικῆς ἀσπίδος οἱ τῶν ἐν τέλει καὶ
on the imperial shield the(-ones) of-the(-ones) in office and
οἱ ἄλλοι τῶν στρατευμάτων κρείττους ὄντες καθίσαντες
the others of-the armies better being having-seated
βασιλικῶς ἐπεφήμισαν. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἔδει καὶ βασιλικῷ
imperially acclaimed when and it-was-necessary also with-imperial
διαδήματι τοῦτον στεφθῆναι, ἐπὶ τὴν προκαθημένην πόλιν
diadem him to-be-crowned to the leading city
τῶν Βιθυνῶν ἀφίκετο Νίκαιαν, ἔνθα παρὰ τοῦ πατριάρχου
of-the Bithynians he-arrived Nicaea where by the patriarch
Ἀρσενίου τὸ βασιλικὸν ἐταινιώθη διάδημα.
Arsenios the imperial was-wreathed diadem

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀπὸ τῶν τοῦ βασιλέως Θεοδώρου ἐγκρίτων
since and from the(-ones) of-the emperor Theodore select
δοκούντων εἶναι καὶ μεγιστάνων ὁ Καρυανίτης, ὃν καὶ
seeming to-be and grandees — Karyanites whom also
πρωτοβεστιαρίτην εἶχεν ἐκεῖνος, ἐσώζετο, ὃς καὶ τῶν
protovestiarites had that(-man) was-left-alive who also of-the
προειρημένων τοῦ τε πρωτοβεστιαρίου καὶ τῶν αὐταδέλφων
aforesaid of-the both protovestiarios and the brothers
αὐτοῦ φόνον εἰργάσατο — ἐκεῖνος καὶ γὰρ τῷ τότε
his murder worked that(-man) also for at-the then(-time)
τὴν Ῥωμαϊκὴν στρατιὰν ἐπεκράτει — τοῦτον ὁ βασιλεὺς
the Roman army controlled him the emperor
Μιχαήλ, ἵνα μή τι νεωτερίσῃ, ἐν εἱρκτῇ ἔθετο. ὁ
Michael that not something he-might-make-revolution in prison put he
δὲ ἀποδρὰς περὶ τὰ τῶν Περσῶν ᾤχετο, ὑπό τινων
but having-escaped to the(-lands) of-the Persians went by some
δὲ Τουρκομάνων κατασχεθεὶς ἐσκύλευται μὲν τὰ
and Turkomans having-been-seized was-despoiled indeed the(-things)
αὐτοῦ καὶ αὐτὸς δὲ πεφόνευται. ἐναπολέλειπται δὲ ἀπὸ
his and himself too was-murdered had-been-left and from
τῶν μεγάλων καὶ περιωνύμων ὁ Ἄγγελος Ἰωάννης, ὃς
the great and renowned — Angelos John who
καὶ πρωτοστράτωρ ἦν καὶ κατὰ τὴν δυσμὴν διῆγεν, ἔχων
also protostrator was and in the west stayed having
ὑφ᾽ ἑαυτὸν οὐ σμικράν τινα μοῖραν τῆς στρατιᾶς. τοῦτον
under himself not small some portion of-the army him
μετὰ τὸν πρωτοβεστιάριον ὁ βασιλεὺς ἐφίλει Θεόδωρος,
after the protovestiarios the emperor loved Theodore
κἀν ταῖς τιμαῖς καὶ πᾶσιν ἄλλοις ἁπλῶς τὰ δευτερεῖα
and-in the honors and in-all others simply the second-place
ἔφερεν. εἰς ὃν ὁ βασιλεὺς ἀπέστειλέ τινας τῶν αὐτοῦ
bore to whom the emperor sent some of-the his(-men)

ὡς εἰς αὐτὸν ἀγαγεῖν, καθ' ὁδὸν δὲ δειλίας οὗτος βέλει
so-as to him to-bring on road and of-cowardice this(-man) by-arrow
τρωθεὶς ἐτεθνήκει· τοιοῦτοι τὴν ψυχὴν γενναῖοι πρὸς τοῦ
wounded died such the soul noble by the
βασιλέως Θεοδώρου χειροτονηθέντες ἡγεμόνες Ῥωμαϊκῶν
emperor Theodore appointed commanders of-Roman
στρατευμάτων ἐτύγχανον. οὗτοι μὲν οὖν ἦσαν οἱ πρόκριτοι
armies were these indeed then were the chosen
τῶν ἐκείνου καὶ οἱ πρώτιστοι ἐν ἀξιώμασιν, οἱ δὲ
of-the(-ones) his and the very-first in dignities the and
ἄλλοι ἀνθρώπια ὑπῆρχον οὐ πολλοῦ λόγου ἄξια· διὰ
others little-men were not of-much account worthy because-of
ταῦτα καὶ ὡς καταπεφρονημένοι παρείθησαν.
these-things also as despised were-passed-over
Ὁ μὲν οὖν βασιλεὺς Μιχαὴλ πρὸ τοῦ βασιλικῶς
the indeed then emperor Michael before the imperially
στεφθῆναι τὸν αὐτάδελφον αὐτοῦ Ἰωάννην τὸν Κομνηνόν,
to-be-crowned the own-brother his John the Komnenos
μέγαν χειροτονήσας δομέστικον καὶ τὰ Ῥωμαϊκὰ τούτῳ
great having-appointed domestic and the Roman to-him
παραδοὺς στρατεύματα, εἰς τὰ δυτικὰ μέρη κατὰ τοῦ
having-handed-over armies to the western parts against the
ἀποστάτου ἐκπέπομφε Μιχαήλ. συνεξαπέστειλε δὲ αὐτῷ
rebel sent-out Michael sent-out-with and him
καὶ τὸν Στρατηγόπουλον Ἀλέξιον καὶ τὸν Ῥαοὺλ Ἰωάννην
also — Strategopoulos Alexios and — Raoul John
τὸν τοῦ πρωτοβεστιαρίου Ῥαοὺλ πρῶτον υἱόν, σὺν τοῖς
the of-the protovestiarios Raoul first son with them
δὲ καὶ ἄλλους πολλοὺς στρατηγεῖν εἰδότας καὶ μάχαις ὡς
and also others many to-be-generals knowing and in-battles as
δέον συμπλέκεσθαι. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀνηγορεύθη καὶ βασιλεὺς ὁ
needful to-engage when and was-proclaimed also emperor the

βασιλεὺς Μιχαήλ, τὸν μὲν αὐτάδελφον αὐτοῦ τὸν Κομνηνὸν
emperor Michael the indeed own-brother his — Komnenos
Ἰωάννην σεβαστοκράτορα τετίμηκεν, ἐξαποστείλας αὐτῷ
John sebastokrator honored having-sent-out to-him
ἐν τῇ δυσμῇ ὄντι τὰ τοῦ ἀξιώματος σύσσημα, τὸν δὲ
in the west being the of-the dignity insignia — and
Στρατηγόπουλον Ἀλέξιον μέγαν ἐτετιμήκει δομέστικον,
Strategopoulos Alexios great had-honored domestic
τὸν δὲ αὐτάδελφον αὐτοῦ Κωνσταντῖνον ἐξ ἑτέρας ὄντα
the and own-brother his Constantine from another being
τούτῳ μητρὸς τῷ τοῦ καίσαρος τετίμηκεν ἀξιώματι
to-him mother with-the of-the caesar honored dignity
καὶ εἰς τὰ τῆς Παφλαγονίας ἔστειλε μέρη, τὰς ἐκεῖσε
and to the — of-Paphlagonia sent parts the there
πόλεις καὶ τὸν στρατὸν ἐπισκεψόμενον καὶ τὰ φρούρια.
cities and the army to-inspect and the fortresses
Ἐπεὶ γοῦν ἐγκρατὴς τῶν βασιλικῶν σκήπτρων ὁ Κομνηνὸς 78
when then master of-the imperial scepters — Komnenos
γεγένηται Μιχαήλ, πάντας μὲν τοὺς ἐξ ὁποιασδήτινος
became Michael all indeed the(-ones) from whatever
αἰτίας κατασχέτους ὄντας ὑπὸ τοῦ βασιλέως Θεοδώρου ἢ
cause detained being by the emperor Theodore or
καὶ ἄλλως παρεωραμένους ἀνερρύσατό τε καὶ ἀνεκαλέσατο,
also otherwise overlooked he-rescued both and recalled
καὶ δωρήμασιν ἁδροτέροις τούτους ἐδεξιώσατο. ἀλλὰ καὶ
and with-gifts more-ample them welcomed but also
ἁπαξαπλῶς πρὸς πάντας φιλοτιμότερον ἐχρήσατο τῇ ἀρχῇ,
altogether toward all more-generously used the rule
ἀφειδῶς ἐπιχέων τούτοις τὰ χρήματα. καὶ ἦν ἰδεῖν τὸ
unsparingly pouring-on them the money and was to-see the
τῶν Ῥωμαίων πλῆθος, κἂν οἱουδήτινος ἔτυχε τάγματος
of-the Romans multitude whether of-whatever it-happened rank

κἂν οἱασδήτινος τύχης καὶ ἐπιτηδεύματος οἱουδήτινος,
whether of-whatever fortune and pursuit of-whatever
πολλῆς τῆς ἡδονῆς ἐμφορούμενον καὶ ἐπιχαῖρον τοῖς
with-much the pleasure being-filled and rejoicing at-the
πράγμασιν. ὥσπερ γάρ τις ἐκ σκοτομήνης βαθείας εἰς
affairs as for some-one from moonless-darkness deep into
καθαρώτατον ἡλίου φέγγος ἐπέλθοι ἢ καὶ ἀπὸ κλύδωνος
purest of-sun light should-come or also from billow
εἰς γαλήνην ἢ ἐκ χειμῶνος εἰς ἔαρ ἢ εἰς νηνεμίαν ἐκ
into calm or from winter into spring or into stillness from
λαίλαπος κἀκ τῆς πολλῆς ἀνίας μεταμειφθείη εἰς ἡδονήν,
hurricane and-from the much grief should-be-changed into pleasure
οὕτως ἅπαντες ἐπεγάννυντο καὶ ἐσκίρτων ὑφ᾽ ἡδονῆς, τῆς
so all exulted and leapt with pleasure of-the
προτέρας ἐπιλελησμένοι ἀλγεινοτέρας καὶ πικρᾶς διαγωγῆς.
former having-forgotten more-painful and bitter way-of-life
Οἱ μὲν οὖν ἐν τῇ Κωνσταντινουπόλει Λατῖνοι καὶ ὁ
the indeed then in — Constantinople Latins and the
ἐν αὐτῇ τάχα βασιλεύων Βαλδουῖνος πρεσβείαν ἔστειλαν
in it supposedly reigning Baldwin embassy sent
πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα, ὑπέρογκά τινα ζητοῦντες καὶ
to the emperor excessive some(-things) seeking and
ἀτόπων ὄντα ἐγγύς· καταφρονητικῶς γὰρ διατεθέντες
of-absurd(-things) being near contemptuously for having-been-disposed
πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα ὡς νῦν τῆς ἀρχῆς ἁψάμενον βαρείας
toward the emperor as now of-the rule having-taken-hold heavy
τὰς ζητήσεις ἐποίουν. καὶ πρῶτον μὲν ἤρξαντο ἀπὸ τῆς
the demands made and first indeed they-began from the
πόλεως Θεσσαλονίκης ποιεῖσθαι τὴν ζήτησιν, ἵνα παράσχῃ
city Thessalonica to-make the demand that he-might-grant
ταύτην τούτοις ὁ βασιλεὺς καὶ πᾶσαν τὴν ἄλλην χώραν
it to-them the emperor and all the other land

ἄχρι καὶ τῆς Κωνσταντίνου αὐτῆς. ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς τῶν
up-to also the of-Constantine itself the and emperor the
τοιούτων ἀκροασάμενος ἀστειότερον πρὸς σφᾶς αὐτοὺς
such(-things) having-heard more-wittily to them themselves
τὸν ἀπόλογον ἐποιήσατο, ὡς ‘ἡ πόλις αὕτη πατρίς μου
the reply made that the city this fatherland my
οἷον τυγχάνει· ἐκεῖσε γὰρ ὁ ἐμὸς πατὴρ ἡγεμόνευεν,
as-it-were is there for the my father governed
ὃν καὶ ὑμεῖς οἴδατε, τὸν μέγαν λέγω δομέστικον. ἀλλὰ
whom also you know the great I-mean domestic but
καὶ ἐν αὐτῇ οὗτος τὸ ζῆν ἐξεμέτρησε, καὶ τὸ σῶμα
also in it he the living measured-out and the body
αὐτοῦ ἐκεῖσε τέθαπται. πῶς οὖν δέον ἐστὶ ταύτην τὴν
his there has-been-buried how then needful is this the
πόλιν ἔξω τῆς ἐμῆς τυγχάνειν ἀρχῆς;’ ταῦτ’ ἀκηκοότες
city outside of-the my to-be rule these-things having-heard
οἱ πρέσβεις ὑποκνηστιῶσαν ἔσχον τὴν ἀκοήν, ὡς τάχα
the envoys itching had the hearing as perhaps
τινὰ τῶν ζητουμένων παράσχῃ τούτοις ὁ βασιλεύς,
some of-the(-things) sought he-might-grant to-them the emperor
καὶ μεταβαλόντες τὸν λόγον ‘οὐκοῦν’ ἔφησαν, ‘ὦ βασιλεῦ,
and having-changed the speech then said O emperor
παραχώρησον ἡμῖν ἐκ τῶν Σερρῶν αὐτῶν κατασχεῖν τὰ
concede to-us from — Serres itself to-hold the
λοιπά.’ καὶ ὁ βασιλεύς· ‘οὐδ’ αὐτήν μοι προσήκουσαν
rest and the emperor not-even it to-me belonging
ποιεῖσθε τὴν ζήτησιν. πρώτως γὰρ ἐν αὐτῇ πρὸς τοῦ
you-make the demand first for in it by the
μακαρίτου βασιλέως τοῦ θείου μου ἡγεμονεύειν χώρας
blessed emperor the uncle my to-govern lands
ἠρξάμην, καὶ πρώτως ἐν αὐτῇ ἐστρατήγησα, καὶ φιλῶ
I-began and first in it I-was-general and I-love

τὸν τόπον ὡς σύνηθες ἔδαφος. οὐ χρεὼν γοῦν οὐδὲ
the place as familiar ground not fitting then not-even
ταύτην τὴν πόλιν καταλιπεῖν.' εὐχερῶς γοῦν οἱ πρέσβεις
this the city to-leave easily then the envoys
ἐκ τόπου μετεπήδων εἰς τόπον, καὶ μηδὲν ἔχοντες, εἰ
from place leapt to place and nothing having if
καί τι λάβοιεν, ἀγαπᾶν ὡς κερδήσαντες καὶ 'ὦ
even something they-should-take to-be-content as having-gained and O
βασιλεῦ,' ἀντεῖπον, 'καὶ δὸς ἡμῖν ἐκ τοῦ Βολεροῦ τὰ
emperor replied also give to-us from — Boleron the(-places)
μέχρις ἡμῶν.' καὶ ὁ βασιλεύς· 'ἐν τούτοις τοῖς τόποις
up-to us and the emperor in these the places
ἐθήρευσα πολλάκις, καὶ σχεδὸν τὸ καλῶς χρᾶσθαι ταῖς
I-hunted often and almost the well to-use the
θήραις ἐν τούτοις μεμάθηκα, καὶ οὔ μοι κέκριται ἄξιον
hunts in these I-learned and not to-me is-judged worthy
τοῦτον ἀφεῖναι τὸν χῶρον, ἔνθα καὶ πάλιν ἀγαπῶ θηρεύειν
this to-give-up the region where also again I-love to-hunt
καὶ ἄγραις ζώων ἐφήδεσθαι.' 'τί γοῦν ἡμῖν δίδως;'
and in-chases of-animals to-delight what then to-us do-you-give
ἀντέφησαν οἱ πρέσβεις τῷ βασιλεῖ. 'ἐγὼ μέν,' ἔφη ὁ
retorted the envoys to-the emperor I indeed said the
βασιλεύς, 'οὐδέν· ἀλλ' εἴπερ ἐθέλητε τὴν ἐξ ἐμοῦ εἰρήνην
emperor nothing but if-indeed you-wish the from me peace
λαβεῖν — καλῶς γάρ με ἐπίστασθε καὶ τὴν ἐξ ἐμοῦ
to-take well for me you-know and the from me
μάχην ξυνίετε, ἡνίκα τὴν ἡγεμονίαν Βιθυνίας καὶ Ταρσίας
battle you-understand when the command of-Bithynia and of-Tarsia
εἶχον, ὅπως ὑμῖν οἶδα μαχέσασθαι — ἐθέλω τοὺς ἐν
I-had how with-you I-know to-fight I-wish the in
τῇ Κωνσταντινουπόλει Λατίνους πρὸς τὴν τῶν Ῥωμαίων
— Constantinople Latins to the of-the Romans

τελεῖν ἀρχὴν μερίδα μὲν τὴν ἐκ τοῦ κομμερκίου αὐτῶν
to-pay rule share indeed the(-one) from the customs-duty their
τὴν ἡμίσειαν κἀκ τοῦ χρυσεψητείου αὐτῶν τὴν ἀνάλογον
the half and-from the gold-refinery their the proportional
ὡσαύτως εἴσοδον. εἰ ταῦτά μοι παρασχεῖν ὑποσχοίητε,
likewise income if these-things to-me to-provide you-should-promise
εἰς εἰρήνην συνέρχομαι. εἰ δ' οὖν, ἀλλ' ἔστω μάχη,
to peace I-come if but then but let-there-be battle
ἥτις σὺν θεῷ φάναι μᾶλλον λυσιτελήσει Ῥωμαίοις.' οὕτως
which with God to-say rather will-profit Romans thus
καταισχυνθέντες οἱ τῶν Λατίνων πρέσβεις ἄπρακτοι πρὸς
put-to-shame the of-the Latins envoys unsuccessful to
τὴν Κωνσταντινούπολιν ὑπενόστησαν.
— Constantinople went-back

XIV · PELAGONIA

Michael VIII's envoys find Michael of Epirus unyielding. The sebastokrator John takes Ochrid and Deabolis, and at Pelagonia the allied army of Epirus, Achaia, and Sicily breaks up; the prince of Achaia is captured. Arta is lost again through the generals' misconduct. Michael fails against Galata and makes a year's truce with the Latins; Arsenios returns as patriarch.

Καὶ πρὸς τὸν ἀποστάτην δὲ Μιχαὴλ ἐστείλατο πρεσβείαν 79
and to the rebel too Michael sent embassy
ὁ βασιλεὺς διὰ τοῦ Φιλῆ Θεοδώρου τοῦ πρὸς τοῦ
the emperor through — Philes Theodore the(-one) by the
βασιλέως Θεοδώρου τετυφλωμένου. καὶ ἡ πρεσβεία πραεῖα,
emperor Theodore blinded and the embassy mild
καὶ πολλὰ τῶν προσηκόντων ἄστεων καὶ χωρῶν παρεχώρει
and many of-the belonging towns and lands conceded

τῷ ἀποστάτῃ ὁ βασιλεύς, πρὸς ἀγάπην ἐφέλκων αὐτόν,
to-the rebel the emperor to love drawing him
ὀλίγα δὲ ἄττα ἀνεκαλεῖτο καὶ οἷα οὐκ ἦν εἰκὸς
few but some(-things) he-reclaimed and such-as not was fitting
παριδεῖν. ἀλλ' ἦν ὁ ἀποστάτης πρὸς τὰς ἀκροάσεις
to-overlook but was the rebel to the hearings
σκληρὸς καὶ πρὸς τοὺς λόγους ἀπόκροτος· οὐ μόνον γὰρ
hard and to the words harsh not only for
τὴν πρεσβείαν οὐ κατεδέξατο, ἀλλὰ καὶ τὰς ἀποκρίσεις οὐ
the embassy not he-accepted but also the answers not
προσηκούσας ἐποιεῖτο. ἐφύσα γὰρ αὐτὸν οὐ μόνον τὸ ἐπὶ
fitting made puffed-up for him not only the with
τῷ ῥηγὶ τῆς Σικελίας τῷ Μαφρὲ κῆδος, ἀλλὰ καὶ
the king — of-Sicily — Manfred marriage-alliance but also
τὸ ἐπὶ τῷ πρίγκιπι τῆς Ἀχαΐας τῷ Γουλιέλμῳ· ἤδη
the(-one) with the prince — of-Achaia — William already
γὰρ καὶ τὴν τοιαύτην ἀγχιστείαν πεπλήρωκεν· ἐντεῦθεν
for also the such kinship he-had-fulfilled hence
μεγάλα τε ἐφρόνει καὶ ὑπέρογκα διελέγετο. ἔνθεν τοι
great(-things) both he-thought and excessive(-things) spoke hence indeed
καὶ ὁ Φιλῆς Θεόδωρος πολλὰ τοῖς λόγοις ἀνιαθεὶς
also — Philes Theodore much at-the words having-been-grieved
καὶ βαρυαλγήσας ταῖς ἀποκρίσεσι πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα
and having-been-sorely-pained at-the answers to the emperor
ὑπέστρεφε, τοῦτο πρὸς τὸν ἀποστάτην εἰπών· 'οἶδα μὲν
returned this to the rebel having-said I-know indeed
ὡς ἀνοηταίνεις καὶ διὰ τοῦτο φθέγγῃ τὰ μὴ καθήκοντα.
that you-are-foolish and because-of this you-utter the not fitting(-things)
ἀλλ' ἴσθι ὡς τάχος πειραθήσῃ βασιλικῆς ἰσχύος καὶ
but know that quickly you-will-experience imperial strength and
Ῥωμαϊκῆς δυνάμεως καὶ γενήσῃ μετάμελος, ὅτε οὐδέν
Roman power and you-will-become repentant when nothing

σοι τὸ ὄφελος.' ταῦτ' εἰπὼν πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα ἀφίκετο,
to-you the profit these-things having-said to the emperor came
πολλὴν καταγνοὺς τοῦ Μιχαὴλ ἀβελτηρίαν, ὅτι μηδὲ
much having-condemned — of-Michael stupidity that not-even
μικράν τινα ἠβουλήθη βασιλέως ἀξίωσιν ἀποπλήσασθαι,
small some he-wished of-emperor request to-fulfill
ἤδη τὸν Χαβάρωνα Κωνσταντῖνον ἀπολῦσαι κἀμὲ αὐτὸν
already — Chabaron Constantine to-release and-me myself
τὸν ξυγγράφοντα, τὸν μὲν ὡς συνανατεθραμμένον
the(-one) writing the(-one) indeed as reared-together
τῷ βασιλεῖ καὶ πολλάκις συνημιλλημένον στρατιωτικοῖς
with-the emperor and often having-contended-together in-military
ἐπιτηδεύμασιν, ἐμὲ δὲ ὡς εἰς κῆδος τῷ βασιλεῖ
pursuits me and as into marriage-alliance with-the emperor
ξυνελθόντα καὶ τῆς συζύγου γοερὸν ἀναβοώσης καὶ
having-come and of-the wife mournfully crying-out and
τῶν ποδῶν προκυλινδουμένης τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος, καὶ
at-the feet rolling of-the autocrat and
ταῦτα πλείους τῶν εἴκοσι τῆς εἱρκτῆς λελυκότος τοῦ
these-things more than-the twenty from-the prison having-released the
βασιλέως, οὓς ἐν τῷ κατὰ τὰ Βοδηνὰ πολέμῳ ζωγρίας ὁ
emperor whom in the at — Bodena war alive the
βασιλεὺς εἵλετο πρὸς τοῦ βασιλέως Θεοδώρου ἀποσταλείς,
emperor took by the emperor Theodore having-been-sent
ὧν ἔνιοι καὶ προσγενεῖς ὑπῆρχον τῷ ἀποστάτῃ, οἱ δ'
of-whom some also kinsmen were to-the rebel the and
ἄλλοι κρείττους τε ἐν στρατείᾳ καὶ τῶν ἐκ γένους
others better both in military-service and of-the(-ones) by family
περιφανῶν. οὕτω μὲν τὰ τῆς πρεσβείας προέβη
conspicuous thus indeed the(-things) of-the embassy proceeded
τῆς πρὸς τὸν ἀποστάτην.
of-the(-one) to the rebel

Ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς καὶ πρὸς τὸν ῥῆγα Σικελίας τὸν Μαφρὲ
the and emperor also to the king of-Sicily — Manfred
τὸν τοῦ ἀποστάτου γαμβρὸν πρεσβείαν ἔστειλε διὰ
the of-the rebel son-in-law embassy sent through
τοῦ ἐπὶ τοῦ κανικλείου Νικηφόρου τοῦ Ἀλυάτου, ὃν
the(-one) over the inkstand Nikephoros the Alyates whom
καὶ κατεῖχε μεθ' ἑαυτοῦ ἐγγύς που δύο ἐτῶν· πῶς γὰρ
also he-detained with himself near somewhere two years how for
ἂν εἶχε καὶ πληρῶσαί τι τῶν τοῦ βασιλέως
— would-he-be-able also to-fulfill anything of-the of-the emperor
βουλημάτων, καθάπαξ τῷ ἀποστάτῃ Μιχαὴλ συνδεθεὶς καὶ
wishes once-for-all to-the rebel Michael bound and
εἰς φαντασίαν μείζονος κέρδους κρατηθείς; ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς
in imagination of-greater gain held the and emperor
καὶ πρὸς τὸν πρίγκιπα Ἀχαΐας διεπρεσβεύσατο· ἀλλὰ
also to the prince of-Achaia sent-embassy but
καὶ ἐκεῖνος τῷ κήδει τῷ πρὸς τὸν ἀποστάτην
also he in-the marriage-alliance the(-one) with the rebel
τεθαρρηκὼς καὶ πολλὰ ἐκ τούτου προσγενήσεσθαι αὐτῷ
having-trusted and much from this to-accrue to-him
προσδοκῶν, εἰς οὐδὲν τοὺς λόγους ἐτίθετο.
expecting for nothing the words set

80 Ὁ μὲν οὖν βασιλεύς, ὡς προέφημεν, τὸν αὐτάδελφον αὐτοῦ
the indeed then emperor as we-said-before the own-brother his
τὸν σεβαστοκράτορα ἐν τῇ δυσμῇ κατὰ τοῦ ἀποστάτου
the sebastokrator in the west against the rebel
ἐκπέμψας καὶ τούτῳ τὰς δυνάμεις ἐγχειρίσας καὶ τοὺς
having-sent-out and to-him the forces having-entrusted and the
αὐτῶν στρατηγούς, προσέταξε κατευθὺ τὴν πορείαν
their generals ordered straight the march
ποιήσασθαι, μέχρις ἂν τῷ τοῦ ἀποστάτου ἐντύχῃ
to-make until — with-the of-the rebel he-should-meet

στρατεύματι. ὁ μὲν οὖν σεβαστοκράτωρ Ἰωάννης κατὰ
army the indeed then sebastokrator John according-to
τὸ προσταχθὲν ἐποίει, ὁ δὲ ἀποστάτης Μιχαὴλ μετὰ
the(-thing) ordered did the and rebel Michael with
τῆς συζύγου αὐτοῦ καὶ τῶν οἰκείων περὶ τὰ τῆς Καστορίας
the wife his and the household about the — of-Kastoria
μέρη ἐστρατοπέδευεν. ἄφνω δὲ ἐπῆλθε τούτῳ βοή, ὡς τὰ
parts was-encamped suddenly and came-upon him outcry that the
Ῥωμαϊκὰ στρατεύματα τὰ τῶν Βοδηνῶν τέμπη διαβάντα
Roman armies the — of-Bodena vale having-crossed
κατ᾽ αὐτῶν χωροῦσιν. οἱ μὲν οὖν ἀκούσαντες τῆς
against them are-going the(-ones) indeed then having-heard the
φωνῆς καὶ πτοίαν οὐ σμικρὰν ἐν ψυχῇ λαβόντες πρὸς
cry and terror not small in soul having-taken to
δρασμὸν αὐτοί τε ὥρμησαν καὶ πάντας τοὺς ἑαυτῶν
flight themselves both set-out and all the(-ones) their-own
ἐκίνησαν. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦν νὺξ καὶ οὐχ ἑώρα τις ὅπῃ φέρεται,
moved since and it-was night and not saw anyone where he-is-borne
πολλοὶ γεγόνασιν, ὥσπερ τινὸς ξίφους, ὁδοῦ ἔργον. καὶ
many became as-if of-some sword of-road work and
ὁ Πετραλίφας δὲ Θεόδωρος ὁ αὐτοκασίγνητος τῆς τοῦ
— Petraliphas too Theodore the own-brother of-the of-the
ἀποστάτου Μιχαὴλ συζύγου, θρασύτερον ἐπιβὰς τοῦ
rebel Michael wife more-rashly having-mounted the
ἵππου, ἐπεὶ ἐνέτυχε κρημνώδει τόπῳ, αὐτός τε καὶ ὁ
horse when he-met precipitous place he both and the
ἵππος καταβέβληνται καὶ ἄμφω ἀπώλοντο. συνεστάλησαν
horse were-thrown-down and both perished they-drew-back
οὖν μέχρι τῶν οἰκείων ὅρων, εἴτουν τῶν Πυρρηναίων
then as-far-as the own boundaries that-is of-the Pyrenaean

ὀρῶν, ἃ δὴ διορίζει τὴν παλαιάν τε καὶ τὴν νέαν
mountains which indeed divide the old both and the new
Ἤπειρον τῆς Ἑλληνίδος καὶ ἡμετέρας γῆς.
Epirus from-the Greek and our land
Ἐπεὶ δὲ οὕτω ταῦτα ἐπὶ τούτοις ξυνέβη, ἀδείας
when and so these-things in these happened license
ὁ σεβαστοκράτωρ δραξάμενος, ἔρημον εὑρὼν τῆς
the sebastokrator having-grasped deserted having-found of-the
ἐπικουρούσης τὴν χώραν δυνάμεως, κατὰ τῶν ἐν αὐτῇ
aiding the land power against the in it
ἄστεων τὰς ὁρμὰς ἐποιεῖτο. καὶ πρῶτον μὲν ἀπῄει περὶ
towns the onsets made and first indeed went-off to
τὴν Ἀχρίδα, ἣν καὶ ἀρχιεπισκοπὴν Βουλγαρίας οἱ πάντες
— Ochrid which also archbishopric of-Bulgaria the all
οἴδασιν, ἔχων μεθ' ἑαυτοῦ καὶ τὸν ἀρχιεπίσκοπον ταύτης
know having with himself also the archbishop of-it
τὸν Καβάσιλαν Κωνσταντῖνον, ὃς ἦν πρὸς τοῦ βασιλέως
— Kabasilas Constantine who was by the emperor
Θεοδώρου κατισχημένος. ὑφωρᾶτο γὰρ παρ' αὐτοῦ μὴ ὀρθὸς
Theodore detained he-was-suspected for by him not straight
εἶναι περὶ τὴν ἀρχὴν τὴν βασίλειον· οἵ τε γὰρ αὐτάδελφοι
to-be about the rule the imperial the both for own-brothers
αὐτοῦ μετὰ τοῦ ἀποστάτου ἐτύγχανον Μιχαήλ, ὅ τε
his with the rebel were Michael — both
Ἰωάννης καὶ ὁ Θεόδωρος, καὶ ὁ μὲν Θεόδωρος συνηριθμεῖτο
John and — Theodore and — indeed Theodore was-counted-among
τοῖς ἐν αὐτῷ προύχουσιν, ὁ δὲ Ἰωάννης σχεδὸν πᾶσαν
the with him leading-men — and John almost all
τῶν αὐτοῦ πραγμάτων τὴν δεσποτείαν ἔφερε, τά τε
of-the his affairs the mastery bore the both
κοινὰ διέπων καὶ τὰ κατ' οἶκον. διὰ ταῦτα,
common(-affairs) managing and the(-affairs) at home because-of these-things

ὡς ἔφημεν, οὐκ ἐθάρρει ὁ βασιλεὺς Θεόδωρος τῷ ἀρχιερεῖ.
as we-said not trusted the emperor Theodore the high-priest
ἀλλ' ὁ βασιλεὺς Μιχαὴλ ἐλευθερώτερον τοῖς πράγμασι
but the emperor Michael more-freely the affairs
χρώμενος καὶ θεῷ τὸ πλεῖον τῶν πραττομένων αὐτῷ
using and to-God the more of-the(-things) done by-him
ἢ καὶ τὸ πᾶν ἀναρτῶν, ἐλευθερίαν τῷ ἀρχιεπισκόπῳ
or also the whole hanging freedom to-the archbishop
δέδωκεν εἰς τὴν αὐτοῦ ἀφικέσθαι, καὶ συνείπετο οὗτος τῷ
gave to the his(-see) to-come and followed this(-man) the
σεβαστοκράτορι. ἐπελθόντες οὖν εἰς τὴν Ἀχρίδα, ὡς ἔφημεν,
sebastokrator having-come then to — Ochrid as we-said
ὁ μὲν σεβαστοκράτωρ τὰς πολεμικὰς μηχανὰς κατ' αὐτῶν
the indeed sebastokrator the war engines against them
ἐκίνει, ὁ δὲ ἀρχιεπίσκοπος λόγοις ὑπενδοῦναι ὑπείληφεν.
moved the and archbishop by-words to-give-way supposed
ἐν οὐ πολλῷ γοῦν χρόνῳ ἑάλω πρὸς αὐτῶν ἡ Ἀχρίδα.
in not much then time was-taken by them — Ochrid
Ἐπεὶ δὲ τὰ ἐκεῖσε καλῶς ὁ σεβαστοκράτωρ διέθετο,
when and the(-affairs) there well the sebastokrator arranged
ἐπὶ τὴν Δεάβολιν ὥρμησε, καὶ τὸ τῆς Δεαβόλεως ἄστυ
at — Deabolis he-set-out and the — of-Deabolis town
μηχανήμασι παντοίοις παραστήσασθαι ἐβεβούλητο. καὶ
with-engines of-all-sorts to-bring-over had-wished and
ἔταξε ταῦτα καὶ ἑλεπόλεις ἔστησε καὶ μηχανὰς παντοίας
arranged these-things and siege-engines set-up and engines of-all-sorts
πεποίηκε καὶ συνεχεῖς ἐφόδους διεπράττετο καὶ παντοίως
made and continual attacks accomplished and in-all-ways
τὴν τοῦ ἄστεος ἅλωσιν γεγενῆσθαι προείλετο. καὶ μὴν καὶ
the of-the town capture to-happen preferred and indeed also
κατὰ σκοπὸν αὐτῷ προέβη τὰ πράγματα. πολλῶν γὰρ
according-to aim for-him proceeded the affairs many for

τῶν ἐντὸς πεφονευμένων τοῦ ἄστεος, οὐκ ὀλίγων δὲ καὶ
of-the(-ones) within having-been-murdered of-the town not few and also
ταῖς βολαῖς ταῖς ἐκ τῶν ὀϊστῶν πεπληγμένων, οἱ ἄλλοι
by-the shots the(-ones) from the arrows having-been-struck the others
μαλακισθέντες — φύσει γὰρ ὑπάρχει τὸ δυτικὸν γένος πρὸς
having-grown-soft by-nature for is the western race for
φυλάξεις ἄστεων μαλθακώτερον — καὶ τὸ τοιοῦτον ἄστυ
guards of-towns softer also the such town
τὸ τῆς Δεαβόλεως τῷ σεβαστοκράτορι ἐνεχείρισαν. καὶ
the(-one) — of-Deabolis to-the sebastokrator handed-over and
πᾶσα δὲ ἡ πέριξ τῶν τοιούτων ἄστεων χώρα, εἴτουν Πρέσπα
all too the around the such towns land that-is Prespa
Πελαγονία Σωσκὸς Μολυσκός, ὑπὸ τὴν ἐπικράτειαν τῶν
Pelagonia Soskos Molyskos under the dominion of-the
Ῥωμαϊκῶν δυνάμεων ἐγεγόνεισαν καὶ ὑπετάττοντο τούτοις.
Roman forces had-come and were-subject to-these
τοιοῦτοι γάρ εἰσιν οἱ τῶν δυτικῶν οἰκήτορες, ῥᾳδίως πᾶσι
such for are the of-the western inhabitants easily to-all
τοῖς δυναστεύουσιν ὑποπίπτοντες· ἐντεῦθεν τοὺς ὀλέθρους
the(-ones) holding-power submitting hence the destructions
ἀποφυγγάνουσι καὶ τὰ πλείω τῶν σφετέρων περιουσιῶν
escape and the more of-the their possessions
διασώζουσι. καὶ ταῦτα μὲν ὑπῆρξεν ἔαρος ἐνισταμένου.
preserve and these-things indeed happened of-spring setting-in
81 Ὁ δὲ ἀποστάτης Μιχαὴλ ἐπείπερ ἑώρα ἤδη οὐκ εἰς καλὸν
the and rebel Michael since he-saw already not to good
ἀποβῆναι μέλλειν τούτῳ τὰ πράγματα, ἀντιστῆναι ταῖς
to-turn-out to-be-about for-him the affairs to-stand-against the
βασιλικαῖς δυνάμεσιν ἐβεβούλευτο, καὶ πᾶσαν μηχανὴν καὶ
imperial forces had-resolved and every device and
πάντα κάλων, τὸ τῆς παροιμίας, κεκίνηκε. καὶ τοὺς
every rope the(-saying) of-the proverb moved and the

μὲν οἰκείους ἁπαξαπλῶς συλλέγδην πάντας συνήθροισε,
indeed own altogether gathered all assembled
συμμαχίαν δὲ οὐ σμικρὰν παρὰ τοῦ ῥηγὸς Σικελίας τοῦ
alliance and not small from the king of-Sicily the
γαμβροῦ αὐτοῦ προσελάβετο· ἀπηρίθμηντο γὰρ οὗτοι εἰς
son-in-law his took-in-addition were-counted for these at
τετρακοσίους ἱππότας, ὅπλοις ἐχυροῖς κατάφρακτοι καὶ
four-hundred knights with-arms strong armored and
ὑψαύχεσιν ἵπποις καὶ ἀγερώχοις ἐποχούμενοι, ἕκαστος
on-high-necked horses and proud riding each
τούτων τῶν ἐκ τοῦ σφετέρου γένους ἐκκρίτων
of-these of-the(-ones) from the their race select
τυγχάνοντες. ἄτερος δὲ τούτου γαμβρὸς ὁ Ἀχαΐας
being the-other and his son-in-law the of-Achaia
πρίγκιψ τὴν πᾶσαν αὐτοῦ στρατιὰν συλλεξάμενος δι᾽
prince the whole his army having-gathered through
ἑαυτοῦ τὴν πρὸς τὸν αὐτοῦ πενθερὸν συμμαχίαν πεποίηται.
himself the toward the his father-in-law alliance made
ἦγε δὲ οὗτος ἀπειροπληθὲς τὸ ὁπλιτικόν· ἔκ τε γὰρ
led and this(-man) boundless-multitude the armed-force from both for
τοῦ Φραγγικοῦ γένους ἐτύγχανε καὶ ἐκ τῶν οἰκητόρων
the Frankish race it-was and from the inhabitants
Ῥωμαίων Ἀχαΐας τε καὶ Πελοποννήσου, ὧν οὗτος ἦρχεν·
Romans of-Achaia both and of-Peloponnese whom he ruled
οἱ πλείους δὲ τοῦ τῶν Λακώνων ὑπῆρχον γένους.
the more and of-the of-the Laconians were race
Συνήθροιστο γοῦν παμπληθὴς στρατιά, καὶ κατὰ τοῦ
had-been-gathered then very-numerous army and against the
αὐταδέλφου τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος τοῦ σεβαστοκράτορος
own-brother of-the autocrat the sebastokrator
Ἰωάννου τὴν ὁρμὴν ἐποιοῦντο. ὁ δὲ — καὶ γὰρ εἶχε
John the onset made he but also for he-had

τὰς συμβουλὰς ἀγαθὰς ἐκ τοῦ αὐταδέλφου καὶ βασιλέως
the counsels good from the own-brother and emperor
— στρατηγικῶς τοὺς ἀντιπάλους μετήρχετο. ἐκεῖνος μὲν
strategically the opponents pursued he indeed
γὰρ μετὰ τῶν καταφράκτων καὶ θώραξι κεχρημένων
for with the armored and with-breastplates having-been-furnished
δυνάμεων τὰ ἐχυρώτερα τῶν τόπων ἐκράτει, τοῖς δὲ
forces the stronger of-the places held to-the and
ἐλαφροτέροις τῶν ὁπλιτῶν καὶ οἷς τὸ κινεῖσθαι ῥᾷον ὡς
lighter of-the armed-men and to-whom the to-move easier as
κουφοτέροις τὴν κατὰ τὰς πεδιάδας μάχην πεποιῆσθαι πρὸς
lighter the on the plains battle to-make against
τοὺς ἀντιπάλους προστέταχεν. ἦσαν δὲ οὗτοι οἱ μὲν
the opponents ordered were and these the(-ones) indeed
ἐκ Σκυθῶν οἱ δὲ ἐκ Τούρκων, πολλοὶ δὲ καὶ ἐκ τῶν
from Scythians the(-others) and from Turks many and also from the
Ῥωμαϊκῶν φύλων, οἷς καὶ μᾶλλον ἡ τοξεία τὸ ἐπιτήδευμα.
Roman tribes to-whom also rather the archery the pursuit
οὗτοι μὲν οὖν τοῖς ἐναντίοις προσβάλλοντες μακρόθεν τοῖς
these indeed then the opponents attacking from-afar with-the
βέλεσιν ἔπληττον. ἤρξαντο μὲν οὖν ἐκ τόπου, οὗ Βορίλλα
missiles struck they-began indeed then from place whose Borilla
Λόγγος τοὔνομα, ξυμπίπτειν τοῖς ἐναντίοις. οὔτε γοῦν
Longos the-name to-fall-upon the opponents neither then
ἡμέρας ἀνέτως βαδίζειν αὐτοῖς παρεχώρουν οὔτε νυκτὸς
by-day freely to-go them they-allowed nor by-night
ἠρεμεῖν. συνερρήγνυντο γὰρ αὐτοῖς ἡμέρας μὲν ἐν τοῖς τῶν
to-rest they-clashed for with-them by-day indeed at the of-the
ἵππων πότοις, εἴ πού τις μακρότερον ἀπῄει τὸν ἵππον
horses waterings if anywhere some-one farther went-off the horse
ποτίσαι, ξυνέπιπτον δὲ τούτοις καὶ καθ' ὁδόν, καὶ ταῖς
to-water they-fell-upon and these also on road and the

ἁμάξαις καὶ τοῖς φορταγωγοῖς ὑποζυγίοις προσπελάζοντες
wagons and the pack-carrying beasts approaching
ἐκ τῶν παρ᾽ αὐτοῖς φορτίων ἐσκύλευον ὑποχωρούντων τῶν
from the with them loads despoiled withdrawing the
φυλαττόντων. τοῦτο δὲ πολλάκις πεποιηκότες εἰς θάρσος
guards this and often having-done into boldness
κατὰ τῶν ἐναντίων οὐ μέτριον ἐληλάκασιν, ὥστε καὶ
against the opponents not moderate they-advanced so-that also
χερσὶ χεῖρας ἐμβάλλειν κἀξ αὐτῶν σκυλεύειν τὰ
with-hands hands to-throw-against and-from them to-despoil the(-things)
προστυχόντα. τὸ μὲν οὖν τοῦ ἀντάρτου Μιχαὴλ κἀκ
chanced-upon the indeed then of-the rebel Michael also-from
τούτου συνέσταλται στράτευμα καὶ εἰς πτοίαν οὐ μικρὰν
this was-contracted army and into terror not small
κατηντήκει· σχεδὸν γὰρ πᾶσαν σωτηρίαν ἀπηγορεύκει.
had-come almost for all salvation had-despaired-of
Βίᾳ γοῦν καὶ μόγις Στανὸν καὶ Σωσκὸν καὶ Μολυσκὸν
by-force then and hardly Stanos and Soskos and Molyskos
παραμείψαντες — σκοπὸς γὰρ ἦν αὐτοῖς εἰς τὸ τοῦ
having-passed aim for was for-them to the —
Πριλάπου ἄστυ γενέσθαι, ὅπως αὐτὸ διασώσειαν —
of-Prilapos town to-come so-that it they-might-save
ἐκεῖσε γεγονότες εἰς οἰκείαν ἕκαστος διασκεδασθέντες
there having-come into own each having-scattered
βουλὴν τὸν περὶ ψυχῆς τρέχειν, ὅπως ἂν εἶχεν ἰσχύος,
counsel the(-race) for soul to-run as — he-had of-strength
βεβούλευται. καὶ ὁ μὲν ἀποστάτης Μιχαὴλ μετὰ τοῦ
resolved and the indeed rebel Michael with the
υἱοῦ αὐτοῦ Νικηφόρου καί τινων ἄλλων μετρίων ἀνδρῶν,
son his Nikephoros and some other moderate men
οἷς καὶ εἴωθεν ἐμπιστεύειν τὰς αὐτοῦ πράξεις, νυκτὸς
to-whom also he-is-wont to-entrust the his deeds by-night

τοῖς ἵπποις ἐποχηθέντες ἀπέδρασαν, καλῶς τὰ τῶν
on-the horses having-mounted ran-off well the(-things) of-the
ὁδῶν ἐπιστάμενοι. ἔωθεν δὲ ἡμέρας ἤδη γεγενημένης,
roads knowing at-dawn and day already having-come
ὡς οἱ τῶν στρατευμάτων ἐγνώκασι τὸν Μιχαὴλ
as the(-ones) of-the armies knew — Michael
ἀποδράντα, ἤδη καὶ αὐτοὶ πρὸς φυγὴν ἐτράποντο. τὸ
having-run-off already also themselves to flight turned the
μὲν οὖν Ῥωμαϊκὸν στράτευμα καὶ οἱ κρείττους τῶν
indeed then Roman army and the better of-the(-ones)
ἐπικρατούντων αὐτὸ καὶ ὁ νόθος τοῦ ἀποστάτου υἱὸς
commanding it and the bastard of-the rebel son
Ἰωάννης τῷ σεβαστοκράτορι Ἰωάννῃ προσῆλθον καὶ
John to-the sebastokrator John came-over and
χεῖρας αὐτῷ δεδώκασι καὶ τῷ βασιλεῖ τοὺς ὅρκους
hands to-him gave and to-the emperor the oaths
ἀπέδοντο, ὁ δὲ πρίγκιψ Ἀχαΐας καὶ οἱ μετ᾽ αὐτοῦ
rendered the and prince of-Achaia and the(-ones) with him
ἄλλος ἀλλαχοῦ διεσπάρησαν. καὶ ὁ μὲν πρίγκιψ κατὰ
one another-place were-scattered and the indeed prince at
τὴν Καστορίαν ἑάλω, ὑπὸ ἀχυρμιᾷ τινι κρυβεὶς κἀκ
— Kastoria was-captured under chaff-heap some having-hidden and-from
τῶν ὀδόντων τῶν τινι στρατιωτῶν γνωρισθείς — εἶχε
the teeth of-the to-some soldiers recognized he-had
γὰρ τοὺς ἐμπροσθίους εὐμεγέθεις καὶ προβεβλημένους τῶν
for the front-ones large and projecting from-the
φατνωμάτων — καὶ δέσμιος ἀπήχθη τῷ βασιλεῖ· οἱ
sockets and as-prisoner was-led-away to-the emperor the(-ones)
δὲ κρείττους τῶν ταγμάτων αὐτοῦ καὶ προσγενεῖς, ὅ τε
and better of-the units his and kinsmen — both
Ἀσὲλ δε Τουσί, ὁ τῆς Καριτάνας Ἰοφρὲ καὶ ἄλλοι τῶν
Ansel de Toucy the — of-Karytaina Jofré and others of-the

ὀνομαστῶν πλείους, οἱ μὲν κατὰ τὸν Πλαταμῶνα
named more the(-ones) indeed at — Platamon
οἱ δὲ κατὰ ἄλλο μέρος ἑάλωσαν καὶ δεσμῶται τῷ
the(-others) and in another part were-captured and as-prisoners to-the
βασιλεῖ συναπήχθησαν. καὶ τὸ συμμαχικὸν δὲ στράτευμα
emperor were-led-away-together and the allied and army
τὸ ἐκ τοῦ ῥηγὸς Σικελίας τοῦ Μαφρὲ τῷ ἀποστάτῃ
the(-one) from the king of-Sicily — Manfred to-the rebel
ἀποσταλέν, ὡς εἰς τετρακοσίους, ὡς εἰρήκαμεν, ἠριθμημένον,
sent as to four-hundred as we-have-said numbered
αὐτοῖς ὅπλοις, αὐτοῖς ἵπποις ὑπὸ τεττάρων ἀνδρῶν
with-themselves arms with-themselves horses by four men
κατεσχέθησαν, ἀφ' ὧν ὁ μὲν εἷς ἦν ὁ μέγας δομέστικος
were-seized of whom the indeed one was the great domestic
ὁ Στρατηγόπουλος Ἀλέξιος, ἄτερος δὲ ὁ Ῥιμψᾶς
— Strategopoulos Alexios the-other and — Rimpsas
Νικηφόρος, ἐκ Τούρκων ἕλκων τὸ γένος, ὀρθότατος δὲ
Nikephoros from Turks drawing the race most-orthodox and
γεγενημένος Χριστιανός· οἱ δὲ δύο τῶν ἀνωνύμων ὑπῆρχον.
having-become Christian the and two of-the nameless were
καὶ τούτους γοῦν δεσμώτας πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα ἐξέπεμψαν.
and these then as-prisoners to the emperor they-sent-off
τοιαύτην γοῦν νίκην οἱ τῶν ἡμετέρων ταῖς βασιλικαῖς
such then victory the(-ones) of-the ours by-the imperial
συμβουλαῖς κατωρθώσαντο ὥστε τὴν αὐτῆς φήμην εἰς
counsels achieved so-that the its fame to
πάντα τῆς γῆς περιέναι τὰ πέρατα· ὀλίγας γὰρ τοιαύτας
all of-the earth to-go-around the ends few for such
νίκας εἶδεν ὁ ἥλιος. τηνικαῦτα γοῦν πάντα τε ἄστη
victories saw the sun then at-any-rate all both towns
καὶ πᾶσαν χώραν ὑφ' ἑαυτοὺς πεποίηνται οἱ ἡμέτεροι.
and all land under themselves made the ours

82 Ὁ μὲν οὖν σεβαστοκράτωρ Ἰωάννης τὴν Θετταλίαν
the indeed then sebastokrator John — Thessaly
παραμείψας καὶ τὰ ἐν αὐτῇ ἄστη τε καὶ φρούρια
having-passed and the in it towns both and fortresses
ὀχυρωσάμενος, περὶ τὴν Νέαν Πάτραν ἐστρατοπεδεύσατο,
having-fortified about — New Patras encamped
ἔχων μεθ' ἑαυτοῦ καὶ τὸν νόθον υἱὸν τοῦ ἀποστάτου Μιχαὴλ
having with himself also the bastard son of-the rebel Michael
Ἰωάννην. ὁ δὲ μέγας δομέστικος ὁ Στρατηγόπουλος
John the and great domestic — Strategopoulos
Ἀλέξιος καὶ ὁ Ῥαοὺλ Ἰωάννης τὰ Πυρρηναῖα ὑπερβάντες
Alexios and — Raoul John the Pyrenaean having-crossed
ὄρη περὶ τὴν Ἄρταν ἐχώρουν, καταλιπόντες ἐν τοῖς
mountains to — Arta went having-left in —
Ἰωαννίνοις στράτευμα μερικὸν εἰς πολιορκίαν τοῦ ἄστεος.
Ioannina army partial for siege of-the town
κατέλαβον οὖν οὗτοι τὴν Ἄρταν.
reached then these — Arta
Κἀκεῖσε γοῦν καὶ αὐτὸς τούτοις ξυντετυχήκειν· οἷς καὶ
and-there then also myself these I-had-met with-whom also
πρὸς ὀλίγας ἡμέρας ξυνομιλήσας κᾆτα δὴ συνταξάμενος
for few days having-conversed and-then indeed having-taken-leave
τῆς Ἄρτης ἐξῄειν, καταλιπὼν τὸν ἐκεῖσε λαὸν οὐκέτι
— from-Arta I-went-out having-left the there people no-longer
εὐνοϊκῶς πρὸς τοὺς ἡμετέρους διακείμενον· οὐ γὰρ καλῶς
kindly toward the ours disposed not for well
οἱ τῶν στρατευμάτων τούτοις ἐχρήσαντο. διὰ ταῦτα
the(-ones) of-the armies them treated because-of these-things
καὶ ἡ περιφανεστάτη ἐκείνη νίκη ἡ τοῖς Ῥωμαίοις
also the most-brilliant that victory the(-one) on-the Romans
ἐπιλάμψασα ἐν οὐ πολλῷ τῷ χρόνῳ πρὸς τοὐναντίον
having-shone in not much the time to the-opposite

κεχώρηκεν. ἀπῄειν οὖν ἐξ ὀρθοῦ πρὸς τὸν σεβαστοκράτορα
went I-went-off then from straight to the sebastokrator
Ἰωάννην τὸν τοῦ βασιλέως αὐτάδελφον περὶ τὴν Νέαν
John the of-the emperor own-brother about — New
Πάτραν διάγοντα, καί τινας ἡμέρας μετ' αὐτοῦ
Patras staying and some days with him
διακαρτερήσας τῆς πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα φερούσης ἡψάμην.
having-stayed the(-road) to the emperor leading I-took-hold-of
Ὁ μὲν οὖν νόθος υἱὸς τοῦ ἀποστάτου Μιχαὴλ Ἰωάννης
the indeed then bastard son of-the rebel Michael John
τῷ σεβαστοκράτορι ξυνὼν ἀποστασίαν μετὰ καὶ ἄλλων
with-the sebastokrator being-with revolt with also other
τινῶν ἐμελέτα. καὶ ἐπεὶ ὁ σεβαστοκράτωρ Ἰωάννης κατὰ
some was-plotting and when the sebastokrator John against
τῶν Λατίνων κεχώρηκε καὶ τὴν Λεβαδίαν παραμείψας τὰς
the Latins went and — Lebadia having-passed —
Θήβας ἐσκύλευσε, τὴν ἣν ὤδινεν οὗτος ἀπιστίαν εἰς
Thebes despoiled the which was-in-travail-with this(-man) faithlessness into
προῦπτον προύφηνε καὶ μετὰ καὶ ἄλλων τινῶν ἀποδρὰς
open brought-to-light and with also others some having-run-off
περὶ τὸν ἀποστάτην Μιχαὴλ τὸν πατέρα τούτου ἀπῄει.
to the rebel Michael the father his went-off
ἐκεῖνος μὲν οὖν τῷ ἀθρόῳ τοῦ πράγματος ταραχθεὶς
he indeed then at-the suddenness of-the matter having-been-troubled
οὐκ εἶχεν ὅπῃ γῆς σταίη, ἀλλ' ἐν πλοιαρίοις ἐμβάντες
not had where of-earth he-might-stand but in small-boats having-embarked
αὐτός τε καὶ ὁ υἱὸς αὐτοῦ Νικηφόρος καὶ ἡ σύζυγος τούτου
he both and the son his Nikephoros and the wife his
καί τινες τῶν αὐτοῦ τὰς διατριβὰς ἐν τῇ θαλάσσῃ ἐποίουν
and some of-the his(-men) the sojourns in the sea made
τάς τε νήσους τὰς πέριξ καταγώγιον εἶχον, Λευκάδα
the both islands the around refuge had Leukas

δηλαδὴ καὶ τὰς τῶν Κεφαλήνων. ἀλλ᾽ ἐπεὶ ὁ τούτου
namely and the(-islands) of-the Kephallenians but when the his
νόθος υἱὸς Ἰωάννης πρὸς αὐτὸν ἀπῄει καθὰ δεδήλωται,
bastard son John to him went-off as has-been-shown
ἀνερρώσθη τῆς ῥᾳθυμίας, καὶ τὸν ὄκνον ἀποσεισάμενος
recovered from-the sluggishness and the hesitation having-shaken-off
περὶ τὴν Ἄρταν ἐβάδιζε. κἀκεῖσε δὴ ἀφιγμένος, ἐπεὶ τοὺς
to — Arta went and-there indeed having-arrived when the
πάντας οἰκήτορας προσκειμένους εὗρεν αὐτῷ, εἶχε δὲ καὶ τὸ
all inhabitants attached he-found to-him had and also the
τῆς Βουδίτζης ἄστυ παρὰ τοῦ μέρους τούτου κρατούμενον,
— of-Bouditza town by the part his held
συναγαγὼν τοὺς ἐκεῖσε εὑρισκομένους τοὺς ἡμετέρους τῶν
having-gathered the(-ones) there found the ours from-the
ὁρίων τῆς Ἄρτης ἐξήλασεν. ἀλλὰ καὶ τοὺς πολιορκοῦντας
boundaries — of-Arta drove-out but also the(-ones) besieging
τὰ Ἰωάννινα μακρὰν τῶν Ἰωαννίνων πεποίηκεν. οὕτω μὲν
— Ioannina far — from-Ioannina made so indeed
οὖν ἀρχὴν κακῶν τὰ τῶν Ῥωμαίων εἴληφε πράγματα,
then beginning of-ills the of-the Romans took affairs
καὶ τὰ καλῶς ταῖς βασιλικαῖς συμβουλίαις γεγενημένα
and the(-things) well by-the imperial counsels having-happened
ταῖς τῶν στρατηγούντων ἀνηκοΐαις καὶ ἀταξίαις εἰς τὸ
by-the of-the generalling(-men) disobediences and disorders to the
μηδὲν σχεδὸν ἢ καὶ πάνυ μικρὸν κατηντήκασιν.
nothing almost or also very little came
Ὁ μὲν οὖν αὐτάδελφος τοῦ βασιλέως ὁ σεβαστοκράτωρ
the indeed then own-brother of-the emperor the sebastokrator
Ἰωάννης καὶ ὁ πενθερὸς αὐτοῦ ὁ Τορνίκης Κωνσταντῖνος
John and the father-in-law his — Tornikes Constantine
τῆς μάχης ἐξιόντες εἰς τὸν αὐτοκράτορα ἐπανέζευξαν περὶ
from-the battle going-out to the autocrat marched-back about

τὴν Λάμψακον ὄντα καὶ τὰς διατριβὰς ἐκεῖσε ποιούμενον. τὸν
— *Lampsakos being and the sojourn there making the*
μὲν οὖν σεβαστοκράτορα Ἰωάννην ὁ βασιλεὺς τῷ τῶν
indeed then sebastokrator John the emperor with-the of-the
δεσποτῶν τετίμηκεν ἀξιώματι, ἀντίχαριν οἷον τῆς νίκης
despots honored dignity in-return-favor as-it-were of-the victory
τούτῳ διδούς, καὶ ἵνα τοῖς μαχομένοις τούτῳ προσώποις
to-him giving and that with-the fighting him persons
ἀντισταθμίζοιτο, δεσπότης πρὸς δεσπότας μαχόμενος·
he-might-be-counterbalanced despot against despots fighting
τὸν δὲ πενθερὸν αὐτοῦ τὸν Τορνίκην Κωνσταντῖνον
the and father-in-law his — Tornikes Constantine
μέγαν πριμμικήριον ὄντα τῷ τῶν σεβαστοκρατόρων
great primmikerios being with-the of-the sebastokrators
τετίμηκεν ἀξιώματι. ἀλλὰ καὶ τὸν αὐτάδελφον αὐτοῦ
honored dignity but also the own-brother his
Κωνσταντῖνον ἐκ καισάρων σεβαστοκράτορα κατωνόμακεν.
Constantine from caesars sebastokrator named
ἐν τούτοις δὲ τὰ τῶν σεβαστοκρατόρων διέφερον,
in these and the(-insignia) of-the sebastokrators differed
ἐν οἷς ὁ μὲν αὐτάδελφος τοῦ βασιλέως τοῖς κυανοῖς
in which the indeed own-brother of-the emperor on-the blue
πεδίλοις ἐγκεκολλαμένους εἶχε καὶ χρυσοϋφεῖς ἀετούς, ὁ δὲ
sandals glued had also gold-woven eagles — and
Τορνίκης γυμνὰ τούτων τὰ πέδιλα ὑπεδέδετο. ἀλλὰ καὶ τὸν
Tornikes bare of-these the sandals wore but also —
Στρατηγόπουλον Ἀλέξιον μέγαν δομέστικον ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ
Strategopoulos Alexios great domestic the autocrat
τετιμηκὼς δι' ἀποστολῆς τετίμηκε καίσαρα, διαπόμπιμον
having-honored through dispatch honored caesar sent-out
αὐτῷ τὴν τιμὴν χαρισάμενος. καὶ ταῦτα μὲν οὕτω ξυνέβη.
to-him the honor having-granted and these-things indeed so happened

83 Ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς παραχειμάσας ἐν τῇ Λαμψάκῳ, ἔαρος
the and emperor having-wintered in — Lampsakos of-spring
ἐπιλάμψαντος κατὰ τῆς Κωνσταντίνου κεχώρηκεν· ἅπασα
having-shone-forth against the of-Constantine went all
γὰρ ἦν αὐτῷ σπουδὴ καὶ ἅπας σκοπὸς τῆς τῶν Λατίνων
for was for-him earnestness and all aim from-the of-the Latins
χειρὸς αὐτὴν ἀναρρύσασθαι. ἐπῆλθε γοῦν κατὰ τῆς
hand it to-rescue came-upon then against —
Κωνσταντινουπόλεως, οὐ τεθαρρηκὼς τοῖς στρατεύμασιν
Constantinople not having-trusted in-the armies
— οὐδὲ γὰρ ἦγεν ἀξιόμαχον στρατιὰν εἰς τοιαύτης
not-even for he-led fit-for-battle army for of-such
πόλεως πολιόρκησιν — ἀλλὰ λόγοις τοῖς τοῦ ἐξαδέλφου
city siege but by-words the(-ones) of-the cousin
αὐτοῦ, οὗ τὸ ὄνομα Ἀσέλ, ἐξηπατημένος· ἠπάτα καὶ
his whose the name Ansel having-been-deceived deceived also
γὰρ τὸν βασιλέα, ὡς αὐτὸς ἐν τῷ τείχει τῆς πόλεως
for the emperor that he in the wall of-the city
τὴν οἰκίαν ἔχει καὶ πύλας ἔχει παρ᾽ αὐτοῦ δεσποζομένας,
the house has and gates has by him mastered
δι᾽ ὧν δύναιτ᾽ ἂν τὰ τοῦ βασιλέως στρατεύματα ἔνδον
through which could — the of-the emperor armies within
τῆς πόλεως ἀψοφητὶ καὶ δίχα μάχης εἰσαγαγεῖν. καὶ
the city noiselessly and without battle to-bring-in and
ἐπιστεύετο λέγων ταῦτα· τό τε γὰρ συγγενὲς φαντασίαν
was-believed saying these-things the both for kinship impression
ἐδίδου τοῦ ἀληθεύειν τὸν ἄνθρωπον, καὶ τὸ πλειόνων τε
gave of-the to-speak-true the man and the of-more both
τιμῶν καὶ δωρημάτων ὑποσχέσεις ἐνωμότους λαβόντα
honors and gifts promises sworn having-received
*** Φράγγων ἐν τῇ τοῦ πρίγκιπος Ἀχαΐας μάχῃ
(lacuna) of-Franks in the of-the prince of-Achaia battle

καὶ προσδοκήσας δεινὰ μάλιστα ηὐμοιρήκει πολλῶν
and having-expected terrible(-things) especially had-enjoyed many
ἀγαθῶν· ὅτε καὶ τὰς τοιαύτας ὑποσχέσεις τῷ βασιλεῖ
good(-things) when also the such promises to-the emperor
δέδωκε καὶ τὰς πρὸς αὐτὸν ἀντεδέξατο. τούτοις μὲν οὖν,
gave and the(-ones) to him received-in-return in-these indeed then
ὡς ἔφημεν, ἐλπίσας ὁ βασιλεὺς κατὰ τῆς Κωνσταντίνου
as we-said having-hoped the emperor against the of-Constantine
ἐπῄει, καὶ ἀντιπέραν τοῦ βορείου κέρως τῆς πόλεως ἐν
went and opposite the northern horn of-the city in
τόπῳ τοῦ Γαλατᾶ κατονομαζομένῳ ἐστρατοπεδεύσατο, καὶ
place — of-Galata named encamped and
τὸ μὲν δοκεῖν τὸ τοῦ Γαλατᾶ ἐμάχετο φρούριον, τῇ
the indeed to-seem the — of-Galata attacked fortress in-the
δ' ἀληθείᾳ κρύφα πρὸς τὸν Ἀσὲλ ἔπεμπεν, ὅπως τὰς
but truth secretly to — Ansel sent so-that the
ὑποσχέσεις πληρώσειεν. ὁ δὲ πρὸς κέρδος ἑώρα, οὐ πρὸς
promises he-might-fulfill he and to gain looked not to
ἀλήθειαν· ψευδεῖς γοῦν ἐποιεῖτο τὰς ἀποκρίσεις, ἄλλα
truth false then made the answers other(-things)
ἐπ' ἄλλοις προφασιζόμενος. ἐπεὶ γοῦν ἱκανὸς παρερρύη
upon others pretexting when then sufficient flowed-past
χρόνος καὶ οὐδὲν ἤνυεν, ἀλλὰ καὶ τῆς στρατιᾶς
time and nothing he-accomplished but also the army
ὁπλισθείσης καὶ νυκτὸς ἀπιούσης καὶ τῇ οἰκίᾳ τούτου
having-been-armed and by-night going and to-the house his
προσεγγισάσης — τοῦτο γὰρ ἐκεῖνος γενέσθαι διεμηνύσατο
having-drawn-near this for he to-happen had-announced
— τότε ψεύδεσθαι πεφώραται φανερῶς. καὶ ἐπεὶ οὐκ εἶχέ
then to-lie he-was-detected openly and since not he-had
τινα εὔλογον ἀπολογίαν ποιήσασθαι, τὴν αἰτίαν εἰς τὸν
any reasonable defense to-make the blame on the

ἄρχοντα τῆς πόλεως ἔθετο· ‘ὑπετόπασε’ γὰρ εἴρηκεν ‘οὗτος
ruler of-the city laid suspected for said this(-man)
ὡς οὐ καλόν ἐστι τὰς κλεῖς με τῶν τῆς πόλεως κατέχειν
that not good it-is the keys me of-the of-the city to-hold
πυλῶν, καὶ διὰ ταῦτα εἴληφε ταύτας αὐτός, καὶ διὰ
gates and because-of these-things took them himself and because-of
τοῦτο ἔγωγε περὶ τὸ ἔργον ἀδυνατῶ.’ ἐπεὶ γοῦν καθαρῶς
this I about the work am-unable when then clearly
τὴν τοῦ ἀνθρώπου ἀπάτην ἐπεγνώκει ὁ βασιλεύς, ἐξῄει
the of-the man deceit had-recognized the emperor went-out
τοῦ τόπου. καθ’ ὁδὸν δὲ τρεῖς πρέσβεις οἱ Λατῖνοι
from-the place on road and three envoys the Latins
πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα πεπόμφασιν εἰρήνην ζητοῦντες. ὁ δὲ
to the emperor sent peace seeking the and
βασιλεὺς πεποίηκε ταύτην, εἰς ἐνιαυτὸν δὲ καὶ μόνον ἕνα,
emperor made it for year and also only one
ἐν στενῷ κομιδῇ ἐπισφίγξας τούτοις τὰ πράγματα.
in strait utterly having-pressed for-them the affairs
84 Διαπεράσας γοῦν ὁ βασιλεὺς τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον, τὰ τῶν
having-crossed then the emperor — Hellespont the —
Πηγῶν κατέλαβε μέρη κἀκεῖσε τὰς διατριβὰς ἐποιεῖτο. ἐπεὶ
of-Pegai reached parts and-there the sojourn made when
δὲ ὁ τοῦ θέρους παρῄει καιρός, ἀλλά γε δὴ καὶ ὁ τῆς
and the of-the summer passed season but at-least indeed also the of-the
ὀπώρας ἐρρύη, τῶν τοιούτων ἀπάρας χώρων πρὸς τὴν
autumn flowed-by from-the such having-set-out regions to the
ἐξ ἔθους τοῖς βασιλεῦσιν οὖσαν ἀνάπαυσιν, ἐξ ὅτου
from custom for-the emperors being rest from which(-time)
τῆς Κωνσταντίνου γεγόνασιν ὑπερόριοι, κατηντήκει τὸ
of-the of-Constantine they-became beyond-the-border reached —
Νύμφαιον, ἐμὲ δὲ πρὸς τὸν ἄρχοντα τῶν Βουλγάρων
Nymphaion me and to the ruler of-the Bulgarians

τὸν Κωνσταντῖνον πρέσβιν ἐκπέπομφεν. ἀπῄειν γοῦν πρὸς
— Constantine as-envoy sent-out I-went-off then to
αὐτόν, καὶ διεβίβασα μετ᾽ αὐτοῦ ἡμέρας τινάς· ἔτυχον γὰρ
him and I-spent with him days some happened for
τότε καὶ αἱ ἑορτάσιμοι τοῦ Χριστοῦ ἡμέραι, ἥ τε τῶν
then also the festal — of-Christ days the(-day) both of-the
γενεθλίων καὶ ἡ τοῦ βαπτίσματος. ἐν τῇ τοιαύτῃ καὶ
nativity and the(-day) of-the baptism in the such also
γὰρ ἡμέρᾳ τοῦ βαπτίσματος οἱ τῶν Βουλγάρων ἄρχοντες
for day of-the baptism the of-the Bulgarians rulers
λαμπρύνονται μάλιστα, καὶ ἐβούλετο ὁ τῶν Βουλγάρων
make-splendid especially and wished the of-the Bulgarians
ἄρχων τῷ τότε Κωνσταντῖνος σφίσιν αὐτοῖς συνεῖναι
ruler at-the then(-time) Constantine with-them themselves to-be-with
κἀμὲ καὶ θεατὴν γενέσθαι τῶν τελουμένων. τὰ
also-me and spectator to-become of-the(-things) being-performed the(-things)
προστεταγμένα μοι γοῦν πληρώσας τοῦ Τρινόβου ἐξῄειν,
ordered for-me then having-fulfilled — from-Trnovo I-went-out
καὶ πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα ἀπῄειν ἐν τῷ Νυμφαίῳ διάγοντα.
and to the emperor I-went-off in — Nymphaion staying
ἐκεῖσε γοῦν ὁ βασιλεὺς παρεχείμασε, καὶ ἐπιλάμψαντος
there then the emperor wintered and having-shone-forth
ἔαρος τοῦ Νυμφαίου ἐξῄει, τὴν λαμπρὰν τῆς ἀναστάσεως
spring — from-Nymphaion went-out the bright of-the resurrection
τοῦ κυρίου ἡμέραν προεορτάσας ἐν τῷ Νυμφαίῳ.
of-the Lord day having-celebrated-beforehand in — Nymphaion
ἡμέρας δέ τινας ἐν τοῖς Φλεβίοις διαβιβάσας, περὶ τόπον
days and some in — Phlebia having-spent about place
οὕτω πως ἐπονομαζόμενον Κλυζομενὴν ἀπελθὼν ἐπήξατο
thus somehow named Klyzomene having-gone-off pitched
τὰς σκηνάς. ἐκεῖσε καὶ γὰρ εἰώθασιν οἱ βασιλεῖς τοῦ
the tents there also for are-wont the emperors —

Νυμφαίου ἐξιόντες χρονοτριβεῖν καὶ τὸ πλέον τοῦ ἐαρινοῦ
from-Nymphaion going-out to-spend-time and the more of-the spring
παραμείβειν καιροῦ. ὅ τε γὰρ τόπος ἅπας πεδιὰς καὶ χόρτον
to-pass season the both for place all plain and fodder
προβεβλημένη πολλοῖς ἀρκοῦντα τοῖς ἵπποις, κατάρρυτος
putting-forth for-many sufficient the horses well-watered
δὲ τυγχάνει καὶ ὕδασιν, ἐγγὺς δὲ αὐτοῦ καὶ κώμας ἔχει
and is also with-waters near and it also villages has
πολλὰς καὶ πόλεις, ἐξ ὧν δαψιλῆ καθειστήκει τὰ ζωαρκῆ.
many and cities from which abundant stood the provisions
Ἐκεῖσε γοῦν ὄντος τοῦ βασιλέως καὶ ὁ σεβαστοκράτωρ
there then being the emperor also the sebastokrator
Τορνίκης ἐκ τῆς Νικαέων ἐπιδεδήμηκε, καὶ δι᾽ ὄχλου τῷ
Tornikes from the of-Nicaeans had-come and through annoyance to-the
βασιλεῖ γέγονε διὰ τὸν προπατριαρχεύσαντα Ἀρσένιον. ὁ
emperor became because-of the former-patriarch Arsenios the
γὰρ πατριαρχικὸς ἐχήρευε θρόνος, τοῦ πατριαρχεύσαντος
for patriarchal was-widowed throne the having-been-patriarch
Νικηφόρου, ὃς ἀπὸ τῆς Ἐφέσου εἰς τὸν πατριαρχικὸν
Nikephoros who from — Ephesus to the patriarchal
μετετέθη θρόνον, ἀπάραντος τῶν ἐνθένδε καὶ πρὸς
was-transferred throne having-departed from-the(-things) here and to
τὰς αἰωνίους μεταστάντος σκηνάς, μηδὲ εἰς ὅλον σχεδὸν
the eternal having-moved tents not-even for whole almost
ἐνιαυτὸν τὸν πατριαρχικὸν κοσμήσαντος θρόνον. ὁ δὲ
year the patriarchal having-adorned throne — and
Ἀρσένιος οὗτος ἦν προβεβλημένος εἰς τὸν πατριαρχικὸν
Arsenios this was put-forward to the patriarchal
θρόνον πρὸς τοῦ βασιλέως Θεοδώρου, ἀνὴρ καὶ εἰς λόγον
throne by the emperor Theodore man both for speech
καὶ εἰς πρᾶξιν παναφυέστατος. οὔτε γὰρ λόγον εἶχε τὸν
and for action most-untalented neither for speech he-had the(-one)

κοσμοῦντα τοῦτον, εἴτ᾽ ἐκ παιδείας γεγενημένον, εἴτ᾽ ἐκ
adorning him whether from education having-come or from
φύσεώς πως προβαλλόμενον, ἀλλὰ καὶ τὸ ἦθος ὑπῆρχε
nature somehow put-forth but also the character he-was
δεινὸς καὶ σκληρὸς τὸν τρόπον, καὶ ταχὺς μὲν εἰς ἔχθραν,
harsh and hard the manner and quick indeed to enmity
εἰς δὲ φιλίαν βραδύς, καὶ τὴν μνησικακίαν φέρων ὥσπερ τινὰ
to but friendship slow and the rancor bearing as some
σκιὰν συνεφεπομένην τῷ σώματι. οὗτος κατ᾽ ἀρχὰς μὲν
shadow following-along the body this(-man) at beginnings indeed
τῆς αὐτοκρατορίας τοῦ βασιλέως εἰς τὰ πεπραγμένα
of-the reign of-the emperor to the(-things) done
τοῖς πᾶσι συνῄνει, καὶ ἦν προσφιλῶς τῷ βασιλεῖ
with-the all agreed and was affectionately to-the emperor
διακείμενος. ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ τὴν αὐτοκρατορικὴν ἀπεπλήρου
disposed when and also the imperial he-fulfilled
στεφηφορίαν, εὐθὺς μεταπεπτώκει πρὸς τοὐναντίον καὶ
coronation at-once changed to the-opposite and
δύσνους ἐγεγόνει τῷ βασιλεῖ, ἔχων ἐν ταὐτῷ συνίστορας
ill-disposed became to-the emperor having at the-same(-time) accomplices
τὸν Σάρδεων Ἀνδρόνικον καὶ τὸν Θεσσαλονίκης Μανουὴλ
the of-Sardis Andronikos and the of-Thessalonica Manuel
τὸν καὶ Ὀψαρᾶν λεγόμενον. ἀλλ᾽ ὁ μὲν Σάρδεων, ὅτε
the(-one) also Opsaras called but the indeed of-Sardis when
ὁ βασιλεὺς κατὰ τῆς Κωνσταντίνου ἐστρατοπεδεύσατο καὶ
the emperor against the of-Constantine encamped and
ἐγγὺς ταύτης τὰς ἐπαύλεις ἐποιεῖτο, τότε τὰ τῶν μοναχῶν
near it the quarters made then the of-the monks
ἐνεδέδυτο ἄμφια ὑπὸ τοῦ Φιλαδελφείας Ἰωαννικίου. ὡς γὰρ
put-on vestments by the of-Philadelphia Ioannikios as for
συχνῶς διηνώχλει τὸν βασιλέα ἐπιδημῆσαι τῇ Παφλαγόνων
often troubled the emperor to-visit the of-Paphlagonians

— ἐκεῖθεν καὶ γὰρ ὥρμητο — τὸ στρεβλόνουν τοῦ
thence also for he-had-set-out the crooked-mindedness of-the
ἀνδρὸς ὁ βασιλεὺς ἀκριβῶς εἰδὼς οὐκ εἴα τοῦτον
man the emperor exactly knowing not allowed him
περὶ τὰ ἐκεῖσε μέρη ἀφῖχθαι· σκοπὸς γὰρ ἦν αὐτῷ
to the there parts to-have-come aim for was for-him
τὰ τῶν Παφλαγόνων πάντα διαταράξαι τῇ πρὸς
the(-affairs) of-the Paphlagonians all to-confound by-the toward
τὸν βασιλέα δυσνοίᾳ. ὁ βασιλεὺς δὲ δικαιότατον πρὸς
the emperor ill-will the emperor and most-just to
τοῦτον ἐποίει τὸν λόγον ὡς ‘μητροπολίτης κεχειροτόνησαι
him made the speech that metropolitan you-have-been-ordained
Σάρδεων, οὐκέτι γε μὴν Παφλαγονίας, καὶ δεῖ
of-Sardis no-longer at-least however of-Paphlagonia and it-is-necessary
σε τοῖς τῶν Σάρδεων ἐμφιλοχωρεῖν μέρεσι κἀκεῖσε καὶ
you in-the — of-Sardis to-linger parts and-there also
διατρίβειν καί σου ποιμαίνειν τὸ ποίμνιον.’ ἐπεὶ οὖν
to-spend-time and your to-shepherd the flock since then
ἐπεγνώκει ἀμετάπτωτον εἶναι τὸ βασιλικὸν βούλημα, μὴ
he-recognized unchangeable to-be the imperial wish not
ἔχων ὅ τι καὶ δράσειε, τὸν μονήρη βίον προείλετο.
having what at-all also he-might-do the solitary life chose
ὁ δὲ Θεσσαλονίκης Μανουὴλ ἄκων ἐξιὼν τῆς Νικαίας
the and of-Thessalonica Manuel unwilling going-out — from-Nicaea
περί που τὰ ἐγγὺς ἐκείνης διέτριβεν.
about somewhere the(-places) near it spent-time
ὁ δὲ πατριαρχεύσας Ἀρσένιος καὶ αὐτὸς ἐξιὼν ἐκεῖθεν
the and having-been-patriarch Arsenios also himself going-out thence
ἐν σμικροτάτῳ τινὶ σεμνείῳ ἑαυτὸν ἐγκαθείρξας διῆγεν,
in smallest some cell himself having-shut-up lived
ἔμπρακτον κἂν οὐκ ἔγγραφον τὴν παραίτησιν ποιησάμενος.
in-deed even-if not written the resignation having-made

ἐντεῦθεν συνελθόντες πάντες οἱ ἀρχιερεῖς περὶ τὴν
hence having-come-together all the high-priests about —
Λάμψακον, ψήφῳ πάντων καὶ προσταγῇ βασιλέως ὁ τῆς
Lampsakos by-vote of-all and by-order of-emperor the —
Ἐφέσου πρόεδρος Νικηφόρος εἰς τὸν πατριαρχικὸν ἀνήχθη
of-Ephesus president Nikephoros to the patriarchal was-raised
θρόνον, ἀνὴρ καὶ λόγον καὶ τρόπον σεμνότατός τε ἅμα καὶ
throne man both in-speech and in-manner most-dignified both at-once and
κοσμιώτατος καὶ πᾶσι τοῖς ἰδοῦσιν αὐτὸν προσφιλέστατος.
most-orderly and to-all the(-ones) having-seen him most-beloved
ἀλλ' οὗτος, καθὰ προειρήκειν, μήπω ἀπενιαυτήσας πρὸς
but this(-man) as I-had-said-before not-yet having-completed-a-year to
θεὸν ἀπῆρε. τότε γοῦν ὁ σεβαστοκράτωρ Τορνίκης οὐκ
God departed then at-any-rate the sebastokrator Tornikes not
οἶδ' ὅπως τῇ φιλίᾳ τοῦ Ἀρσενίου προσκείμενος ἠνάγκαζε
I-know how to-the friendship — of-Arsenios attached pressed
τὸν βασιλέα τὸν Ἀρσένιον εἰς τὸν πατριαρχικὸν καὶ αὖθις
the emperor — Arsenios to the patriarchal also again
θρόνον ἀναγαγεῖν, θαύματά τινα καὶ τεράστια παρὰ τοῦ
throne to-raise wonders some and portents by —
Ἀρσενίου ἐνεργούμενα διηγούμενος, καί τοι γε τῶν
Arsenios worked narrating and yet at-least of-the
ἄλλων τῶν ἐν ξυμβουλῇ μὴ θελόντων τοῦτο γενέσθαι.
others of-the(-ones) in counsel not wishing this to-happen
ἀλλὰ τὸ τοῦ βασιλέως καλοκαγαθὸν καὶ πρὸς τὸ εὖ
but the of-the emperor nobility and to the well
ποιήσασθαι ἕτοιμον τῇ συμβουλῇ τοῦ σεβαστοκράτορος
to-do ready to-the counsel of-the sebastokrator
μᾶλλον ξυντεθῆναι πεποίηκε. καὶ ἀνήχθη καὶ αὖθις πρὸς
rather to-be-joined made and was-raised also again to

τὸν πατριαρχικὸν θρόνον Ἀρσένιος, ἔγγραφον ποιησάμενος
the patriarchal throne Arsenios written(-pledge) having-made
τὰ ὀρθὰ φρονεῖν καὶ πράττειν ὑπὲρ τοῦ βασιλέως.
the right(-things) to-think and to-do for the emperor

XV · CONSTANTINOPLE RECOVERED

Alexios Strategopoulos, passing near Constantinople, finds it emptied for an attack on Daphnousia; his men enter through a hole in the wall on 25 July 1261, and the Latins flee by sea. Michael hears the news at Meteorion, enters through the Golden Gate behind the icon of the Mother of God from the Hodegoi on 15 August, and restores Arsenios to his throne. Akropolites' speech on the recovery closes the history.

85 Ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς τὸν Στρατηγόπουλον Ἀλέξιον τὸν καίσαρα
the and emperor — Strategopoulos Alexios the caesar
μετὰ στρατευμάτων τινῶν οἰκονομήσας ἐπὶ τοῖς δυτικοῖς
with armies some having-arranged to the western
ἐκπέπομφε μέρεσι, τοῖς ἐκεῖσε οὖσι τῶν Ῥωμαίων
sent-out parts with-the there being of-the Romans
ὑπεναντίοις ξυνελθεῖν εἰς μάχην, παραγγείλας ὡς ἐν
opponents to-come-together in battle having-ordered that in
τῷ διέρχεσθαι, ἐπεὶ τὰ τῆς ὁδοῦ τῆς ἐκεῖσε
the passing-through since the(-parts) of-the road the(-one) there
φερούσης πλησίον ὑπάρχει τῆς Κωνσταντίνου, ἔφοδόν
leading near is of-the of-Constantine attack
τινα κατ' αὐτῆς ποιήσασθαι καὶ μέχρι τῶν πυλῶν
some against it to-make and as-far-as the gates
αὐτῆς ἐπιδραμεῖν τὰ στρατεύματα, ὡς ἂν πτοία παρ'
its to-overrun the armies so-that — terror from
αὐτῶν τοῖς οὖσιν ἐντὸς Λατίνοις ἐγγένηται. ἐγένετο δὲ
them to-the being within Latins might-arise happened and

τῷ τότε καί τι ξυμβῆναι προνοίᾳ θεοῦ. ἐπεὶ
at-the then(-time) also something to-occur by-providence of-God when
γὰρ ναῦς μεγίστη κοίλη Λατινικὴ ἐκ Βενετίας εἰς τὴν
for ship very-great hollow Latin from Venice to the
Κωνσταντίνου ἀφίκετο, καὶ νέος ἐν ταύτῃ ἐξουσιαστὴς
of-Constantine arrived and new in it governor
παρεγένετο, ὃν καὶ ποτεστάτον ἐπονομάζουσιν, ἀνήρ,
came whom also podestà they-name man
ὡς ἐφάνη, δραστήριος καὶ θρασύτερος εἰς τὰ
as appeared energetic and bolder in the(-things)
μάχιμα, τοὺς ἐν τῇ Κωνσταντινουπόλει πάντας Λατίνους
of-fighting the in — Constantinople all Latins
παροτρύνας εἰς μάχην καὶ ξυμβουλεύσας ὡς ‘δεῖ
having-urged to battle and having-advised that it-is-necessary
καὶ ἡμᾶς μὴ μόνον ἐντὸς ὄντας τῆς πόλεως τὴν
also us not only within being the city the
πόλιν καὶ ἑαυτοὺς φυλάττειν, ἀλλὰ καὶ κατὰ Ῥωμαίων
city and ourselves to-guard but also against Romans
τι δρᾶν, ὡς ἂν μὴ πάντῃ καταφρονητικῶς ἐν
something to-do so-that — not wholly contemptuously in
τοῖς καθ’ ἡμῶν διατίθωνται.’ ἔπεισεν οὖν αὐτοὺς
the(-things) concerning us they-may-be-disposed persuaded then them
εἰσιόντας ἐν ὅσαις εἶχον τριήρεσι καί τισιν ἑτέροις
embarking in as-many-as they-had triremes and some other
πλοίοις, λεμβαδίοις οἷον καὶ δρόμωσι, κατὰ τῆς
vessels skiffs such-as also fast-ships against the
νήσου Δαφνουσίας χωρῆσαι, εἴ πως δυνηθεῖεν αὐτὴν
island Daphnousia to-go if somehow they-might-be-able it
παραστήσασθαι καὶ σκύλων εὐμοιρῆσαι τῶν ἐξ αὐτῆς.
to-bring-over and of-spoils to-have-plenty of-the from it
κεκένωται οὖν ἡ πόλις ἀνδρῶν, καὶ ἦν γυναιξὶ καὶ
was-emptied then the city of-men and was with-women and

νηπίοις καὶ τῷ βασιλικῷ τάχα ταύτης κατάρχοντι
infants and the imperial supposedly it ruling
Βαλδουίνῳ μετά τινων μετρίων ἀνδρῶν διεξαγομένη καὶ
Baldwin with some moderate men being-conducted and
τηρουμένη.
being-guarded
Αἴφνης οὖν ὁ Στρατηγόπουλος Ἀλέξιος ὁ καῖσαρ
suddenly then — Strategopoulos Alexios the caesar
νυκτὸς ἐπιὼν τῇ Κωνσταντίνου προσήγγισεν. ἐπεὶ δὲ
by-night coming-upon the of-Constantine drew-near since and
μεθ' ἑαυτοῦ εἶχε καὶ ἄνδρας τινὰς ἐξωρμημένους τῆς
with himself he-had also men some set-out from-the
πόλεως καὶ ἀκριβῶς εἰδότας τὰ κατ' αὐτήν, καὶ
city and exactly knowing the(-things) concerning it and
πυνθανόμενος αὐτῶν ἐμεμαθήκει ὁπήν τινα εἶναι περὶ
inquiring of-them had-learned hole some to-be about
τὸ τεῖχος τῆς πόλεως, δι' ἧς ἀνὴρ ὁπλίτης δύναιτ'
the wall of-the city through which man armed could
ἂν ἐντὸς εἰσελθεῖν, μηδ' ὅλως μελλήσας τοῦ ἔργου
— within to-enter not at-all having-delayed the work
εἴχετο. καὶ εἰσῆλθε διὰ ταύτης ἀνήρ, καὶ ἐπηκολούθησεν
held-to and entered through it a-man and followed
αὐτῷ ἕτερος, εἶτα ἐκείνῳ ἄλλος, καὶ οὕτω μέχρι τῶν
him another then that(-man) another and so up-to the
πεντεκαίδεκα, τάχα δὲ καὶ πλείους ἄνδρες ἐντὸς εἰσῆλθον
fifteen perhaps and also more men within entered
τῆς πόλεως. ἐπεὶ δὲ περὶ τὸ τεῖχος ἕνα εὗρον τῶν
the city when and about the wall one they-found of-the(-ones)
ἐμπεπιστευμένων τὴν φυλακήν, τινὲς ἐξ αὐτῶν ἀναβάντες
entrusted-with the guard some of them having-gone-up
καὶ τῶν ποδῶν λαβόντες ἔρριψαν ἔξω τῆς πόλεως.
and by-the feet having-taken threw outside the city

οἱ δ᾽ ἄλλοι ἀξίνας ἐγχειρισάμενοι καὶ τοὺς μοχλοὺς
the and others axes having-taken-in-hand and the bars
τῶν πυλῶν διαρρήξαντες ἐλευθέραν πεποίηνται τὴν εἰς
of-the gates having-broken free made the into
τὴν πόλιν εἴσοδον τῷ στρατεύματι. οὕτω μὲν οὖν
the city entrance for-the army thus indeed then
ὁ Στρατηγόπουλος καῖσαρ καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ πάντες
— Strategopoulos caesar and the with him all
Ῥωμαῖοι καὶ Σκύθαι — ἐκ τῶν τοιούτων καὶ γὰρ
Romans and Scythians from the such(-peoples) also for
τὸ ὑπ᾽ αὐτὸν συνεκεκρότητο στράτευμα — ἐντὸς τῆς
the under him had-been-made-up army within the
πόλεως ἐγεγόνεισαν. οἱ δ᾽ ἐντὸς τῷ αἰφνιδίῳ
city had-come the(-ones) and within by-the suddenness
κατασεισθέντες τοῦ πράγματος, ὡς εἶχεν ἕκαστος τὴν
having-been-shaken of-the matter as had each the
ἑαυτοῦ σωτηρίαν ἐπραγματεύετο. καὶ οἱ μὲν περὶ
his-own safety worked-for and the(-ones) indeed to
τὰ σεμνεῖα ἐβάδιζον καὶ μοναχικὰ ἐνεδέδυντο ἄμφια,
the monasteries went and monastic put-on vestments
ὅπως τὸν φόνον ἐκφύγοιεν, γυναῖκες δὲ εἰς ὀπὰς τειχῶν
so-that the murder they-might-escape women and into holes of-walls
συνεστέλλοντο καὶ εἰς στοὰς σκοτεινὰς καὶ ἀποκρύφους
shrank and into colonnades dark and hidden
ἐκρύπτοντο. ὁ δὲ τῆς πόλεως κατάρχων Βαλδουῖνος περὶ
hid the and of-the city ruler Baldwin to
τὸ μέγα παλάτιον ὥρμησεν.
the great palace set-out
Οἱ δὲ περὶ τὴν Δαφνουσίαν ἀπιόντες Λατῖνοι καὶ ὁ
the and to — Daphnousia going-off Latins and the
μετ᾽ αὐτῶν ποτεστάτος, μηδέν τι τῶν γενομένων
with them podestà nothing at-all of-the(-things) having-happened

γνωρίσαντες, ἐπεὶ μὴ κατὰ τῆς νήσου Δαφνουσίας ποιῆσαί
having-known since not against the island Daphnousia to-do
τι ἴσχυσαν — ἀντελάβετο γὰρ κἀκείνων θεός
anything they-were-strong-enough took-hold for also-of-those God
— παλίνδρομοι πρὸς τὴν πόλιν ἐπανεζεύγνυον. μέχρι
back-running to the city were-marching-back as-far-as
μὲν οὖν τοῦ ναοῦ τοῦ ἀρχιστρατήγου τῶν ἄνω δυνάμεων
indeed then the church of-the commander-in-chief of-the above powers
Μιχαὴλ ἐλθόντες, τοῦ περὶ τὸν ἀνάπλουν διακειμένου,
Michael having-come the(-one) about the Anaplous lying
οὐδέν τι ὅλως τῶν γενομένων ἐμεμαθήκεισαν·
nothing at-all wholly of-the(-things) having-happened had-learned
ἐκεῖσε δὲ ἀφιγμένοι καὶ ταῦτα μαθόντες εἰς τὴν πόλιν
there and having-arrived and these-things having-learned into the city
ὥρμησαν ἐπελθεῖν. ἀλλὰ τὰ Ῥωμαϊκὰ στρατεύματα
set-out to-come but the Roman armies
τοῦτο γνόντες πῦρ ταῖς οἰκίαις τῶν Λατίνων ἐνέβαλον
this having-known fire on-the houses of-the Latins cast
παρὰ τὸν αἰγιαλὸν κειμέναις, καὶ ἐνέπρησαν ταύτας, καὶ
by the shore lying and burned them and
πρῶτα μὲν τὰς τῶν Βενετικῶν, εἶτα τῶν ἄλλων
first indeed the(-houses) of-the Venetians then of-the other
γενῶν, ἃς καὶ κάμπους κατωνόμαζον. ἐπεὶ δὲ εἶδον
races which also kampoi they-named when and saw
τὴν πόλιν πυρπολουμένην οἱ τῶν Λατίνων, τὰς
the city being-burned the(-ones) of-the Latins the
παρειὰς ταῖς χερσὶ τύψαντες, καὶ λαβόντες ὅσους
cheeks with-the hands having-beaten and having-taken as-many-as
ἠδύναντο ἐντὸς τῶν τριήρεων αὐτῶν καὶ τῶν λοιπῶν
they-could within the triremes their and the other
πλοίων, ὑπεχώρησαν, μιᾶς τριήρεως εἰς τὸ μέγα
vessels withdrew one trireme to the great

παλάτιον ἀπελθούσης καὶ ἀναδεξαμένης τὸν Βαλδουῖνον
palace having-gone-off and having-taken-up — Baldwin
ἐν χρῷ τῆς ζωγρείας γενόμενον. καὶ ταῦτα μὲν
at close-shave of-the capture having-been and these-things indeed
οὕτω ξυνέβη, καὶ ἡ Κωνσταντίνου προνοίᾳ θεοῦ καὶ
so happened and the of-Constantine by-providence of-God also
αὖθις ὑπὸ χεῖρα τοῦ βασιλέως τῶν Ῥωμαίων ἐγένετο
again under hand of-the emperor of-the Romans came
κατὰ λόγον δίκαιόν τε καὶ προσήκοντα, Ἰουλίου
according-to reason just both and fitting of-July
εἰκοστὴν καὶ πέμπτην ἄγοντος, οὔσης ἐπινεμήσεως
twentieth and fifth being-the-day being of-indiction
τετάρτης καὶ ἀπὸ γενέσεως κόσμου ἔτους ὄντος ,ςψξθ΄,
fourth and from creation of-world year being 6769
ὑπὸ τῶν ἐχθρῶν κρατουμένη χρόνους πεντήκοντα καὶ
by the enemies held years fifty and
ὀκτώ.
eight

Περὶ γοῦν τὸ Μετεώριον τότε σκηνουμένου τοῦ βασιλέως 86
at then — Meteorion then encamping the emperor
ἐξαπίνης φήμη τις νύκτωρ τὰς τῶν πολλῶν περιεβόμβησεν
suddenly report some by-night the of-the many buzzed-around
ἀκοάς. ἡ δὲ φήμη παρὰ παιδαρίου τινὸς τῆς αὐταδέλφης
ears the and report from little-servant some of-the own-sister
τοῦ βασιλέως τῆς ὀνομαζομένης μὲν Εἰρήνης, διὰ
of-the emperor the(-one) named indeed Irene because-of
δὲ τοῦ μοναδικοῦ σχήματος μετονομασθείσης Εὐλογίας,
but the monastic habit renamed Eulogia
ἐκ τῶν τῆς Βιθυνίας μερῶν παρ᾽ αὐτὴν ἀφικομένου,
from the — of-Bithynia parts to her having-come
ὡς καθ᾽ ὁδὸν ἐμεμαθήκει παρά του, παρὰ τῶν
as on road he-had-learned from someone by the

Ῥωμαϊκῶν στρατευμάτων ἁλῶναι τὴν Κωνσταντίνου.
Roman armies to-have-been-taken the of-Constantine
ὡς εἶχε γοῦν τάχους ἡ τοῦ βασιλέως αὐτοκασιγνήτη
as she-had then of-speed the of-the emperor own-sister
παρὰ τὸν βασιλέα ἀφιγμένη καταδαρθάνοντα τοῦτον
to the emperor having-come sleeping him
εὗρε, καὶ ἠρέμα πως ἐκίνει αὐτὸν χειρί, ὅπως ἄν
found and gently somehow moved him with-hand so-that —
γε καὶ γρηγορήσειεν, ἰσχνοτέρᾳ τῇ φωνῇ ὑπολέγουσα
at-least also he-might-wake with-thinner the voice saying-softly
ὡς ‘κατέσχες, ὦ βασιλεῦ, τὴν Κωνσταντινούπολιν.’
that you-have-taken O emperor — Constantinople
καὶ πολλάκις τοῦτο εἰρήκει, καὶ ὁ βασιλεὺς ἐπέμενε
and often this said and the emperor persisted
μηδέν τι πρὸς ταύτην ἀνταποκρινόμενος. ὡς δὲ τὸν
nothing at-all to her answering as and the
λόγον μετέβαλε καὶ εἰρήκει· ‘ἀνάστηθι βασιλεῦ· ὁ
speech she-changed and said arise emperor —
γὰρ Χριστὸς ἀπεχαρίσατό σοι τὴν Κωνσταντινούπολιν,’
for Christ has-granted you — Constantinople
τῆς κλίνης ἀναστὰς καὶ τὰς χεῖρας εἰς οὐρανὸν
from-the bed having-risen and the hands to heaven
ἀνατείνας ‘τοῦτον μὲν’ ἔφη ‘τὸν λόγον, ὦ ἀδελφή, καὶ
having-stretched this indeed he-said the word O sister also
αὐτὸς δέχομαι. ὃν δὲ λόγον τὸ πρῶτον εἶπας, ὡς
I-myself accept which but word the first you-said that
τῆς Κωνσταντίνου κεκράτηκα, οὐδαμῶς ἀποδέχομαι·
of-the of-Constantine I-have-become-master by-no-means I-accept
πῶς γὰρ ἐκ τοῦ Μετεωρίου ἐγκρατὴς γενοίμην
how for from — Meteorion master would-I-become
τῆς Κωνσταντίνου; ἀλλ’ οὐδὲ στράτευμα κατ’ αὐτῆς
of-the of-Constantine but not-even army against it

ἀξιόλογον πέπομφα. τὸ δὲ ῥᾴω ταῦτα εἶναι θεῷ καὶ
considerable I-have-sent the and easier these-things to-be for-God also
αὐτὸς ξυνομολογῶ, καὶ θᾶττον ἂν τὰ μικροῦ καὶ
I-myself agree and sooner — the(-things) of-little and
ἀδύνατα τοῖς οἷς βούλοιτο παρασχεῖν καθέστηκε
impossible to-the(-ones) whom he-should-wish to-grant stands
δυνατός.'
able

Ταῦτ' εἰπὼν τοὺς ἐν τέλει πάντας τοὺς ἐκεῖσε
these-things having-said the(-ones) in office all the(-ones) there
τότε τούτῳ συνόντας ξυνήθροισε, καὶ ἐπυνθάνετο εἰ
then with-him being gathered and inquired if
ἀληθῆ δοκεῖ σφίσιν αὐτοῖς τὰ παρὰ τῆς φήμης. καὶ
true seem to-them themselves the(-things) from the report and
οἱ μὲν συνέθεντο τὰ τῶν λόγων ἐπαληθεύειν,
the(-ones) indeed agreed the(-things) of-the words to-come-true
καὶ μάλιστα οἷς ἡ τῶν Λατίνων ἔξοδος ἀκριβέστερον
and especially to-whom the of-the Latins departure more-exactly
ἐπεγνώσθη· ἔνιοι δὲ τὸν λόγον ἦγον ἐν ἀμφιβόλοις, οἷς
was-known some and the account held in doubtful(-things) who
οὐκ ἐν γνώσει τὰ τῆς ἄνω προνοίας καθέστηκε κρίματα,
not in knowledge the of-the above providence stand judgments
ὑπολογιζόμενοι καὶ τὸ πρᾶγμα τῶν δυσχερεστάτων τε
reckoning and the matter of-the most-difficult both
εἶναι καὶ μὴ ῥᾳδίως κατορθουμένων. ἐν τοῖς τοιούτοις
to-be and not easily accomplished in the such
μὲν λόγοις τὸ τῆς νυκτὸς παρῄει διάστημα. ἐπεὶ
indeed words the of-the night passed interval when
δὲ ἡμέρα ἐπέφωσκεν, ἐλπὶς μὲν ἦν πᾶσι τὸν
and day dawned hope indeed was to-all the(-one)
διακομίζοντα τἀληθῆ ἀφικέσθαι πρὸς τὸ στρατόπεδον,
conveying the-true(-things) to-arrive at the camp

ἀλλὰ καὶ τὸ τῆς ἡμέρας ἐκείνης παραδεδραμήκει
but also the of-the day that had-run-past
διάστημα, καὶ οὐδεὶς τοιοῦτος ἀφίκετο. ἤσχαλλον γοῦν
interval and no-one such arrived were-vexed then
αἱ τῶν ἁπάντων ψυχαὶ καὶ ἠδημόνουν, καὶ μάλιστά
the of-the all souls and were-troubled and especially
γε τοῦ βασιλέως. ἀλλὰ νυκτὸς ἐπιούσης ὁ
at-least of-the emperor but night coming-on the(-one)
τὴν ἀγαθὴν ἀγγελίαν διακομίζων ἐλήλυθε καὶ σαφῶς
the good message conveying came and clearly
εἰρήκει περὶ τοῦ ἔργου, ὅτιπερ τὰ τῶν Ῥωμαίων
said about the deed that-indeed the of-the Romans
στρατεύματα μετὰ τοῦ καίσαρος Στρατηγοπούλου ἐντὸς
armies with the caesar Strategopoulos within
τῆς Κωνσταντίνου διάγουσι, καὶ πάντα ὡς ἔσχεν
the of-Constantine are-staying and all as it-had
ἀπήγγειλεν.
he-reported

87 Ἀπάρας γοῦν ὁ βασιλεὺς τοῦ Μετεωρίου μεθ' ἡδονῆς
having-set-out then the emperor — from-Meteorion with pleasure
ὅτι πολλῆς τὴν Κωνσταντίνου φθάσαι διὰ τάχους
very much the of-Constantine to-reach with speed
ἐπέσπευδε, δεδιὼς μήποτε ἐκ τῆς Δαφνουσίας οἱ
hastened fearing lest-ever from — Daphnousia the
Λατῖνοι ὑπονοστήσαντες καὶ τῆς πόλεως ἐντὸς γενόμενοι
Latins having-returned and of-the city within having-come
μάχην κατὰ Ῥωμαίων στήσαιεν καρτεράν, καὶ πολλῷ
battle against Romans should-set strong and by-much
πλείους τῶν Ῥωμαίων ὄντες τῶν τειχῶν ἔξω
more than-the Romans being from-the walls outside
βάλλουσιν. ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν οὐ ξυνέβη, ἀλλ' ἐκεῖνοι
throw but these-things indeed not happened but they

μὲν τῷ ἀθρόῳ τὰς ψυχὰς κατασεισθέντες προύλαβον
indeed by-the suddenness the souls having-been-shaken anticipated
ἀποδρᾶναι, καθὼς ὁ λόγος φθάσας ἐδήλωσεν. ὁ
to-run-away as the account anticipating showed the
βασιλεὺς δὲ τὴν πορείαν ἐπέτεινεν. ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ τοὺς
emperor and the march extended when and also the
τοῦ Καλάμου βουνοὺς παρημείψαμεν καὶ τῆς Ἀχυράους
— of-Kalamos hills we-passed and — of-Achyraous
ἐγγὺς ὁ βασιλεὺς ἐπήξατο τὴν σκηνήν, τότε δὴ καὶ
near the emperor pitched the tent then indeed also
τὰ τοῦ Βαλδουίνου τοῦ τάχα βασιλικῶς τῆς
the(-things) — of-Baldwin the(-one) supposedly imperially the
Κωνσταντίνου κατάρχοντος τὰ βασιλικὰ διεκομίσθησαν
of-Constantine ruling the imperial were-brought
σύμβολα· ταῦτα δὲ ἦν καλύπτρα Λατινικὴ τὸ σχῆμα
insignia these and were cap Latin the shape
καὶ μαργάροις πεποικιλμένη καὶ ὑπὲρ κεφαλῆς λιθιδίῳ
and with-pearls adorned and over head with-stone
κοκκίνῳ, πέδιλά τε κοκκοβαφῆ καὶ σπάθη σηρικὸν
scarlet sandals both scarlet-dyed and sword silken
κοκκοβαφὲς ἐνδεδυμένη προκάλυμμα. τότε δὴ καὶ ὁ
scarlet-dyed clothed-in covering then indeed also the
πολὺς λεὼς τὰ τῆς ὑποθέσεως ἐπεπίστωτο· τὸ γὰρ
many people the(-things) of-the matter had-believed the for
μεγαλεῖον οὐκ εἴα τοῦ πράγματος εὐχερῶς πιστεύειν
greatness not allowed of-the thing easily to-believe
τοῖς λεγομένοις.
the(-things) said
Ἔσπευσεν οὖν ὁ βασιλεὺς τὴν κίνησιν. ταχυτέρας γοῦν
hastened then the emperor the movement swifter then
καὶ μακροτέρας ἐποιεῖτο τὰς μεταβάσεις. ἐγγίσαντι
and longer made the passages having-drawn-near

γοῦν τῇ Κωνσταντίνου τῷ βασιλεῖ κατὰ νοῦν ἐπῄει
then to-the of-Constantine to-the emperor in mind came
θεοπρεπεστέραν μᾶλλον ἢ βασιλικωτέραν τὴν εἰς τὴν
more-befitting-God rather than more-imperial the into the
Κωνσταντίνου ποιήσασθαι πάροδον, καὶ τὸν τρόπον
of-Constantine to-make entry and the manner
ἐσκέψατο, ὅπως ἂν γένοιτο ὃ δὴ διὰ λόγων
considered how — it-might-happen which indeed through words
εὐχαριστηρίων πρὸς τὸν θεὸν καὶ φωνῶν εὐκτηρίων ὑπέρ
of-thanksgiving to — God and voices of-prayer for
τε βασιλείας καὶ ἱεραρχείας ὑπέρ τε τῆς πόλεως καὶ
both empire and hierarchy for both the city and
τῶν αὐτῆς οἰκητόρων καὶ τοῦ ταύτης πληρώματος. ἐπεὶ
the its inhabitants and the its fullness when
δὲ ἐζήτει τὸν τὰς εὐχὰς συγγράψασθαι μέλλοντα, τὸν
and he-sought the(-one) the prayers to-compose about-to the
φιλόσοφον Βλεμμύδην πρὸς τοὔργον ἐπινύξαι βεβούλητο.
philosopher Blemmydes to the-work to-prompt had-wished
μακρὰν δὲ ἦν ὁ ἀνήρ — ἀμφὶ γὰρ τὴν Ἔφεσον
far and was the man about for — Ephesus
τὰς διατριβὰς ἐποιεῖτο — εἰς ἀργίαν δὲ τὰ τοῦ
the sojourn made into idleness and the(-things) of-the
πράγματος ἔπιπτεν. ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς μελλήσειν οὐκ ἤθελε
matter fell the and emperor to-delay not wished
πρὸς τὴν εἴσοδον. ἐδυσχέραινε γοῦν ἐπὶ τούτοις, ἀλλ᾽
toward the entry was-vexed then at these but
αὐτὸς τὸ δυσχερὲς διελυσάμην τῷ βασιλεῖ. ‘εἰ μὲν’
I-myself the difficulty dissolved for-the emperor if indeed
γὰρ ἔφην, ‘ὦ βασιλεῦ, ὡς ἐξ ἁγίου ἀνδρὸς βούλει
for I-said O emperor as from holy man you-wish
τὰς εὐχάς, ἅσπερ ἐθέλεις, γενέσθαι σοι, οὐκ ἔχω
the prayers which you-wish to-be-made for-you not I-have

λέγειν· εἰ δὲ ἐξ οἱουδήτινος, δυναμένου δὲ συγγράφειν
to-say if but from whatever able but to-compose
προέλοιο τὴν βούλησιν ἐκπεπλῆσθαί σοι, ἰδού σοι
you-should-prefer the wish to-be-fulfilled for-you behold for-you
αὐτὸς τὴν θέλησιν ἀποπλήσαιμι καὶ τὰς εὐχάς σοι
I-myself the wish might-fulfill and the prayers for-you
συγγράψαιμι.' ἔδοξε τοῦτο κρεῖττον τῷ βασιλεῖ, καὶ
might-compose seemed this better to-the emperor and
τῆς ταχινῆς εἰσόδου τὰς ὑπ' ἐμοῦ ποιηθησομένας
of-the swift entry the(-prayers) by me to-be-made
προείλετο. ἐγὼ μὲν οὖν εὐθὺς ἡψάμην τοῦ ἔργου, καὶ
chose I indeed then at-once took-hold-of the work and
οὔπω ἡμέρα παρῆλθε ὅλη καὶ νύξ, καὶ δέκα πρὸς ταῖς
not-yet day passed whole and night and ten besides the
τρισὶ συνεγραψάμην εὐχάς, ἑκάστην οἰκεῖον ἔχουσαν τὸν
three I-composed prayers each own having the
σκοπόν.
aim
Κατέλαβε γοῦν ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ τὴν Κωνσταντίνου· 88
reached then the autocrat the of-Constantine
τεσσαρακαιδεκάτην ἦγε τότε ὁ Αὔγουστος. εἰσελθεῖν γοῦν
fourteenth kept then — August to-enter then
εἰς τὴν Κωνσταντινούπολιν οὐκ ἠθέλησε τὴν αὐτὴν ἡμέραν,
into — Constantinople not wished the same day
ἀλλὰ τὰς σκηνὰς ἐν τῇ μονῇ τοῦ Κοσμιδίου ἐπήξατο,
but the tents in the monastery — of-Kosmidion pitched
τῇ ἄγχι διακειμένῃ τῶν Βλαχερνῶν. ἐκεῖσε γοῦν
the(-one) near lying — Blachernai there then
διανυκτερεύσας ἕωθεν ἀναστὰς τὴν εἰς Κωνσταντινούπολιν
having-spent-the-night at-dawn having-risen the into Constantinople
εἴσοδον ἀπειργάσατο τρόπον τοιοῦτον. ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁ μὲν
entry accomplished manner such since and the indeed

πατριάρχης Ἀρσένιος οὐ παρῆν, οἷα ἐκεῖνος ἀνὴρ
patriarch Arsenios not was-present as that man
νωθρότερος περὶ τὰ καλὰ καὶ δύσνους πρὸς τὸν
more-sluggish about the good(-things) and ill-disposed toward the
βασιλέα τελῶν καὶ μικροῦ δυσχεραίνων, ὅτι πρὸς τοῦ
emperor being and almost being-annoyed that by the
βασιλέως ἡ τῆς Κωνσταντίνου τῇ τῶν Ῥωμαίων
emperor the of-the of-Constantine to-the of-the Romans
ἀρχῇ συγκατείλεκται, ἔδει δὲ ἄρα τῶν τινα
rule has-been-enrolled it-was-necessary and then of-the some(-one)
ἀρχιερέων τὰς εὐχὰς εἰς ἐπήκοον ἐξειπεῖν, ὁ τῆς Κυζίκου
high-priests the prayers into hearing to-utter the — of-Kyzikos
μητροπολίτης Γεώργιος, ὃν καὶ Κλειδᾶν κατωνόμαζον,
metropolitan George whom also Kleidas they-named
ἐπλήρου τὴν χρείαν, καὶ εἰς ἕνα τῶν πύργων τῶν
fulfilled the need and into one of-the towers of-the
τῆς Χρυσείας ἀναβάς, ἔχων μεθ' ἑαυτοῦ καὶ τὸ τῆς
of-the(-gate) Golden having-gone-up having with himself also the of-the
θεοτόκου ἐκτύπωμα τὸ οὕτω πως ἐκ τῆς μονῆς
mother-of-God image the(-one) thus somehow from the monastery
παρωνομασμένον τῶν Ὁδηγῶν, εἰς ἐπήκοον ἁπάντων
named — of-Hodegoi into hearing of-all
ἀπεστομάτισε τὰς εὐχάς. ὁ μὲν οὖν αὐτοκράτωρ τὴν
recited the prayers the indeed then autocrat the
καλύπτραν ἀποβαλὼν καὶ γόνυ κλίνας ἔπεσε χαμαί,
cap having-cast-off and knee having-bent fell to-the-ground
καὶ πάντες δὲ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ ὄπισθεν αὐτοῦ ἐπὶ γόνυ
and all too the(-ones) with him behind him on knee
κατέπεσον. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡ πρώτη τῶν εὐχῶν ἐκτετέλεσται καὶ
fell-down when and the first of-the prayers was-completed and
ὁ διάκονος ἐσήμηνε τὴν ἀνέγερσιν, πάντες ἀναστάντες
the deacon signaled the rising all having-risen

τὸ κύριε ἐλέησον, εἰς ἑκατὸν ἀριθμήσαντες, ἐπεβόησαν.
the Lord have-mercy to hundred having-counted cried-out
καὶ τούτων τετελεσμένων πρὸς τοῦ ἀρχιερέως καὶ αὖθις
and these having-been-completed by the high-priest also again
ἑτέρα τις ἐξεφωνήθη εὐχή. ὡς ἐν τῇ πρώτῃ γοῦν καὶ
another some was-uttered prayer as in the first then also
ἐν τῇ δευτέρᾳ γεγένηται, καὶ οὕτω πως διαπέπρακται
in the second it-happened and thus somehow was-accomplished
μέχρι καὶ συμπληρώσεως τῶν ὅλων εὐχῶν. ἐπεὶ γοῦν
up-to also completion of-the whole prayers when then
οὑτωσί πως τὰ τῆς ἱεροπραξίας ταύτης γεγένηται,
thus somehow the(-things) of-the sacred-act this happened
θεοπρεπῶς μᾶλλον ἢ βασιλικῶς τὴν τῆς Χρυσείας
in-a-manner-befitting-God rather than imperially the of-the Golden
πύλην εἰσῆλθεν ὁ βασιλεύς· πεζὸς γὰρ ἐβάδιζε, προήρχετο
gate entered the emperor on-foot for he-went went-before
δὲ τούτου τῆς θεομήτορος ἡ εἰκών. μέχρι μὲν οὖν
and him of-the mother-of-God the image as-far-as indeed then
τῆς τοῦ Στουδίου μονῆς ἀπελθών, ἐκεῖσε τὴν εἰκόνα
the — of-Stoudios monastery having-gone-off there the image
καταλιπὼν τῆς ὑπεράγνου μητρὸς τοῦ θεοῦ, ἐπιβὰς
having-left of-the most-pure mother — of-God having-mounted
τοῦ ἵππου περὶ τὸ τῆς Σοφίας τοῦ θεοῦ ἀφίκετο
the horse to the — of-Wisdom — of-God arrived
τέμενος. ἐκεῖσε γοῦν τῷ δεσπότῃ προσκυνήσας Χριστῷ
precinct there then the master having-worshiped Christ
καὶ τὰ εἰκότα τούτῳ εὐχαριστήσας, περὶ τὸ μέγα
and the fitting(-things) him having-thanked to the great
κατηντήκει παλάτιον. ἐν εὐφροσύνῃ γοῦν καὶ θυμηδίᾳ
arrived palace in gladness then and joy
πολλῇ καὶ ἀπλέτῳ χαρᾷ τὸ Ῥωμαϊκὸν τῷ τότε
much and boundless delight the Roman at-the then(-time)

γεγένηται πλήρωμα· οὐδεὶς γὰρ ἦν ὁ μὴ σκιρτῶν τε
became fullness no-one for was who not leaping both
καὶ ἀγαλλόμενος καὶ μικροῦ δεῖν τῷ πράγματι ἀπιστῶν
and exulting and of-little to-lack the thing disbelieving
διὰ τὸ ἀπροσδόκητον τοῦ ἔργου καὶ τὸ ὑπερβάλλον
because-of the unexpectedness of-the deed and the excess
τῆς ἡδονῆς.
of-the pleasure
Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἔδει καὶ τὸν πατριάρχην ἐντὸς γενέσθαι
when and it-was-necessary also the patriarch within to-come
τῆς Κωνσταντίνου, μετὰ παραδρομήν τινων ἡμερῶν
of-the of-Constantine after passing of-some days
λόγοις καὶ τῇ παρὰ τούτων πειθοῖ εἰσῆλθε. καὶ ὁ
by-words and by-the from these persuasion he-entered also the
βασιλεὺς εἰς τὸ ἱερὸν ἀπῆλθεν ἀνάκτορον, τὸ τῆς
emperor into the sacred went-off palace the of-the
μεγάλης Σοφίας τέμενος, ἵν' ἐγχειρίσῃ τὴν καθέδραν
great Wisdom precinct that he-might-hand-over the throne
τῷ ἀρχιερεῖ. καὶ συνήθροιστο μετὰ τοῦ βασιλέως
to-the high-priest and were-gathered with the emperor
καὶ τῶν ἐν τέλει πάντες καὶ τῶν ἀρχόντων οἱ
and of-the(-ones) in office all and of-the rulers the
πρόκριτοι καὶ πᾶσα πληθύς. ὁ βασιλεὺς δὲ τῆς
chosen and all multitude the emperor and the
χειρὸς τοῦ πατριάρχου ἐπιλαβόμενος 'ἔχεις,' φησί,
hand of-the patriarch having-taken you-have says
'τὸν θρόνον σου, δέσποτα, καὶ οὗτινος ἐκ μακροῦ
the throne your master and of-which from long-ago
ἐστέρησαι, νυνὶ τῆς καθέδρας ἀπόλαυε.' καὶ οὕτω
you-have-been-deprived now the throne enjoy and so

μὲν καὶ ἐπὶ τῷ πατριάρχῃ τὰ τοῦ βασιλέως
indeed also for the patriarch the(-things) of-the emperor
ξυνέβη.
happened
Ἐγένετο δὲ τῷ τότε καί τι τοιοῦτον, ὃ μὴ 89
happened and at-the then(-time) also something such which not
παραδοῦναι γραφῇ τῶν οὐ δεόντων ἐλογισάμην. λόγον
to-hand-over to-writing of-the(-things) not needful I-reckoned speech
ἐπὶ τῇ ἀναρρύσει τῆς Κωνσταντίνου συνεγραψάμην. καὶ ὁ
on the recovery of-the of-Constantine I-composed and the
σκοπὸς τοῦ λόγου κατὰ τὰς ἀρχὰς εὐχαριστία τε ἦν πρὸς
aim of-the speech at the beginnings thanksgiving both was to
θεὸν τῆς πρὸς Ῥωμαίους τούτου ἀγαθουργίας καὶ τῆς
God of-the toward Romans his beneficence and of-the
εὐσπλάγχνου κηδεμονίας καὶ ἀντιλήψεως, συνανεκεράννυτο
compassionate guardianship and help was-mixed-in
δὲ τῷ λόγῳ καὶ εὐφημία πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα εὐχαριστήριος·
and with-the speech also praise toward the emperor thankful
ἡ δ᾽ ἐπὶ τέλει τοῦ λόγου ἀξίωσις συναναγορευθῆναι τῷ
the and at end of-the speech request to-be-proclaimed-together with-the
βασιλεῖ καὶ πατρὶ τὸν βασιλέως πρωτογενῆ παῖδα, τὸν
emperor and father the of-emperor first-born child —
Κομνηνὸν Ἀνδρόνικον. τοῦτο ἐλάνθανε τοὺς πολλοὺς καὶ
Komnenos Andronikos this escaped-notice the many and
μάλιστα τῶν ἐν τέλει, οἷς καὶ οὐ κατὰ γνώμην
especially of-the(-ones) in office to-whom also not according-to mind
ὑπῆρχε τὸ πρᾶγμα. οἱ μὲν προύχοντες τῶν ἡμετέρων,
was the thing the indeed leading-men of-the ours
ὅ τε δεσπότης Ἰωάννης ὁ τοῦ βασιλέως αὐτάδελφος
the both despot John the of-the emperor own-brother
καὶ ὁ πενθερὸς τούτου ὁ σεβαστοκράτωρ Τορνίκιος —
and the father-in-law his the sebastokrator Tornikes

ὁ γὰρ καῖσαρ Στρατηγόπουλος, καὶ εἰ παρῆν ἐν
the for caesar Strategopoulos even if he-was-present in
τοῖς τοιούτοις, οὐδ᾽ εἶχε περὶ τούτων φροντίδα — τὸν
the such(-things) not-even had about these care the
σκοπὸν ἀγνοοῦντες καὶ τὴν ἀξίωσιν τοῦ προβλήματος,
aim not-knowing and the request of-the proposal
ἠνάγκασαν τὸν βασιλέα ἐπ᾽ ἀκροάσει γενέσθαι τοῦ λόγου.
compelled the emperor at hearing to-be of-the speech
ὁ μὲν βασιλεὺς ἐδυσχέραινεν, ἤδη γὰρ μεσεμβρινὰς
the indeed emperor was-annoyed already for midday
τὰς ἀκτῖνας ὁ ἥλιος ἔβαλλε καὶ ὁ τοῦ ἀρίστου παρῄει
the rays the sun cast and the of-the luncheon passed
καιρός ***
time (lacuna)
